Oracle® Cash Management

User Guide

Release 12

Part No. B31429-04

August 2007

ORACLE®

Oracle Cash Management User Guide, Release 12

Part No. B31429-04

Copyright © 2000, 2007, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Douglas J. Myers

Contributing Author: Julia Baevà, Byung-hyun Chung, Lynn Kwan Hugh Mason, Hilary McClure, Sunil Poonen, Xin X. Wang

The Programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent, and other intellectual and industrial property laws. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of the Programs, except to the extent required to obtain interoperability with other independently created software or as specified by law, is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. This document is not warranted to be error-free. Except as may be expressly permitted in your license agreement for these Programs, no part of these Programs may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose.

If the Programs are delivered to the United States Government or anyone licensing or using the Programs on behalf of the United States Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS
Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the Programs, including documentation and technical data, shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement, and, to the extent applicable, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software--Restricted Rights (June 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be the licensee's responsibility to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and we disclaim liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

The Programs may provide links to Web sites and access to content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle is not responsible for the availability of, or any content provided on, third-party Web sites. You bear all risks associated with the use of such content. If you choose to purchase any products or services from a third party, the relationship is directly between you and the third party. Oracle is not responsible for: (a) the quality of third-party products or services; or (b) fulfilling any of the terms of the agreement with the third party, including delivery of products or services and warranty obligations related to purchased products or services. Oracle is not responsible for any loss or damage of any sort that you may incur from dealing with any third party.

Oracle, JD Edwards, PeopleSoft, and Siebel are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments

Preface

1 Overview

About Oracle Cash Management 1-1
- About Bank Reconciliation 1-2
- Bank Statements 1-4
- Matching Bank Statement Lines with Transactions 1-6
- Multi-Currency Handling 1-9
- Integration with Oracle Receivables, Payables, Payroll, and Treasury 1-10

Payables Reconciliation Accounting 1-12
- Payables Reconciliation Examples 1-15

Receivables Reconciliation Accounting 1-18
- Receivables Reconciliation Examples 1-18
- Using Cash Management with Automatic Clearing 1-21

Oracle Payroll Reconciliation 1-22

Oracle Treasury Reconciliation 1-24

About Cash Forecasting 1-24
- Oracle Applications Integration with Cash Forecasting 1-25
- Oracle Projects Integration With Cash Forecasting 1-27
- External Cashflow Open Interface and Distributed Database Integration 1-29
- Cash Forecast Reporting and Spreadsheet Integration 1-29

2 System Setup

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management 2-1

Related Product Setup Steps ... 2-2
Cash Management Setup Checklist ... 2-4
Setting Up Oracle Payables for Oracle Cash Management Integration ... 2-11
Setting Up Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables for Oracle Cash Management Integration ... 2-13
Setting Up Oracle Receivables for Oracle Cash Management Integration ... 2-14
Setting Up Oracle Payroll for Oracle Cash Management Integration ... 2-15
Setting Up Oracle Treasury for Oracle Cash Management Integration ... 2-17
System Parameters ... 2-17
System Parameters Window Reference ... 2-18
Cash Management Security ... 2-21
Bank Transaction Codes ... 2-24
Bank Statement Open Interface ... 2-27
Bank Statement File Formats ... 2-27
Bank Statement Mapping ... 2-31
Using a Custom Loader Program: ... 2-37
Bank Statement Headers Interface Table ... 2-38
Bank Statement Lines Interface Table ... 2-42
Reconciliation Open Interface ... 2-44
Program Submission ... 2-45
Using Reconciliation Open Interface to Reconcile Treasury Settlements ... 2-45
Using Reconciliation Open Interface to Reconcile External Transactions ... 2-46
CE_999_INTERFACE_V Description ... 2-48
Package CE_999_PKG Description and Modifications ... 2-53
Installing External Cash Flow Open Interface Objects in Remote Databases ... 2-57
External Cashflow Open Interface ... 2-57
Program Submission ... 2-58
Preparing to Use the External Cashflow Open Interface ... 2-58
Sequential Document Numbering ... 2-63
Cash Transaction Subtypes ... 2-64

3 Bank Account Setup

Bank Account Model Overview ... 3-1
Define Bank Branches ... 3-3
Bank and Account Administration: Define Bank Accounts ... 3-4
Banks, Bank Branch, and Bank Accounts Window References ... 3-5
Oracle Intercompany Setup Steps ... 3-13
Oracle Payments Setup Steps ... 3-18
Maintaining Bank Account Signing Authorities ... 3-29
Cash Pools ... 3-33

4 Managing Bank Statements

Entering Bank Statements 4-1
Loading the Bank Statement Open Interface Tables..... 4-1
The Bank Statement Loader Program..... 4-1
To Run the Bank Statement Loader Program..... 4-2
Bank Statement Loader Program Parameters..... 4-4
Using a Custom Loader Program:..... 4-5
Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader Program..... 4-5
Submitting the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader Program..... 4-6
Receiving XML Bank Statements..... 4-7
Setting Up Your System to Receive XML Bank Statements..... 4-7
Processing XML Bank Statements..... 4-10
Importing Bank Statements..... 4-11
About Bank Statement Validation..... 4-15
Reviewing Bank Statement Interface Errors 4-17
Statement Interface Window Reference..... 4-18
Reviewing Interface Errors Online for a Specific Statement Line..... 4-20
Bank Statement Line Interface Window Reference..... 4-20
Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors..... 4-21
Entering Bank Statements Manually..... 4-23
Bank Statement Window Reference..... 4-25
Entering Bank Statement Lines..... 4-26
Bank Statement Interface Lines Window Reference..... 4-28
Updating Bank Statements..... 4-30

5 Reconciliation Setup

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically..... 5-1
Submit Automatic Reconciliation Window Reference..... 5-5
Reconciling Sweep Transactions..... 5-6
Reconciliation Tolerances..... 5-8
Multi-Currency Matching..... 5-10
Multi-Currency Clearing..... 5-11
About Value Dates..... 5-14
Reviewing Reconciliation Errors 5-15
Reconciling Bank Statements Manually..... 5-21
Creating Reconciled Bank Statement Lines..... 5-24
Finding Available Detail and Batch Transactions for Reconciliation..... 5-26
Reconciling Available Transactions and Batches..... 5-29
Available Transactions Window Reference..... 5-30

Reconciling an Available Remittance or Payment Batch....5-32
Available Batches Window Reference....5-33
Reviewing Reconciled Transactions....5-34
Reconciled Transactions Window Reference....5-37
Changing the Reconciliation Status....5-38
Using Attachments....5-40
Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions....5-40
Creating Miscellaneous Transactions....5-41
Miscellaneous Receipts Window Reference....5-44
Creating Cashflows from Bank Files....5-45
Recording Exceptions....5-45
Entering Reversals....5-48
Reversals Window Reference....5-50
Reconciling Corrections and Adjustments to Bank Errors....5-51
Manually Clearing and Unclearing....5-54
Clear Transactions Window Reference....5-56
Default Dates Window Reference....5-57
Unclearing Payments and Receipts....5-58
Unclear Transactions Window Reference....5-58
Marking a Bank Statement as Complete....5-59
Transferring Bank Reconciliation Transactions to Your General Ledger....5-60
How Using Cash Management Affects Your Closing Process....5-61
Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements....5-62

6 Cash Forecasting

Cash Forecasting....6-1
Creating Cash Forecast Templates....6-2
Cash Forecasting Source Transaction Dates....6-5
Forecasting Overdue Transactions....6-7
Forecast Template Rows Page Reference....6-8
Generating Cash Forecasts from Templates....6-20
Submission Parameters....6-22
Cash Forecast Results....6-26
Calculation of Opening and Closing Bank Account Balances and GL Cash Position in Cash Forecasting....6-29
Source Transaction Details Page Reference....6-30
Modifying Cash Forecast Templates and Cash Forecasts....6-39
Modifying Forecast Amounts on an Existing Cash Forecast....6-41
Add Rows or Columns Page Reference....6-43
Purging Cash Forecasts....6-44

Exporting Cash Forecasts to Your Spreadsheet Application 6-44
Viewing Cash Forecasts in Discoverer 6-45

7 Cash Positioning

Cash Positioning 7-1
Creating Cash Position Worksheets 7-2
Cash Positioning Source Transaction Dates 7-4
Overdue Transactions In Cash Positioning 7-5
Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions Program 7-6
Cash Position Worksheet Page Reference 7-7
Generating Cash Positions From Worksheets 7-14
Calculation Of Opening and Closing Bank Account Balances in Cash Positioning 7-15
Balance Gapping in Cash Positioning 7-16
Generating a Cash Leveling Proposal 7-17
Viewing Cash Position Results 7-24
Cash Position Results Page: Currency View, Bank Account View, and Cash Pool View Reference 7-27
Source Transaction Details Page Reference 7-28
Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Detail Page Reference 7-32
Available Liquidity Section Details 7-33
Modifying Cash Position Worksheets and Cash Position Results 7-34
Exporting Cash Position Results to Your Spreadsheet Application 7-36
Viewing Cash Positions in Discoverer 7-36

8 Bank Account Balances and Interest Calculations

Bank Account Balances 8-1
Maintaining Balances By Account 8-2
Maintaining Balances For Multiple Accounts 8-3
Balance Reporting 8-3
Interest Rate Schedule 8-5
Interest Calculation 8-7

9 Cash Transactions

Bank Account Transfers 9-1
Payment Templates 9-2
Creating Bank Account Transfers Manually 9-5
Viewing, Updating, and Canceling Bank Account Transfers 9-7
Authorizing Bank Account Transfers 9-8
Processing Payments 9-9
Generating Accounting Entries 9-9

Cashflows 9-9

10 Accounting

Subledger Accounting (SLA) Introduction 10-1
Accounting Events 10-2
Accounting Definitions 10-4
Managing Journal Entries 10-16

11 Inquiry and Reports

Inquiry Overview 11-1
Viewing Bank Statement Reconciliation 11-2
Viewing Available Transactions 11-5
Viewing Bank Account Transfers 11-9
Viewing Cashflows 11-9
Viewing Bank Account Balances 11-10
Viewing Interest Schedules 11-10
Viewing Bank Information 11-11
Viewing Bank Accounts 11-12
Viewing Payments and Receipts 11-17
Cash Management Reports 11-17
Common Report Parameters 11-20
Common Report Headings 11-20
Cash Forecasting Reports 11-20
Cash Forecast Report 11-21
Cash Forecast Execution Report 11-22
Purge Cash Forecasts Report 11-23
Statements Reports 11-23
Archive/Purge Bank Statements Report 11-24
AutoReconciliation Execution Report 11-24
Bank Statement Detail Report 11-24
Bank Statement Loader Execution Report 11-25
Bank Statement Summary Report 11-26
Bank Statements by Document Number Report 11-26
GL Reconciliation Report 11-27
Bank Statement Cashflow Creation Execution Report 11-29
Sweep Transactions Generation Execution Report 11-29
Transactions Reports 11-30
Cash in Transit Report 11-30
Cleared Transactions Report 11-31
Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report 11-33

Batches Available for Reconciliation Report 11-36
Balances Reports 11-37
Payment Exceptions Report 11-39
Cash Management Listings 11-39
Bank Transaction Codes Listing 11-39
Cash Forecast Template Listing 11-41
Cash Management Programs 11-41

A Navigation Paths

Cash Management Window Navigation Paths A-1

B Profile Options

Setting Profile Options for Cash Management B-1
Profile Options Summary B-1
Profile Options in Cash Management B-2
Profile Options Affecting, But Not Owned By, Cash Management B-2

C Function Security in Oracle Cash Management

Function Security in Cash Management C-1

D Bank Statement Mapping Templates

BAI2 Mapping Template D-1
SWIFT940 Mapping Template D-6
EDIFACT - France Mapping Template D-12

E XML Mapping Rules

XML Mapping Rules for Statement Header Information E-1
XML Mapping Rules for Statement Line Information E-7

F Country Specific Bank Account Validations

Introduction F-1
Bank Account Validation by Country F-2

Index

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Cash Management User Guide, Release 12

Part No. B31429-04

Oracle welcomes customers' comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document. Your feedback is important, and helps us to best meet your needs as a user of our products. For example:

- Are the implementation steps correct and complete?
- Did you understand the context of the procedures?
- Did you find any errors in the information?
- Does the structure of the information help you with your tasks?
- Do you need different information or graphics? If so, where, and in what format?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, then please tell us your name, the name of the company who has licensed our products, the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available).

Note: Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the new Applications Release Online Documentation CD available on Oracle MetaLink and www.oracle.com. It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: appsdoc_us@oracle.com

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.

If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at www.oracle.com.

Preface

Intended Audience

Welcome to Release 12 of the *Oracle Cash Management User Guide.*

This guide assumes you have a working knowledge of the following:

- The principles and customary practices of your business area.
- Computer desktop application usage and terminology

If you have never used Oracle Applications, we suggest you attend one or more of the Oracle Applications training classes available through Oracle University.

See Related Information Sources on page xv for more Oracle Applications product information.

TTY Access to Oracle Support Services

Oracle provides dedicated Text Telephone (TTY) access to Oracle Support Services within the United States of America 24 hours a day, seven days a week. For TTY support, call 800.446.2398.

Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible, with good usability, to the disabled community. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Accessibility standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For more information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site

at http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/ .

Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

Screen readers may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, some screen readers may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation

This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle does not own or control. Oracle neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

Structure

1 Overview

2 System Setup

This chapter tells you how to set up Cash Management after you have installed. It includes an overview with list of setup steps and corresponding detailed instructions.

3 Bank Account Setup

4 Managing Bank Statements

5 Reconciliation Setup

6 Cash Forecasting

This chapter tells you how to use Cash Forecasting. It explains how to create cash forecast templates, generate cash forecasts from those templates, and make changes to those templates and forecasts.

7 Cash Positioning

This chapter tells you how to use Cash Positioning. It explains how to create cash position worksheets, generate daily cash positions from these worksheets, and view the cash position results.

8 Bank Account Balances and Interest Calculations

9 Cash Transactions

10 Accounting

11 Inquiry and Reports

A Navigation Paths

This appendix describes the default navigation paths for each window in Cash Management.

B Profile Options

This appendix the profile options affecting the Cash Management operations.

C Function Security in Oracle Cash Management

This appendix describes which Cash Management functions and features are controlled by function security.

D Bank Statement Mapping Templates

This appendix describes the rules for the predefined mapping templates in Cash Management, BAI2, SWIFT940, and EDIFACT - France.

E XML Mapping Rules

This appendix contains the column mapping rules between the attributes of the XML bank statement and the Open Interface Tables in Oracle Cash Management.

F Country Specific Bank Account Validations

Related Information Sources

This document is included on the Oracle Applications Document Library, which is supplied in the Release 12 DVD Pack. You can download soft-copy documentation as PDF files from the Oracle Technology Network at http://otn.oracle.com/documentation, or you can purchase hard-copy documentation from the Oracle Store at http://oraclestore.oracle.com. The Oracle E-Business Suite Documentation Library Release 12 contains the latest information, including any documents that have changed significantly between releases. If substantial changes to this book are necessary, a revised version will be made available on the online documentation CD on Oracle *MetaLink*.

If this guide refers you to other Oracle Applications documentation, use only the Release 12 versions of those guides.

For a full list of documentation resources for Oracle Applications Release 12, see Oracle Applications Documentation Resources, Release 12, Oracle*MetaLink* Document 394692.1.

Online Documentation

All Oracle Applications documentation is available online (HTML or PDF).

- **PDF** - PDF documentation is available for download from the Oracle Technology Network at http://otn.oracle.com/documentation.

- **Online Help** - Online help patches (HTML) are available on Oracle*MetaLink*.

- **About Documents** - Refer to the About Document for the mini-pack or family pack that you have installed to learn about new documentation or documentation patches that you can download. About Documents are available on Oracle*MetaLink*.

- **Oracle MetaLink Knowledge Browser** - The Oracle*MetaLink* Knowledge Browser lets you browse the knowledge base, from a single product page, to find all documents for that product area. Use the Knowledge Browser to search for release-specific information, such as FAQs, recent patches, alerts, white papers, troubleshooting tips, and other archived documents.

- **Oracle eBusiness Suite Electronic Technical Reference Manuals -** Each Electronic Technical Reference Manual (eTRM) contains database diagrams and a detailed description of database tables, forms, reports, and programs for a specific Oracle

Applications product. This information helps you convert data from your existing applications and integrate Oracle Applications data with non-Oracle applications, and write custom reports for Oracle Applications products. Oracle eTRM is available on Oracle*MetaLink.*

Related Guides

You should have the following related books on hand. Depending on the requirements of your particular installation, you may also need additional manuals or guides.

Oracle Alert User's Guide

This guide explains how to define periodic and event alerts to monitor the status of your Oracle Applications data.

Oracle Applications Concepts

This book is intended for all those planning to deploy Oracle E-Business Suite Release 12, or contemplating significant changes to a configuration. After describing the Oracle Applications architecture and technology stack, it focuses on strategic topics, giving a broad outline of the actions needed to achieve a particular goal, plus the installation and configuration choices that may be available.

Oracle Applications CRM System Administrator's Guide

This manual describes how to implement the CRM Technology Foundation (JTT) and use its System Administrator Console.

Oracle Applications Developer's Guide

This guide contains the coding standards followed by the Oracle Applications development staff. It describes the Oracle Application Object Library components needed to implement the Oracle Applications user interface described in the *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-Based Products*. It also provides information to help you build your custom Oracle Forms Developer forms so that they integrate with Oracle Applications.

Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide

This guide provides flexfields planning, setup, and reference information for the Oracle Applications implementation team, as well as for users responsible for the ongoing maintenance of Oracle Applications product data. This guide also provides information on creating custom reports on flexfields data.

Oracle Application Framework Developer's Guide

This guide contains the coding standards followed by the Oracle Applications development staff to produce applications built with Oracle Application Framework. This guide is available in PDF format on Oracle*MetaLink* and as online documentation in JDeveloper 10*g* with Oracle Application Extension.

Oracle Application Framework Personalization Guide

This guide covers the design-time and run-time aspects of personalizing applications built with Oracle Application Framework.

Oracle Applications Installation Guide: Using Rapid Install

This book is intended for use by anyone who is responsible for installing or upgrading Oracle Applications. It provides instructions for running Rapid Install either to carry out a fresh installation of Oracle Applications Release 12, or as part of an upgrade from Release 11*i* to Release 12. The book also describes the steps needed to install the technology stack components only, for the special situations where this is applicable.

Oracle Applications Multiple Organizations Implementation Guide

This guide describes the multiple organizations concepts in Oracle Applications. It describes in detail on setting up and working effectively with multiple organizations in Oracle Applications.

This guide covers the use of OracleAS Adapter in developing integrations between Oracle applications and trading partners.

Please note that this guide is in the Oracle Application Server 10*g* (10.1.3.1) Documentation Library.

This manual contains information on Oracle Diagnostics and the Logging Framework for system administrators and custom developers.

Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide Documentation Set

This documentation set provides planning and reference information for the Oracle Applications System Administrator. *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration* contains information on system configuration steps, including defining concurrent programs and managers, enabling Oracle Applications Manager features, and setting up printers and online help. *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance* provides information for frequent tasks such as monitoring your system with Oracle Applications Manager, managing concurrent managers and reports, using diagnostic utilities, managing profile options, and using alerts. *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security* describes User Management, data security, function security, auditing, and security configurations.

Oracle Applications User's Guide

This guide explains how to navigate, enter data, query, and run reports using the user interface (UI) of Oracle Applications. This guide also includes information on setting user profiles, as well as running and reviewing concurrent requests.

Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-Based Products

This guide contains the user interface (UI) standards followed by the Oracle Applications development staff. It describes the UI for the Oracle Applications products and how to apply this UI to the design of an application built by using Oracle Forms.

Oracle e-Commerce Gateway User's Guide

This guide describes the functionality of Oracle e-Commerce Gateway and the necessary setup steps in order for Oracle Applications to conduct business with trading partners through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). It also contains how to run extract programs for outbound transactions, import programs for inbound transactions, and

the relevant reports.

Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Implementation Manual

This guide describes implementation details, highlights additional setups for trading partner, code conversion, and Oracle Applications as well as provides the architecture guidelines for transaction interface files. This guide also contains troubleshooting information and how to customize EDI transactions.

Oracle Integration Repository User's Guide

This guide covers the employment of Oracle Integration Repository in researching and deploying business interfaces to produce integrations between applications.

Oracle Report Manager User's Guide

Oracle Report Manager is an online report distribution system that provides a secure and centralized location to produce and manage point-in-time reports. Oracle Report Manager users can be either report producers or report consumers. Use this guide for information on setting up and using Oracle Report Manager.

Oracle iSetup User Guide

This guide describes how to use Oracle iSetup to migrate data between different instances of the Oracle E-Business Suite and generate reports. It also includes configuration information, instance mapping, and seeded templates used for data migration.

Oracle Web Applications Desktop Integrator Implementation and Administration Guide

Oracle Web ADI brings Oracle E-Business Suite functionality to a spreadsheet where familiar data entry and modeling techniques can be used to complete Oracle E-Business Suite tasks. You can create formatted spreadsheets on your desktop that allow you to download, view, edit, and create Oracle E-Business Suite data that you can then upload. Use this guide to implement Oracle Web ADI and for information on defining mappings, layouts, style sheets, and other setup options.

Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide

This guide explains how to complete the setup steps necessary for any product that includes workflow-enabled processes. It also describes how to manage workflow processes and business events using Oracle Applications Manager, how to monitor the progress of runtime workflow processes, and how to administer notifications sent to workflow users.

Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide

This guide explains how to define new workflow business processes and customize existing Oracle Applications-embedded workflow processes. It also describes how to define and customize business events and event subscriptions.

Oracle Workflow User's Guide

This guide describes how users can view and respond to workflow notifications and

monitor the progress of their workflow processes.

Oracle Workflow API Reference

This guide describes the APIs provided for developers and administrators to access Oracle Workflow.

Oracle XML Gateway User's Guide

This guide describes Oracle XML Gateway functionality and each component of the Oracle XML Gateway architecture, including Message Designer, Oracle XML Gateway Setup, Execution Engine, Message Queues, and Oracle Transport Agent. The integrations with Oracle Workflow Business Event System and the Business-to-Business transactions are also addressed in this guide.

Oracle XML Publisher Report Designer's Guide

Oracle XML Publisher is a template-based reporting solution that merges XML data with templates in RTF or PDF format to produce a variety of outputs to meet a variety of business needs. Using Microsoft Word or Adobe Acrobat as the design tool, you can create pixel-perfect reports from the Oracle E-Business Suite. Use this guide to design your report layouts.

Oracle XML Publisher Administration and Developer's Guide

Oracle XML Publisher is a template-based reporting solution that merges XML data with templates in RTF or PDF format to produce a variety of outputs to meet a variety of business needs. Outputs include: PDF, HTML, Excel, RTF, and eText (for EDI and EFT transactions). Oracle XML Publisher can be used to generate reports based on existing Oracle Applications report data, or you can use Oracle XML Publisher's data extraction engine to build your own queries. Oracle XML Publisher also provides a robust set of APIs to manage delivery of your reports via e-mail, fax, secure FTP, printer, WebDav, and more. This guide describes how to set up and administer Oracle XML Publisher as well as how to use the Application Programming Interface to build custom solutions.

Oracle Applications Installation Guide: Using Rapid Install:

This book is intended for use by anyone who is responsible for installing or upgrading Oracle Applications. It provides instructions for running Rapid Install either to carry out a fresh installation of Oracle Applications Release 12, or as part of an upgrade from Release 11i to Release 12. The book also describes the steps needed to install the technology stack components only, for the special situations where this is applicable.

Oracle Applications Upgrade Guide: Release 11i to Release 12:

This guide provides information for DBAs and Applications Specialists who are responsible for upgrading a Release 11i Oracle Applications system (techstack and products) to Release 12. In addition to information about applying the upgrade driver, it outlines pre-upgrade steps and post-upgrade steps, and provides descriptions of product-specific functional changes and suggestions for verifying the upgrade and reducing downtime.

Oracle Applications Patching Procedures:

This guide describes how to patch the Oracle Applications file system and database using AutoPatch, and how to use other patching-related tools like AD Merge Patch, OAM Patch Wizard, and OAM Registered Flagged Files. Describes patch types and structure, and outlines some of the most commonly used patching procedures. Part of Maintaining Oracle Applications, a 3-book set that also includes Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities and Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures.

Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities:

This guide describes how to run utilities, such as AD Administration and AD Controller, used to maintain the Oracle Applications file system and database. Outlines the actions performed by these utilities, such as monitoring parallel processes, generating Applications files, and maintaining Applications database entities. Part of Maintaining Oracle Applications, a 3-book set that also includes Oracle Applications Patching Procedures and Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures.

Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures:

This guide describes how to use AD maintenance utilities to complete tasks such as compiling invalid objects, managing parallel processing jobs, and maintaining snapshot information. Part of Maintaining Oracle Applications, a 3-book set that also includes Oracle Applications Patching Procedures and Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities.

Oracle Applications Concepts:

This book is intended for all those planning to deploy Oracle E-Business Suite Release 12, or contemplating significant changes to a configuration. After describing the Oracle Applications architecture and technology stack, it focuses on strategic topics, giving a broad outline of the actions needed to achieve a particular goal, plus the installation and configuration choices that may be available.

Oracle Advanced Global Intercompany System User's Guide:

This guide describes the self service application pages available for Intercompany users. It includes information on setting up intercompany, entering intercompany transactions, importing transactions from external sources and generating reports.

Oracle Applications Multiple Organizations Implementation Guide:

This guide describes the multiple organizations concepts in Oracle Applications. It describes in detail on setting up and working effectively with multiple organizations in Oracle Applications.

This guide provides you with information on how to implement and use Oracle Assets. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including defining depreciation books, depreciation method, and asset categories. It also contains information on setting up assets in the system, maintaining assets, retiring and reinstating assets, depreciation, group depreciation, accounting and tax accounting, budgeting, online inquiries, impairment processing, and Oracle Assets reporting. The guide explains using Oracle Assets with Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC). This

guide also includes a comprehensive list of profile options that you can set to customize application behavior.

Oracle Balanced Scorecard User Guide:

This guide describes how to use Oracle Balanced Scorecard to manage performance. It contains information on how to use scorecard views and objective reports.

Oracle Balanced Scorecard Administrator Guide:

This guide describes how to set up and administer Oracle Balanced Scorecard and scorecard systems. For scorecard designers, this guide explains how to design and prototype scorecards and measures. It also explains how to move scorecards into production. For administrators, this guide explains how to generate the database schema; load data; manage user and scorecard security; and migrate scorecards to other instances.

Oracle Balanced Scorecard Install Guide:

This guide describes how to how to install the Balanced Scorecard Architect components.

Oracle Credit Management User Guide:

This guide provides you with information on how to use Oracle Credit Management. This guide includes implementation steps, such as how to set up credit policies, as well as details on how to use the credit review process to derive credit recommendations that comply with your credit policies. This guide also includes detailed information about the public application programming interfaces (APIs) that you can use to extend Oracle Credit Management functionality.

Oracle Customers Online User Guide:

This guide describes how to use Oracle Customers Online to view, create, and maintain your customer information. Oracle Customers Online is based on Oracle Trading Community Architecture data model and functionality, and is also part of the Oracle Customer Data Management product family.

Oracle Customers Online Implementation Guide:

This guide describes how to implement Oracle Customers Online.

Oracle Daily Business Intelligence Implementation Guide:

This guide describes how to implement Oracle Daily Business Intelligence, including information on how to create custom dashboards, reports, and key performance indicators.

Oracle Daily Business Intelligence User Guide:

This guide describes how to use the preseeded Daily Business Intelligence dashboards, reports, and key performance indicators.

Oracle E-Business Tax User Guide:

This guide describes the entire process of setting up and maintaining tax configuration

data, as well as applying tax data to the transaction line. It describes the entire regime-to-rate setup flow of tax regimes, taxes, statuses, rates, recovery rates, tax jurisdictions, and tax rules. It also describes setting up and maintaining tax reporting codes, fiscal classifications, tax profiles, tax registrations, configuration options, and third party service provider subscriptions. You also use this manual to maintain migrated tax data for use with E-Business Tax.

Oracle E-Business Tax Implementation Guide:

This guide provides a conceptual overview of the E-Business Tax tax engine, and describes the prerequisite implementation steps to complete in other applications in order to set up and use E-Business Tax. The guide also includes extensive examples of setting up country-specific tax requirements.

Oracle E-Business Tax Reporting Guide:

This guide explains how to run all tax reports that make use of the E-Business Tax data extract. This includes the Tax Reporting Ledger and other core tax reports, country-specific VAT reports, and Latin Tax Engine reports.

Oracle E-Business Tax: Vertex Q-Series and Taxware Sales/Use Tax System Implementation Guide

This guide explains how to setup and use the services of third party tax service providers for US Sales and Use tax. The tax service providers are Vertex Q-Series and Taxware Sales/Use Tax System. When implemented, the Oracle E-Business Tax service subscription calls one of these tax service providers to return a tax rate or amount whenever US Sales and Use tax is calculated by the Oracle E-Business Tax tax engine. This guide provides setup steps, information about day-to-day business processes, and a technical reference section.

Oracle Enterprise Performance Foundation User's Guide:

This guide describes Oracle Enterprise Performance Foundation, an open and shared repository of data and business rules that provides the framework for all of the applications in the Corporate Performance Management set of products. It describes the product features that allow you to manage repository metadata and enable you to generate management reports and perform analyses.

Oracle Enterprise Planning and Budgeting User's Guide:

This guide describes Enterprise Planning and Budgeting, which is an enterprise application that provides rich functionality to control the business processes of planning, budgeting, and forecasting. Enterprise Planning and Budgeting is deployed as a Web based solution using the power of Oracle relational technology to deliver scalable, multi-dimensional analysis and monitoring.

Oracle Financial Consolidation Hub User Guide:

This guide describes how to set up, maintain, and troubleshoot Oracle Financial Consolidation Hub. It describes setting up entities, categories, consolidation methods, consolidation rules, intercompany rules, calendar maps, translation, consolidation hierarchies, analytical reporting, and the Excel add-in. The guide also includes chapters

on submitting data, running consolidations, accounting for acquisitions and disposals, integrating with Internal Controls Manager and WebADI spreadsheets.

Oracle Financial Services Reference Guide:

This guide provides reference material for Oracle Financial Services applications in Release 12, such as Oracle Transfer Pricing, and includes technical details about application use as well as general concepts, equations, and calculations.

Oracle Financial Services Implementation Guide:

This guide describes how to set up Oracle Financial Services applications in Release 12.

Oracle Financial Services Reporting Administration Guide:

This guide describes the reporting architecture of Oracle Financial Services applications in Release 12, and provides information on how to view these reports.

Oracle Financials and Oracle Procurement Functional Upgrade Guide: Release 11i to Release 12:

This guides provides detailed information about the functional impacts of upgrading Oracle Financials and Oracle Procurement products from Release 11i to Release 12. This guide supplements the *Oracle Applications Upgrade Guide: Release 11i to Release 12*.

Oracle Financials Concepts Guide:

This guide describes the fundamental concepts of Oracle Financials. The guide is intended to introduce readers to the concepts used in the applications, and help them compare their real world business, organization, and processes to those used in the applications.

Oracle Financials Country-Specific Installation Supplement:

This guide provides general country information, such as responsibilities and report security groups, as well as any post-install steps required by some countries.

Oracle Financials for the Americas User Guide:

This guide describes functionality developed to meet specific business practices in countries belonging to the Americas region. Consult this user guide along with your financial product user guides to effectively use Oracle Financials in your country.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific User Guide:

This guide describes functionality developed to meet specific business practices in countries belonging to the Asia/Pacific region. Consult this user guide along with your financial product user guides to effectively use Oracle Financials in your country.

Oracle Financials for Europe User Guide:

This guide describes functionality developed to meet specific business practices in countries belonging to the European region. Consult this user guide along with your financial product user guides to effectively use Oracle Financials in your country.

Oracle Financials for India User Guide:

This guide provides information on how to use Oracle Financials for India. Use this guide to learn how to create and maintain setup related to India taxes, defaulting and calculation of taxes on transactions. This guide also includes information about accounting and reporting of taxes related to India.

Oracle Financials for India Implementation Guide:

This guide provides information on how to implement Oracle Financials for India. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including how to set up taxes, tax defaulting hierarchies, set up different tax regimes, organization and transactions.

Oracle Financials Glossary:

The glossary includes definitions of common terms that are shared by all Oracle Financials products. In some cases, there may be different definitions of the same term for different Financials products. If you are unsure of the meaning of a term you see in an Oracle Financials guide, please refer to the glossary for clarification. You can find the glossary in the online help or in the *Oracle Financials Implementation Guide*.

Oracle Financials Implementation Guide:

This guide provides information on how to implement the Oracle Financials E-Business Suite. It guides you through setting up your organizations, including legal entities, and their accounting, using the Accounting Setup Manager. It covers intercompany accounting and sequencing of accounting entries, and it provides examples.

Oracle Financials RXi Reports Administration Tool User Guide:

This guide describes how to use the RXi reports administration tool to design the content and layout of RXi reports. RXi reports let you order, edit, and present report information to better meet your company's reporting needs.

Oracle General Ledger Implementation Guide:

This guide provides information on how to implement Oracle General Ledger. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including how to set up Accounting Flexfields, Accounts, and Calendars.

Oracle General Ledger Reference Guide

This guide provides detailed information about setting up General Ledger Profile Options and Applications Desktop Integrator (ADI) Profile Options.

Oracle General Ledger User's Guide:

This guide provides information on how to use Oracle General Ledger. Use this guide to learn how to create and maintain ledgers, ledger currencies, budgets, and journal entries. This guide also includes information about running financial reports.

Oracle Internal Controls Manager Implementation Guide:

This guide describes implementation information for Oracle Internal Controls Manager, a comprehensive tool for executives, controllers, internal audit departments, and public accounting firms to document and test internal controls and monitor ongoing

compliance. It is based on COSO (Committee of Sponsoring Organizations) standards.

Oracle Internet Expenses Implementation and Administration Guide:

This book explains in detail how to configure Oracle Internet Expenses and describes its integration with other applications in the E-Business Suite, such as Oracle Payables and Oracle Projects. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including how to set up policy and rate schedules, credit card policies, audit automation, and the expenses spreadsheet. This guide also includes detailed information about the client extensions that you can use to extend Oracle Internet Expenses functionality.

Oracle iAssets User Guide

This guide provides information on how to implement and use Oracle iAssets. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including setting up Oracle iAssets rules and related product setup steps. It explains how to define approval rules to facilitate the approval process. It also includes information on using the Oracle iAssets user interface to search for assets, create self-service transfer requests and view notifications.

Oracle iProcurement Implementation and Administration Guide:

This manual describes how to set up and administer Oracle iProcurement. Oracle iProcurement enables employees to requisition items through a self–service, Web interface.

Oracle iReceivables Implementation Guide:

This guide provides information on how to implement Oracle iReceivables. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including how to set up and configure iReceivables, and how to set up the Credit Memo Request workflow. There is also a chapter that provides an overview of major features available in iReceivables.

Oracle iSupplier Portal User Guide:

This guide contains information on how to use Oracle iSupplier Portal to enable secure transactions between buyers and suppliers using the Internet. Using Oracle iSupplier Portal, suppliers can monitor and respond to events in the procure-to-pay cycle.

Oracle iSupplier Portal Implementation Guide:

This guide contains information on how to implement Oracle iSupplier Portal and enable secure transactions between buyers and suppliers using the Internet.

Oracle Loans User Guide:

This guide describes how to set up and use Oracle Loans. It includes information on how to create, approve, fund, amortize, bill, and service extended repayment plan and direct loans.

Oracle Partner Management Implementation and Administration Guide:

This guide helps Vendor administrators to set up and maintain relationships and

programs in the Partner Management application. The main areas include setting up the partner and channel manager dashboards, partner setup, partner programs and enrollment, opportunity and referral management, deal registration, special pricing management, and partner fund management.

Oracle Partner Management Vendor User Guide:

This guide assists vendor users in using Partner Management on a daily basis. This includes interaction with the partner and channel manager dashboards, working with partners and partner programs, managing opportunities and referrals, registering deals, and working with special pricing and partner funds.

Oracle Payables User Guide:

This guide describes how to use Oracle Payables to create invoices and make payments. In addition, it describes how to enter and manage suppliers, import invoices using the Payables open interface, manage purchase order and receipt matching, apply holds to invoices, and validate invoices. It contains information on managing expense reporting, procurement cards, and credit cards. This guide also explains the accounting for Payables transactions.

Oracle Payables Implementation Guide:

This guide provides you with information on how to implement Oracle Payables. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for how to set up suppliers, payments, accounting, and tax.

Oracle Payables Reference Guide:

This guide provides you with detailed information about the Oracle Payables open interfaces, such as the Invoice open interface, which lets you import invoices. It also includes reference information on purchase order matching and purging purchasing information.

Oracle Payments Implementation Guide:

This guide describes how Oracle Payments, as the central payment engine for the Oracle E-Business Suite, processes transactions, such as invoice payments from Oracle Payables, bank account transfers from Oracle Cash Management, and settlements against credit cards and bank accounts from Oracle Receivables. This guide also describes how Oracle Payments is integrated with financial institutions and payment systems for receipt and payment processing, known as funds capture and funds disbursement, respectively. Additionally, the guide explains to the implementer how to plan the implementation of Oracle Payments, how to configure it, set it up, test transactions, and how use it with external payment systems.

Oracle Payments User Guide:

This guide describes how Oracle Payments, as the central payment engine for the Oracle E-Business Suite, processes transactions, such as invoice payments from Oracle Payables, bank account transfers from Oracle Cash Management, and settlements against credit cards and bank accounts from Oracle Receivables. This guide also describes to the Payment Administrator how to monitor the funds capture and funds

disbursement processes, as well as how to remedy any errors that may arise.

Oracle Public Sector Financials User Guide:

This guide describes how to set up and administer Oracle Public Sector Advanced Features. It describes Encumbrance Reconciliation Reports, GASB 34/35 Asset Accounting, and Funds Available Enhancements.

Oracle Purchasing User's Guide:

This guide describes how to create and approve purchasing documents, including requisitions, different types of purchase orders, quotations, RFQs, and receipts. This guide also describes how to manage your supply base through agreements, sourcing rules, and approved supplier lists. In addition, this guide explains how you can automatically create purchasing documents based on business rules through integration with Oracle Workflow technology, which automates many of the key procurement processes.

Oracle Receivables User Guide:

This guide provides you with information on how to use Oracle Receivables. Use this guide to learn how to create and maintain transactions and bills receivable, enter and apply receipts, enter customer information, and manage revenue. This guide also includes information about accounting in Receivables. Use the Standard Navigation Paths appendix to find out how to access each Receivables window.

Oracle Receivables Implementation Guide:

This guide provides you with information on how to implement Oracle Receivables. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including how to set up customers, transactions, receipts, accounting, tax, and collections. This guide also includes a comprehensive list of profile options that you can set to customize application behavior.

Oracle Receivables Reference Guide:

This guide provides you with detailed information about all public application programming interfaces (APIs) that you can use to extend Oracle Receivables functionality. This guide also describes the Oracle Receivables open interfaces, such as AutoLockbox which lets you create and apply receipts and AutoInvoice which you can use to import and validate transactions from other systems. Archiving and purging Receivables data is also discussed in this guide.

Oracle Sourcing Implementation and Administration Guide:

This guide contains information on how to implement Oracle Sourcing to enable participants from multiple organizations to exchange information, conduct bid and auction processes, and create and implement buying agreements. This allows professional buyers, business experts, and suppliers to participate in a more agile and accurate sourcing process.

Oracle Subledger Accounting Implementation Guide:

This guide provides setup information for Oracle Subledger Accounting features,

including the Accounting Methods Builder. You can use the Accounting Methods Builder to create and modify the setup for subledger journal lines and application accounting definitions for Oracle subledger applications. This guide also discusses the reports available in Oracle Subledger Accounting and describes how to inquire on subledger journal entries.

Oracle Supplier Scheduling User's Guide:

This guide describes how you can use Oracle Supplier Scheduling to calculate and maintain planning and shipping schedules and communicate them to your suppliers.

Oracle Trading Community Architecture User Guide:

This guide describes the Oracle Trading Community Architecture (TCA) and how to use features from the Trading Community Manager responsibility to create, update, enrich, and cleanse the data in the TCA Registry. It also describes how to use Resource Manager to define and manage resources.

Oracle Trading Community Architecture Administration Guide:

This guide describes how to administer and implement Oracle Trading Community Architecture (TCA). You set up, control, and manage functionality that affects data in the TCA Registry. It also describes how to set up and use Resource Manager to manage resources.

Oracle Trading Community Architecture Reference Guide:

This guide contains seeded relationship types, seeded Data Quality Management data, D&B data elements, Bulk Import interface table fields and validations, and a comprehensive glossary. This guide supplements the documentation for Oracle Trading Community Architecture and all products in the Oracle Customer Data Management family.

Oracle Trading Community Architecture Technical Implementation Guide:

This guide explains how to use the public Oracle Trading Community Architecture application programming interfaces (APIs) and develop callouts based on Oracle Workflow Business Events System (BES). For each API, this guide provides a description of the API, the PL/SQL procedure, and the Java method, as well as a table of the parameter descriptions and validations. For each BES callout, this guide provides the name of the logical entity, its description, and the ID parameter name. Also included are setup instructions and sample code.

Oracle Transfer Pricing User Guide:

This guide contains the information you need to understand and use Oracle Transfer Pricing, including how to generate transfer rates and option costs for your product portfolio and determine account level match-funded spreads.

Oracle U.S. Federal Financials User's Guide:

This guide describes the common concepts for an integrated financial management solution for federal agencies to comply with the requirements of the U.S. Federal government. It describes the product architecture and provides information on Budget

Execution, Prompt Payment, Treasury payments, Third party payments, Interagency transactions, Receivables management, Federal reports, CCR Integration, and Year End Closing.

Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Implementation Guide:

This guide describes the common concepts for an integrated financial management solution for federal agencies. It includes a consolidated setup checklist by page and provides detailed information on how to set up, maintain, and troubleshoot the Federal Financial application for the following functional areas: Sub Ledger Accounting, Budget Execution, Prompt Payment, Treasury payments, Third party payments, Interagency transactions, Receivables management, Federal reports, CCR Integration, and Year End Closing.

Oracle Projects Documentation Set

Oracle Projects Implementation Guide:

Use this manual as a guide for implementing Oracle Projects. This manual also includes appendixes covering security functions, menus and responsibilities, and profile options.

Oracle Projects Fundamentals:

Oracle Project Fundamentals provides the common foundation shared across the Oracle Projects products (Project Costing, Project Billing, Project Resource Management, Project Management, and Project Portfolio Analysis). Use this guide to learn fundamental information about the Oracle Projects solution. This guide includes a Navigation Paths appendix. Use this appendix to find out how to access each window in the Oracle Projects solution.

Oracle Project Costing User Guide:

Use this guide to learn detailed information about Oracle Project Costing. Oracle Project Costing provides the tools for processing project expenditures, including calculating their cost to each project and determining the GL accounts to which the costs are posted.

Oracle Project Billing User Guide:

This guide shows you how to use Oracle Project Billing to define revenue and invoicing rules for your projects, generate revenue, create invoices, and integrate with other Oracle Applications to process revenue and invoices, process client invoicing, and measure the profitability of your contract projects.

Oracle Project Management User Guide:

This guide shows you how to use Oracle Project Management to manage projects through their lifecycles -- from planning, through execution, to completion.

Oracle Project Portfolio Analysis User Guide:

This guide contains the information you need to understand and use Oracle Project Portfolio Analysis. It includes information about project portfolios, planning cycles, and metrics for ranking and selecting projects for a project portfolio.

Oracle Project Resource Management User Guide:

This guide provides you with information on how to use Oracle Project Resource Management. It includes information about staffing, scheduling, and reporting on project resources.

Oracle Projects Glossary:

This glossary provides definitions of terms that are shared by all Oracle Projects applications. If you are unsure of the meaning of a term you see in an Oracle Projects guide, please refer to the glossary for clarification. You can find the glossary in the online help for Oracle Projects, and in the Oracle Projects Fundamentals book.

Oracle Grants Accounting Documentation

Oracle Grants Accounting User Guide:

This guide provides you with information about how to implement and use Oracle Grants Accounting. Use this guide to understand the implementation steps required for application use, including defining award types, award templates, allowed cost schedules, and burden set up. This guide also explains how to use Oracle Grants Accounting to track grants and funded projects from inception to final reporting.

Oracle Property Manager Documentation

Oracle Property Manager User Guide:

Use this guide to learn how to use Oracle Property Manager to create and administer properties, space assignments, and lease agreements.

Oracle Property Manager Implementation Guide:

Use this guide to learn how to implement Oracle Property Manager and perform basic setup steps such as setting system options and creating lookup codes, contacts, milestones, grouping rules, term templates, and a location hierarchy. This guide also describes the setup steps that you must complete in other Oracle applications before you can use Oracle Property Manager.

Integration Repository

The Oracle Integration Repository is a compilation of information about the service endpoints exposed by the Oracle E-Business Suite of applications. It provides a complete catalog of Oracle E-Business Suite's business service interfaces. The tool lets users easily discover and deploy the appropriate business service interface for integration with any system, application, or business partner.

The Oracle Integration Repository is shipped as part of the E-Business Suite. As your instance is patched, the repository is automatically updated with content appropriate for the precise revisions of interfaces in your environment.

Do Not Use Database Tools to Modify Oracle Applications Data

Oracle STRONGLY RECOMMENDS that you never use SQL*Plus, Oracle Data Browser, database triggers, or any other tool to modify Oracle Applications data unless otherwise instructed.

Oracle provides powerful tools you can use to create, store, change, retrieve, and maintain information in an Oracle database. But if you use Oracle tools such as SQL*Plus to modify Oracle Applications data, you risk destroying the integrity of your data and you lose the ability to audit changes to your data.

Because Oracle Applications tables are interrelated, any change you make using an Oracle Applications form can update many tables at once. But when you modify Oracle Applications data using anything other than Oracle Applications, you may change a row in one table without making corresponding changes in related tables. If your tables get out of synchronization with each other, you risk retrieving erroneous information and you risk unpredictable results throughout Oracle Applications.

When you use Oracle Applications to modify your data, Oracle Applications automatically checks that your changes are valid. Oracle Applications also keeps track of who changes information. If you enter information into database tables using database tools, you may store invalid information. You also lose the ability to track who has changed your information because SQL*Plus and other database tools do not keep a record of changes.

1

Overview

This chapter covers the following topics:

- About Oracle Cash Management
- Payables Reconciliation Accounting
- Receivables Reconciliation Accounting
- Oracle Payroll ReconciliationreconciliationOracle PayrollOracle Payrollreconciliation
- Oracle Treasury Reconciliation
- About Cash Forecastingcash forecastingoverviewExcelintegration with Cash Forecastingintegrationcash forecastingexpense reports

About Oracle Cash Management

Oracle Cash Management is an enterprise cash management solution that helps you effectively manage and control your cash cycle. It provides comprehensive bank reconciliation and flexible cash forecasting.

Related Topics

About Bank Reconciliation, page 1-2

About Bank Statements, page 1-4

Matching Bank Statement Lines with Transactions, page 1-6

Multi-Currency Handling, page 1-9

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Oracle Payroll Reconciliation, page 1-22

Using Cash Management with Automatic Clearing, page 1-21

About Cash Forecasting, page 1-24

About Bank Reconciliation

There are two major process steps you need to follow when reconciling bank statements:

1. **Load Bank Statements:** You need to enter the detailed information from each bank statement, including bank account information, deposits received by the bank, and payments cleared. You can enter bank statements manually or load electronic statements that you receive directly from your bank. (See: Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23 and Loading Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1)

2. **Reconcile Bank Statements:** Once you have entered detailed bank statement information into Cash Management, you must reconcile that information with your system transactions. Cash Management provides two methods of reconciliation:

   - Automatic-Bank statement details are automatically matched and reconciled with system transactions. This method is ideally suited for bank accounts that have a high volume of transactions. (See: Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1)

   - Manual-This method requires you to manually match bank statement details with system transactions. The method is ideally suited to reconciling bank accounts that have a small volume of monthly transactions. You can also use the manual reconciliation method to reconcile any bank statement details that could not be reconciled automatically. (See: Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21)

Miscellaneous Transactions

During the reconciliation process, you can create miscellaneous transactions for bank-originated entries, such as bank charges and interest. You can also manually enter Payables payments or Receivables receipts. The automatic reconciliation process can be set up to create miscellaneous transactions automatically.

Clearing

When you reconcile a transaction, the transaction is first matched to bank statement details and then cleared (if uncleared). Alternatively, you can manually clear Payables payments, Receivables receipts, miscellaneous transactions, open interface transactions, and Cash Management cashflows (except for those created from bank statement lines) in Cash Management prior to reconciliation to maintain more up-to-date cash account balances. You can also use Automatic Clearing to clear receipts in Oracle Receivables.

When you clear a transaction, Cash Management assigns a cleared date, cleared amount, and status to the transaction. Accounting for the cleared transaction varies by the source. If the transaction is a payment, Payables records the accounting information

but you create the accounting entries in Payables. If the transaction is a receipt or a miscellaneous transaction, Receivables automatically generates the accounting entries. If the transaction is an open interface transaction, you must customize the CE_999_PKG package to implement reconciliation accounting. You cannot clear Payroll payments, General Ledger journal entries, or Treasury settlements.

Review and Summarize Results

Once you have completed the reconciliation process, we recommend that you review your reconciliation results. You can review the reports that are printed automatically from the AutoReconciliation program. You can also use the following reports:

- Bank Statement Detail Report
- Bank Statement Summary Report
- Bank Statements by Number Report

Create Accounting Entries in Payables

You can create accounting entries for Payables accounting events in two ways:

- Submit the Payables Accounting Process.
- Create accounting entries for a single transaction or batch.

After the process completes, Payables produces the Accounting Entries Audit Report and Accounting Entries Exception Report. The exception report lists transactions that could not be accounted because of invalid or missing information.

Prerequisites

- Define Payables options for accounting information.
- Open the period in Payables.
- If you use Multiple currencies, then all foreign currency transactions require exchange rates. You can enter exchange rates manually, or submit AutoRate to automatically enter exchange rates for invoices and payments without exchange rates.
- If you use future dated payments, update the status of matured future dated payments to Negotiable.
- To account for invoices, they must be validated.
- To account for payments, the invoices must already be accounted, or you must choose the All parameter to account for invoices, and then payments.

- Submit and review the Unaccounted Transactions Report to identify and resolve issues with your transactions that will prevent accounting.

Transfer Accounting Entries to Your General Ledger

After you create accounting entries in Payables, submit the Payables Transfer to General Ledger program to send invoice and payment accounting entries to the general ledger interface.

If you use Oracle General Ledger, then you can submit Journal Import, which uses the data in the GL interface to create unposted journal entry batches, headers, and lines. You can then post these journal entry batches, headers, and lines within General Ledger to update your General Ledger account balances. You can submit Journal Import either when you submit the transfer program, or separately, after the transfer process completes. See: Journal Import, Oracle General Ledger User Guide.

If you do not use General Ledger, you can use the data in the GL interface to create and post journal entries in your general ledger.

Payables retains the accounting entries, so you can continue to review them in Payables. Also, after you post journal entries in Oracle General Ledger, you can drill down to the related accounting entries or transactions in Payables.

Bank Statements

Cash Management maintains information for each bank statement you want to reconcile. You can use the Cash Management Bank Statement Open Interface to load bank statement information supplied by your bank, or you can enter and update bank statements manually. The system retains all bank statement information for audit and reference purposes, until you purge it.

Each Cash Management *bank statement* is composed of one bank statement header and multiple bank statement lines. The bank statement header identifies the statement number, bank account number, and statement date. It also contains optional information including the bank and branch names, bank account currency, and control amounts.

> **Note:** If a bank gives you multiple account information on a single bank statement, you must enter a separate Cash Management bank statement for each bank account, for the specific statement date.

Bank Statement Lines

A bank statement line can refer to one or more payments, receipts, cashflows, miscellaneous transactions, open interface transactions, or journal entry lines. Each line has a line number, transaction type, date cleared (bank transaction date), and amount. Optional line information includes the bank transaction code, number, bank transaction identifier (such as the payment or deposit number), currency information (currency

code, original amount in transaction currency, exchange rate), value date, agent (customer or supplier), agent bank account, a comment, and a descriptive flexfield for user-defined additional information.

A bank statement line's status can be one of the following:

- **Reconciled:** Some transactions have been matched against this line. The statement line may not be fully reconciled.
- **Unreconciled:** No transactions have been matched.
- **Error:** This status is a warning that the linecannot be reconciled because of a bank error in the statement that cannot be resolved. You must manually mark the statement line as Error. The transaction remains unreconciled because there is no corresponding transaction to which the line can be reconciled.
- **External:** The line does not correspond to any transaction in General Ledger, Payables, Receivables, Payroll, Cash Management, or the Reconciliation Open Interface, but corresponds to a transaction in another system. You then manually mark the statement line as External. Cash Management treats it as reconciled.

Bank Statement Error Reconciliation

You can efficiently manage bank errors. You can automatically or manually reconcile correcting statement lines against error statement lines, thereby providing an audit trail you can use to verify correction of bank errors.

For example, if your bank erroneously records a $50 payment as $500, your bank statement may show three statement lines for $500, <$500>, and $50. You can reconcile the <$500> correction against the $500 error statement line, and the $50 statement line against the original payment.

Bank Statement Transaction Codes

Bank statement lines are coded to identify the type of transaction the line represents. Since each bank might use a different set of transaction codes, you need to map each code a your bank uses.

Related Topics

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Reconciling Corrections and Adjustments to Bank Errors, page 5-51

Bank Transaction Codes, page 2-24

Matching Bank Statement Lines with Transactions

Reconciling bank statements in Cash Management has two major steps: matching and clearing.

- **Matching**: Match a bank statement line against a Payables payment, Receivables receipt, Cash Management cashflow, Payroll payment, miscellaneous transaction, or open interface transaction using a transaction number (such as the payment or deposit number), bank account, amount, and currency. You can match a statement line against a Treasury settlement using date and amount. You can also match a statement line against a General Ledger journal entry. You can match a bank statement against a Payroll EFT payment by using transaction number and date.

  If matching criteria are not met, the statement line remains unmatched.

  For manual reconciliation, there are no restrictions for matching statement lines and transactions.

- **Clearing:** Clear the transactions that are matched to the bank statement line, if the transactions have not been cleared previously. Only Payables payments, Receivables receipts, Cash Management cashflows, miscellaneous transactions, and open interface transactions can be cleared. Reconciled Payroll payments and General Ledger journal entries are matched but not cleared.

You can report on reconciliation exceptions, variances, and items that have been matched.

Matching Criteria for Payables Transactions

The Cash Management AutoReconciliation program fully matches Payables transactions against bank statement lines if the transactions meet the following criteria:

- For payment batches (such as EFT batches), the Reference or Payment Batch Name matches the statement line Transaction Number, and the transaction amount is within the reconciliation tolerance.

- For the detail payment transactions and stopped transactions, the matching sequence searches in the following order:

  - 1. payment number

  - 2. invoice number and supplier bank account

  - 3. invoice number and supplier name

  Also, the transaction amount is within the reconciliation tolerance.

  Note: If the bank statement does not provide a check number for a

payment, then matching to the invoice number and supplier bank account number is particularly useful.

- For stopped transactions the payment must first be stopped or voided in Payables.

Matching Criteria for Receivables Transactions

The Cash Management AutoReconciliation program fully matches Receivables transactions against bank statement lines if the transactions meet the following criteria:

- For remittance batches (such as Direct Debit batches), the Remittance Batch Deposit Number or Receipt Batch Name matches the statement line Transaction Number and the transaction amount is within the reconciliation tolerance.
- For detail remittance transactions, NSF (Non-Sufficient Funds), and Rejected transactions, the matching sequence searches in the following order:
  - 1. receipt number
  - 2. invoice number and customer bank account number
  - 3. invoice number and customer name

    Note: Also, the transaction amount is within the reconciliation tolerance.

    If the bank statement does not provide a receipt number for a receipt, then matching to the invoice number and customer bank account number is particularly useful.

- For NSF (Non-Sufficient Funds) or Rejected transactions the receipt must first be reversed in Oracle Receivables.

Matching Criteria for Oracle Payroll Transactions

The Cash Management AutoReconciliation program matches Oracle Payroll manual transactions against bank statement lines if the transactions meet the following criteria:

- For manual Payroll payments, the payment number matches the statement line transactions number and the payment amount, and the payment amount matches the statement line amount.
- For Oracle Payroll EFT transactions, the matching sequence searches in the following order
  - 1. transaction number and transaction date

- 2. transaction number, batch amount, and transaction date

Reconciliation tolerances do not apply to Payroll payments.

Matching Criteria for Miscellaneous Transactions

The Cash Management AutoReconciliation program matches miscellaneous transactions if the transactions meet the following criteria:

- If the transaction type matches to regular miscellaneous transactions:
  - The transaction amount is within the reconciliation tolerance.
  - The Receipt Number matches the statement line Transaction Number.
- If the transaction type matches to correction statement lines:
  - For reversal corrections, the statement line has the same transaction number, same amount, and opposite transaction type (for example, Miscellaneous Receipt and Miscellaneous Payment).
  - For adjustment corrections, the statement line has the same transaction number, and has a transaction type of payment, receipt, miscellaneous payment, or miscellaneous receipt, and the net amount is within the reconciliation tolerance.

Matching Criteria for Open Interface Transactions

The Cash Management AutoReconciliation program matches open interface transactions if the transactions meet one of the following criteria:

- The Transaction Number matches the statement line Transaction Number, and the transaction amount is within the reconciliation tolerance.
- The transaction date and amount are the same as the bank statement line date and amount. If you use the Reconciliation Open Interface to reconcile Treasury settlements, however, you must choose date and amount as the matching criteria.

Matching Criteria for General Ledger Journals

The Cash Management AutoReconciliation program matches General Ledger journal transactions if the transactions meet the following criteria:

- The journal line is posted.
- The journal line Accounting Flexfield matches the bank account's cash Accounting Flexfield.
- The journal line Description matches the statement line Transaction Number.

Matching Criteria for Cash Management Cashflows

The Cash Management AutoReconciliation program fully matches Cash Management cashflow transactions in the following sequence:

1. Statement Line ID (for transfers created through the sweep transactions program or transactions created from bank statement lines)
2. Bank Reference Number, Date, and Amount
3. Agent Bank Account, Date, and Amount

> **Note:** The transaction Amount must be within the reconciliation tolerance.

Related Topics

About Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Multi-Currency Handling

Cash Management handles foreign currency transactions during both automatic and manual bank reconciliation.

The following table illustrates the way that Cash Management handles different multi-currency situations. In these examples, the ledger currency is euro.

In this scenario...	if the transaction currency is...	and bank account currency is...	then the exchange rate is...
Domestic	EUR	EUR	Not needed.
International	USD	EUR	Calculated by Cash Management if you do not provide it.
Foreign	USD	USD	Required.
Foreign Translated	USD	JPY	Not supported in Payables or Receivables.

In order to calculate the exchange rate gains and losses resulting from foreign currency transactions in both the International and Foreign scenarios, the bank statement transaction line must include, in addition to Currency, at least one of the following types of exchange rate information:

- Original Amount
- Exchange Rate
- Exchange Rate Type and Exchange Rate Date

Additionally, Cash Management uses the exchange rate information to match foreign currency transactions in a multi-currency bank account.

Manual Reconciliation

When you are entering bank statement lines for manual reconciliation, you can also enter the exchange rate information for each transaction. When you reconcile a Foreign scenario statement line, the statement line exchange rate information is the default for clearing the transaction. When you reconcile an International scenario statement line, the statement line exchange rate information is calculated.

Automatic Reconciliation

Cash Management's AutoReconciliation program performs validation checking of exchange rate information during bank statement import and reconciliation. The program also handles transaction matching differently for International and Foreign scenario transactions. See: Multi-Currency Matching, page 5-10.

> **Note:** For the International scenario, if you don't provide exchange rates with your statement lines and if the cleared amount (ledger currency) matches the paid transaction amount (after conversion to ledger currency), then Cash Management calculates an exchange rate as of the cleared date.

Related Topics

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Multi-Currency Matching, page 5-10

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Integration with Oracle Receivables, Payables, Payroll, and Treasury

Bank Reconciliation is an integrated application that works with Receivables, Payables, Oracle Payroll, and Oracle Treasury.

Integration with Receivables

Cash Management shares functionality with Receivables. Using Cash Management, you can:

- Clear and reconcile receipts.
- Undo the reconciled status of a reconciled receipt.
- Undo the cleared status of a cleared receipt.
- Navigate to Receivables where you can create or reverse receipts.
- Create miscellaneous (non-invoiced) transactions, such as interest, debits, or credits.

Notes:

- If you use Automatic Clearing for receipts in Receivables, keep in mind that receipts are only cleared, not reconciled against a bank statement.
- If you are using Receivables, you must use Cash Management to reconcile your receipts.

Integration with Payables

Cash Management integrates with Payables. If you are using Payables, you must use Cash Management to reconcile your payment transactions. With Cash Management you can:

- Clear and reconcile payments.
- Undo the reconciled status of a reconciled payment.
- Undo the cleared status of a cleared payment.
- Record miscellaneous transactions that are on your bank statements such as bank charges, or bank errors. If you plan to use Cash Management to record miscellaneous transactions, then you must install and set up Receivables, since miscellaneous payments in Cash Management are actually *negative* miscellaneous receipts.
- Open the Payments window to enter Payables payments.

Integration with Payroll

Cash Management integrates with Oracle Payroll. When you use Oracle Cash Management you can:

- Reconcile your payroll account with your bank statement.

- Undo the reconciled status of a reconciled payroll payment.

Integration with Treasury

Cash Management integrates with Oracle Treasury through the Reconciliation Open Interface. When you use Cash Management you can:

- Update bank account balances in Oracle Treasury.
- Reconcile Treasury settlements against your bank statements.
- Undo the reconciled status of a reconciled Treasury settlement.

Related Topics

About Bank Reconciliation, page 1-2

About Bank Statements, page 1-4

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Using Oracle Cash Management with Automatic Clearing, page 1-21

Overview of Setting Up, page 2-1

Automatic Clearing for Receipts, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Payables Reconciliation Accounting

With Oracle Cash Management, you can reconcile payments created in Payables to your bank statements. When you reconcile payments using Oracle Cash Management, Cash Management updates the status of payments to Reconciled. If you enable the Account for Payment When Payment Clears option, in the Oracle Payables Options window, Accounting Option tab, Oracle Payables creates reconciliation accounting entries for the following when you submit the Oracle Payables Accounting Process:

- The delay in the bank clearing of payments from the time of issuance to the time of reconciliation
- Differences between the original payment amount and the cleared payment amount due to exchange rate fluctuations, bank charges, or bank errors
- Reconciled payments
- Unreconciled payments

Important: You can reconcile foreign currency payments that have no

exchange rates. However, Oracle Payables will not create reconciliation accounting entries. If you enter the exchange rate in the GL Daily Rates table and then submit the AutoRate program, Oracle Payables automatically creates the reconciliation accounting entries for payments that were reconciled without exchange rates.

To review payments that have not cleared, you can use the Unclaimed Property Report.

Prerequisite

Define ledgers. See: Defining Ledgers, Oracle General Ledger Implementation Guide.

To set up Oracle Payables for Cash Management integration:

1. Choose a ledger for each responsibility when you set up your Payables application. You set this primary ledger in the Choose Ledger window in Oracle Payables.

   Payables requires you to choose a ledger for your operating unit (in a multi-organization environment) or for your installation (in a single organization environment).

   > **Note:** The ledger you enter here will be available to choose as the Ledger Name in the Cash Management System Parameters window. See: Choosing a Ledger, Oracle Payables Implementation Guide

2. The Account for Payment option in the Payables Options window has the following two check boxes:

   - When Payment is Issued
   - When Payment Clears

   You can select one or both options. To account for payments that you reconcile in Oracle Cash Management, you must select at least When Payment Clears. This also allows you to use a cash clearing account and create accounting entries for bank charges, errors, and gains/losses. If you do not enable this option, you can still reconcile payments in Payables, but you cannot create reconciliation accounting entries.

   See: Payment Accounting Region of the Payables Options Window, Oracle Payables Implementation Guide

3. The Account for Gain/Loss option in the Payables Options window has the following two check boxes:

- When Payment is Issued
- When Payment Clears

You can select one or both options. Enable at least When Payment Clears. You must enable this option to account for the gain or loss between the estimated ledger currency payment amount that was calculated at invoice entry and the actual ledger payment currency amount that was recorded when the bank disbursed funds for the payment.

Clearing Restrictions

ISSUED BILLS PAYABLE. Oracle Cash Management cannot clear bills payable that have a payment status of Issued. Oracle Cash Management clears bills payable only if the payment status is Negotiable. On or after the maturity date of the payment, you can update the status to Negotiable.

Accounting for Gains and Losses

Any accounting entries for gains and losses are controlled by the Payables Option: Account for Gain/Loss. For this option, you can select When Payment is Issued, When Payment Clears, or both. However, if you account for payments at clearing time, you must account for gains and losses at clearing time.

If you use future dated payments, and if you choose to account for gains and losses at payment issue, then Payables also accounts for gains and losses between payment issue and payment maturity.

In Payables, you can view the accounting entries online. See Viewing Accounting Entries, *Oracle Payables User Guide* for more information.

> **Note:** You must specify exchange rates for foreign currency payments that you want to clear or reconcile.

Miscellaneous Transactions

When you reconcile a bank statement line that has no corresponding payment in Payables, such as bank charges, you can create a miscellaneous payment in Cash Management, and reconcile the bank statement line to the miscellaneous payment. However, miscellaneous payments are actually created as negative receipts in Receivables. See: Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Unclearing or Unreconciling a Payment

When you unclear or unreconcile a payment in Cash Management, the payment status reverts to Negotiable and, if you use a Cash Clearing account, the entry that debited the Cash Clearing account and credited the Cash account is reversed. This is called an

Unclearing event in Payables, and it is recorded when you account for payments at clearing time.

Related Topics

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Examples, page 1-15

Using Cash Management with Automatic Clearing, page 1-21

Banks, *Oracle Payables User Guide*

Posting , *Oracle Payables User Guide*

Payables Reconciliation Examples

The following examples illustrate the accounting entries generated when you enter and pay an invoice in Payables, then reconcile the payment through Cash Management.

The first example represents a typical domestic situation where your ledger currency, bank account currency, and payment currency are all the same. The second example represents typical foreign and international scenarios where your payment currency is different from your ledger currency. In the foreign scenario, you pay from a bank account denominated in a foreign currency. In the international scenario, you pay from a multi-currency bank account denominated in your ledger currency.

> **Note:** Both examples assume that Payables accounts for payments at issue time and at clearing time. If Payables is set up to account for payments only once--either at issue time or at clearing time-- then the accounting entries will credit the Cash account directly.

Example 1 - Reconciling a Ledger Currency Payment

You install General Ledger and Payables, and define US dollars (USD) as the ledger currency for your ledger. You use Accrual Basis as your accounting method. You record gains and losses both at payment issue and at payment clearing. You enter an invoice for 100 USD, approve, pay, reconcile, and create accounting entries for the invoice and payment. Payables records the accounting entries in the ledger currency.

The following table shows the accounting entries for the ledger currency payment. This example assumes that you create accounting entries in Payables after each activity:

Activity	Accounting Entries
Enter invoice for 100 USD	DR Expense 100 USD
	CR AP Liability 100 USD

Activity	Accounting Entries
Pay invoice, taking 5 USD discount	DR AP Liability 100 USD CR Discount 5 USD CR Cash Clearing 95 USD
Reconcile payment with bank statement, including bank charges of 2 USD	DR Cash Clearing 95 USD DR Bank Charges 2 USD CR Cash 97 USD

Example 2 - Reconciling a Foreign Currency Payment

You install Oracle General Ledger and Oracle Payables, and define US dollars as the ledger currency for your ledger. You use Accrual Basis as your accounting method. You record gains and losses both at payment issue and at payment clearing. You enter an invoice for 1,000 Mexican Pesos (MXP) and approve the invoice with a Corporate exchange rate. The Corporate exchange rate on the date you enter the invoice is 9:1. Payables creates accounting entries in both the invoice currency (1,000 MXP) and the ledger currency (111.11 USD).

When you pay the invoice, the exchange rate has increased to 10:1, representing a gain in your ledger currency of 11.11. Payables creates accounting entries in both the payment currency and the ledger currency to record the invoice payment along with the realized gain.

When you reconcile the payment, the exchange rate has increased again, to 11:1, representing an additional gain in your ledger currency of 7.27 USD. Payables calculates and records the gain between payment issue and payment clearing. In this example, it creates an accounting entry for a gain of 7.27 USD. Payables also creates the accounting entries for the cleared payment based on the currency of the bank account. The accounting entries for the Cash Clearing account are recorded in the payment currency and the ledger currency, while the accounting entries for the Cash account, Bank Charges account, and Bank Errors account are recorded in the bank account currency and the ledger currency.

The following table shows the accounting entries for the foreign currency payment in the foreign scenario. This example assumes that you create accounting entries in Payables after each activity.

Activity	Accounting Entries
Enter invoice for 1,000 MXP (exchange rate 9 MXP = 1 USD)	DR Expense 1,000 MXP (111.11 USD) CR AP Liability 1,000 MXP (111.11 USD)
Pay invoice, taking 200 MXP discount (exchange rate 10 MXP = 1 USD)	DR AP Liability 1,000 MXP (111.11 USD) CR Cash Clearing 800 MXP (80 USD) CR Discount 200 MXP (20 USD) CR Exchange Rate Gain 0 MXP (11.11 USD)
Reconcile payment with bank statement, including bank charges of 22 MXP (exchange rate 11 MXP = 1 USD)	DR Cash Clearing 800 MXP (80 USD) DR Bank Charges 22 MXP (2 USD) CR Cash 822 MXP (74.73 USD) CR Exchange Rate Gain 0 MXP (7.27 USD)

The following table shows the accounting entries for the foreign currency payment in the international scenario. This example assumes that you create accounting entries in Payables after each activity.

Activity	Accounting Entries
Enter invoice for 1,000 MXP (exchange rate 9 MXP = 1 USD)	DR Expense 1,000 MXP (111.11 USD) CR AP Liability 1,000 MXP (111.11 USD)
Pay invoice, taking 200 MXP discount (exchange rate 10 MXP = 1 USD)	DR AP Liability 1,000 MXP (111.11 USD) CR Cash Clearing 800 MXP (80 USD) CR Discount 200 MXP (20 USD) CR Exchange Rate Gain 0 MXP (11.11 USD)
Reconcile payment with bank statement, including bank charges of 2 USD (exchange rate 11 MXP = 1 USD)	DR Cash Clearing 800 MXP (80 USD) DR Bank Charges 2 USD (2 USD) CR Cash 74.73 (74.73 USD) CR Exchange Rate Gain 0 MXP (7.27 USD)

Receivables Reconciliation Accounting

Oracle Cash Management enables you to reconcile receipts you entered with Receivables against your bank statements.

When you reconcile receipts with Cash Management, it automatically creates accounting entries to the Cash, Remittance, Short-term Debts, and Interest Earned accounts, as applicable to the reconciliation transaction. Cash Management uses the accounts you defined in the Banks window and the Receipt Classes window (Payment Methods region) in Receivables.

You post the accounting entries resulting from Cash Management receipt reconciliation to General Ledger from Receivables.

Miscellaneous Transactions

You can create miscellaneous transactions in Receivables directly from Cash Management, to reflect bank-originated activities. For example, you can record miscellaneous receipts for interest and miscellaneous payments (negative miscellaneous receipts) for charges. You can reconcile these transactions at the time you create them, or later. When you create a miscellaneous transaction, Receivables uses the remittance bank account that you defined for the payment method and the activity GL account or distribution set that you defined for the receivable activity to generate the accounting entries.

Unreconciling a Receipt

When you unreconcile a receipt in Cash Management, it unclears the receipt and returns the amount to the remittance account.

Reversals

If you use Cash Management to reverse reconciled receipts, the system creates reversal entries and reopens the original invoice.

Related Topics

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Examples, page 1-18

Using Oracle Cash Management with Automatic Clearing, page 1-21

Banks, *Oracle Payables User Guide*

Payment Methods, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Receivables Reconciliation Examples

The following examples illustrate the accounting entries generated when you enter a

receipt in Oracle Receivables, then reconcile it through Cash Management.

The first example represents a domestic situation where your ledger currency, bank account, and receipt currency are the same. The second example represents international and foreign situations where your bank account currency may differ from your receipt currency. In the foreign case, you remit funds into a bank account denominated in a foreign currency. In the international case, you remit into a multi-currency bank account denominated in your ledger currency.

Example 1 - Reconciling a Ledger Currency Receipt

You install Oracle General Ledger and Oracle Receivables, and define US Dollars as the ledger currency for your ledger. You enter Accrual Basis as your accounting method. You enter an invoice for 100 US Dollars (USD) and receive a payment from your customer for 100 USD. You create a receipt for that amount, with a Receipt Class that has the following options:

Creation Method:	Manual
Require Confirmation:	No
Remittance Method:	No Remittance
Clearance Method:	By Matching

When you post the invoice and receipt, Oracle Receivables transfers the accounting entries to Oracle General Ledger, and the Journal Import function creates a journal entry in your ledger currency.

The following table shows the reconciling of a ledger currency receipt:

Activity	Accounting Entries
Enter invoice for 100 USD	DR Accounts Receivable 100 USD CR Revenue 100 USD
Enter receipt for 100 USD (see note)	DR Remittance account 100 USD CR Accounts Receivable 100 USD
Reconcile receipt with bank statement, including bank charges of 2 USD.	DR Cash 98 USD DR Bank Charges 2 USD CR Remittance account 100 USD

Note: If the Remittance Method had been set to Standard, this entry would have been a debit to the confirmation account and a credit to accounts receivable. When the receipt was remitted to the bank, there would be another entry to debit the remittance account and credit the confirmation account.

Example 2 - Reconciling a Foreign Currency Receipt

You install Oracle General Ledger and Oracle Receivables and define US dollars (USD) as the ledger currency for your ledger. You enter Accrual Basis as your accounting method. You enter an invoice for 120 Fiji dollars (FJD), with a corporate exchange rate. The exchange rate on the date you enter the invoice is 2:1. When you post the invoice, Oracle Receivables transfers journal information in both your foreign currency (120 FJD) and your ledger currency (60 USD) and Journal Import creates a journal entry in your ledger currency.

You receive a payment from your customer for 120 FJD. You create a receipt for that amount, with a Receipt Class that has the following options:

Creation Method:	Manual
Require Confirmation:	No
Remittance Method:	No Remittance
Clearance Method:	By Matching

On the receipt date, the exchange rate has increased to 3:1, representing a loss in your ledger currency of 20 USD. You transfer your receipt information to your general ledger and Journal Import creates a journal entry to record the receipt along with the realized loss.

When you reconcile the receipt, the exchange rate has again increased, to 4:1, representing a loss in your ledger currency of 10 USD. When you transfer your reconciliation information to your general ledger, the Journal Import function creates a journal entry to record the reconciled receipt along with the realized loss.

The following table shows the reconciling of a foreign currency receipt: This example assumes that you post from Receivables to General Ledger after each activity.

Activity	Accounting Entries
Enter invoice for 120 FJD (exchange rate: 2 FJD = 1 USD)	DR Accounts Receivable 120 FJD (60 USD) CR Revenue 120 FJD (60 USD)
Enter receipt for 120 FJD (exchange rate: 3 FJD = 1 USD)	DR Remittance account 120 FJD (40 USD) DR Exchange Loss 0 FJD (20 USD) CR Accounts Receivable 120 FJD (60 USD)
Reconcile receipt with bank statement, including bank charges of 4 FJD (exchange rate: 4 FJD = 1 USD)	DR Cash 116 FJD (29 USD) DR Bank Charges 4 FJD (1 USD) DR Exchange Loss 0 FJD (10 USD) CR Remittance account 120 FJD (40 USD)

Using Cash Management with Automatic Clearing

In addition to Cash Management, you can use Automatic Clearing to clear receipts in Oracle Receivables. However, unlike Cash Management, Automatic Clearing in Receivables is date-driven and does no matching to bank statements.

If you use Automatic Clearing within Receivables, you can choose whether to clear remitted receipts after they have matured, and whether you want to clear or eliminate risk for factored receipts. You can match automatically cleared receipts with bank statement lines in Cash Management.

If the amount that was automatically cleared equals the statement line amount, no further accounting takes place. Receivables handles any cases where the automatically cleared amount differs from the amount cleared at reconciliation.

If you use Automatic Clearing only to eliminate risk for factored receipts, there are no special considerations. However, if you use Automatic Clearing to clear receipts rather than using Cash Management, your general ledger balance may not match your Cash Management reports. For example, the GL Reconciliation Report will not show correct results if you clear the receipts with Automatic Clearing in Receivables. For this reason, we recommend that you use Cash Management to clear your receipts.

Example of Reconciliation with Automatic Clearing

You have set up an automatic receipt for 100 FJD, with an exchange rate of 4 FJD to 1 USD. On its clearing date, the Automatic Clearing program clears the receipt for 100 FJD (25 USD). The Receipt Class for this receipt has the following options:

Creation Method:	Automatic
Require Confirmation:	No
Remittance Method:	No Remittance
Clearance Method:	By Automatic Clearing

Your bank statement shows that the receipt cleared for 100 FJD, with an exchange rate of 2 FJD to 1 USD, representing a gain in your ledger currency of 25 USD.

When you transfer your receipt information to Oracle General Ledger, Journal Import creates a journal entry to record the reconciled receipt along with the realized gain.

The following table shows the reconciling of automatically cleared receipts:

Activity	Accounting Entries
Enter invoice for 100 FJD	DR Accounts Receivable 100 FJD (25 USD)
(exchange rate: 4 FJD = 1 USD)	CR Revenue 100 FJD (25 USD)
Enter receipt for 100 FJD	DR Remittance account 100 FJD (25 USD)
(exchange rate: 4 FJD = 1 USD)	CR Accounts Receivable 100 FJD (25 USD)
Clear receipt using Automatic Clearing	DR Cash 100 FJD (25 USD)
	CR Remittance account 100 FJD (25 USD)
Reconcile receipt with bank statement	DR Cash 0 FJD (25 USD)
	CR Exchange Gain 0 FJD (25 USD)

Related Topics

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Payroll Reconciliation

You can reconcile manual as well as EFT payments from Oracle Payroll against your bank statements.

Secured Payroll Transactions

Security for payroll bank accounts is established by the Bank Account Security Access profile option. Using this profile option, you can grant access to bank account information at three levels: All, Internal, and Payroll.

Third Party Payments

When payments are made to third parties, for purposes such as wage garnishment or child support payments, you can reconcile them using the same matching criteria as payroll payments.

Tracking Reconciled Payments

You can track payroll and third party payments that have been reconciled. When you access the record of a reconciled payment, the information available to you includes the amount cleared, the clearance date, and the general ledger transaction date.

Voided Payments

Payroll and third party payments that have been voided, but appear on the bank statement as having been paid, will not be automatically reconciled. The bank statement line that refers to these payments will be marked with an error message that identifies the payments as voided.

Discrepancies in Amounts

When payroll or third party payments show amounts that are different from the amounts on the corresponding bank statement line, Cash Management will not automatically reconcile the payments. The bank statement line that refers to these payments will be marked with an error message that shows that the transaction amount is different from the payment amount.

Multiple Views

You can select different views of payroll and third party payments, including:

- Payments that are available for reconciliation
- Payments that have been reconciled.
- Transactions in the bank statement that could not be reconciled. Each of these transaction lines will be marked with an error message.

Oracle Treasury Reconciliation

You can reconcile settlements from Oracle Treasury, including sweep transactions, against you bank statements.

Treasury Settlements as Open Interface Transactions

Oracle Cash Management uses the Reconciliation Open Interface to reconcile Treasury settlements. Treasury settlements appear as open interface transactions in Cash Management windows and reports. If you already reconcile open interface transactions from your proprietary applications, you can use the Reconciliation Open Interface to reconcile Treasury settlements as well as the external transactions.

Retail Term Money

Oracle Cash Management does not support the reconciliation of Retail Term Money deals. You must reconcile these transactions in Oracle Treasury.

Matching Criteria of Date and Amount

If you want to automatically reconcile bank statements against Treasury settlements, you must choose the matching criteria of date and amount. Under this matching condition, a bank statement line is reconciled to a settlement only if the bank statement line date is the same as the transaction date and the amounts are within tolerance. The bank statement line cannot be reconciled if no match is found or if multiple matches are found.

Amount Differences

When you reconcile Treasury settlements by date and amount, differences between the bank statement line amount and the transaction amount may occur. You must manually create exposure transactions in Oracle treasury to account for these differences.

About Cash Forecasting

Cash forecasting is a planning tool that helps you anticipate the flow of cash in and out of your business, allowing you to project your cash needs and evaluate your company's liquidity position.

Using sources from other Oracle Applications and from external systems, you can generate cash forecasts from previously-defined cash forecast templates. You can choose whether to forecast by days or GL periods, and choose how to organize each template with multiple sources and levels of detail. Automatic integration with Oracle Applications and other spreadsheet applications provides you with enterprise-wide cash information and management.

You create cash forecast templates, from which you can generate periodic cash forecasts projecting your cash flow. Once you have generated a cash forecast, you can modify, query, and report on it, and easily export it to any spreadsheet application.

You can create an unlimited number of cash forecasts. A cash forecast is in a spreadsheet format, including rows (cash inflow or outflow source types) and columns (forecasting periods). At the intersection of each row and column are cells containing forecast amounts.

You can create forecasts using data across organizations, and in any currency. You can also use cash forecasting to help determine your degree of currency exposure.

You have the flexibility to include or exclude overdue transactions for all appropriate source transaction types in your forecasts.

Cash inflow information is immediately accessible to the cash forecast process in Oracle Cash Management from Oracle Receivables, Oracle Order Management, Oracle Sales, Oracle General Ledger, and Oracle Treasury. Cash outflow information comes from Oracle Payables, Oracle Purchasing, Oracle Payroll, Oracle General Ledger, and Oracle Treasury. In addition, cash flow information from Oracle Projects and other Oracle Applications that store Projects-related information is also immediately accessible to the cash forecast process, enabling you to generate a forecast for a project. Using the External Cashflow Open Interface, you can also include cash flows from external systems.

Oracle Applications Integration with Cash Forecasting

Automatic integration with Oracle Applications provides you with enterprise-wide cash information. All source types, except for User-defined and Open Interface Inflows and Outflows, supply data from other Oracle Applications to a cash forecast.

The following table contains details on various cash inflow source types. For details on Oracle Projects source types see Oracle Projects Integration with Cash Forecasting, page 1-27.

Source	Source Type	Description
Receivables	Customer Invoices	Unpaid invoices
Receivables	Customer Receipts (Historical)	Cleared cash receipts, excluding reversed receipts
Receivables	Customer Receipts (Future)	Uncleared cash receipts, excluding reversed receipts

Source	Source Type	Description
Order Entry	Sales Orders	Uninvoiced sales orders that are projected to be paid by customer excluding commitments
Sales	Sales Opportunities	Sales opportunities that have not yet been ordered/invoiced
	GL Budgets	Revenue account budget amounts
Treasury	Treasury Transactions	Money market, foreign exchange, and exposure transactions.
External Source	Open Interface Inflow	External forecast source inflow transactions
User	User-defined Inflow	Manually entered forecast amounts

The following table contains details on various cash outflow source types. For details on Oracle Projects source types see Oracle Projects Integration with Cash Forecasting, page 1-27.

Source	Source Type	Description
Payables	Supplier Invoices	Unpaid invoices, excluding prepayments
Payables	Supplier Payments (Historical)	Cleared disbursements, excluding void payments
Payables	Supplier Payments (Future)	Uncleared disbursements, excluding void payments
Payables	Expense Reports	Expense reports that have not been invoiced
Payroll	Payroll Expenses (Historical)	Paid payroll

Source	Source Type	Description
Purchasing	Purchase Orders	Uninvoiced purchase orders
Purchasing	Purchase Requisitions	Unordered requisitions
General Ledger	GL Encumbrances	Unused portion of encumbered amounts for expenses and assets
General Ledger	GL Budgets	Expense account budget amounts
Treasury	Treasury Transactions	Money market, foreign exchange, and exposure transactions
External Source	Open Interface Outflow	Outflow transactions from external sources
User	User-defined Outflow	Manually entered forecast amounts

Oracle Projects Integration With Cash Forecasting

Cash Management's Cash Forecasting captures cash flow information from Oracle Projects. It also captures cash flow information from these other Oracle applications that store Projects-related information: Oracle Purchasing, Oracle Receivables, Oracle Order Management, and Oracle Payables.

By integrating Oracle Projects with Cash Forecasting, you can define and generate a cash forecast for a specific project. You can do the following:

- Project cash flows from Oracle Projects sources throughout your enterprise, and across organizations as needed.
- Forecast in any currency, and analyze your project's currency exposure by forecasting transactions that are entered in a particular currency.

The following table contains details on cash inflow source types to use for Oracle Projects:

Source	Source Type	Description
Receivables and Projects	Customer Invoices	Unpaid customer invoices for a project, and customer invoices in Projects that have been released but have not been transferred to Receivables.
Projects	Project Billing Events	Events with invoicing impact that have not been released
Projects	Project Inflow Budgets	Inflow budgets that you enter
Order Entry	Sales Orders	Uninvoiced sales orders for a project

The following table contains details on cash outflow source types to use for Oracle Projects:

Source	Source Type	Description
Payables	Supplier Invoices	Unpaid Projects-related supplier invoices projected to be paid (supplier and expense reports invoices)
Payables and Projects	Expense Reports	Uninvoiced expense reports entered in Projects that have been transferred to Payables, and released expense reports in Projects that have not been transferred to Payables
Projects	Project Transactions	Usages, labor, and miscellaneous transactions
Projects	Project Outflow Budgets	Outflow budgets that you enter
Purchasing	Purchase Orders	Projects-related uninvoiced purchase orders

Source	Source Type	Description
Purchasing	Requisitions	Projects-related unordered requisitions

External Cashflow Open Interface and Distributed Database Integration

Cash Forecasting allows you to utilize external sources of data as cash inflow and outflow data for the Cash Forecasting feature, providing you an enterprise-wide cash forecasting solution on a distributed database environment.

You can generate a cash forecast that automatically includes cash flows from local and remote databases.

Cash Forecast Reporting and Spreadsheet Integration

Cash Management lets you view cash forecast information online in a spreadsheet format, with the forecast periods in columns and the sources in rows. The Cash Forecast Report uses Oracle Report eXchange to allow you to export your cash forecast data to the spreadsheet application of your choice. You can also print the Cash Forecast Report to review your forecasts.

Related Topics

Cash Forecasting, page 6-1

External Cashflow Open Interface, page 1-29

2

System Setup

This chapter tells you how to set up Cash Management after you have installed. It includes an overview with list of setup steps and corresponding detailed instructions.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Setting Up Oracle Cash Management
- Setting Up Oracle Payables for Oracle Cash Management Integration
- Setting Up Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables for Oracle Cash Management Integration
- Setting Up Oracle Receivables for Oracle Cash Management Integration
- Setting Up Oracle Payroll for Oracle Cash Management IntegrationOracle Payrollsetting upintegrationOracle Payrollsetting up
- Setting Up Oracle Treasury for Oracle Cash Management Integration
- System Parameters
- Cash Management Security
- Bank Transaction Codes
- Bank Statement Open Interface
- Reconciliation Open Interface
- Installing External Cash Flow Open Interface Objects in Remote Databases
- External Cashflow Open Interface
- Sequential Document Numbering
- Cash Transaction Subtypes

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management

This section includes the checklist of steps to implement your Cash Management system. The checklist shows you where to read about each setup step detail. The

Window Name(s) column shows you in which window(s) you perform the step, and the specific responsibility or product where the window is available. The Required column shows whether the step is required, optional, or conditionally required.

Before you set up Cash Management, you should set up Oracle Application responsibilities and users for the implementation. See Defining a Responsibility, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*.

Cash Management provides nine responsibilities: Cash Management, Bank Reconciliation, Cash Forecasting, Cash Accountant, Cash Analyst, Cash Management Back Office Administrator, Cash Management Manager, Cash Management Setup, and Cash Management Master User. Refer to the Cash Management Window Navigation Paths Appendix, page A-1 for the default window navigation paths available for these responsibilities.

Cash Management uses information from Oracle General Ledger, Oracle Payables, Oracle Payroll, Oracle Treasury, and Oracle Receivables for bank statements reconciliation; and from Oracle General Ledger, Oracle Order Management, Oracle Payables, Oracle Payroll, Oracle Purchasing, Oracle Projects, Oracle Sales, Oracle Treasury, and Oracle Receivables for cash forecasting. You must perform certain setup steps in these applications before you can use Cash Management with them.

> **Important:** The following tasks describe only those setup actions that you need to perform to integrate Cash Management with other Oracle Applications. Additional setup steps for these applications are unrelated to Cash Management. See the user's guide for the product for detailed information on setting up each Oracle Applications product. Users guides are available in online format on your Oracle Applications CD.

Related Product Setup Steps

The following steps may need to be performed to implement Oracle Cash Management. These steps are discussed in detail in the Setting Up sections of other Oracle product user guides.

You must set up underlying Oracle Applications Technology

The setup steps in this chapter tell you how to implement the parts of Oracle Applications specific to Oracle Cash Management. You need to complete several setup steps, including:

- Performing system-wide setup tasks, such as configuring concurrent managers and printers
- Managing data security, which includes setting up responsibilities to allow access to a specific set of business data and to complete a specific set of transactions, and

assigning individual users to one or more of these responsibilities

For more information, see: Setup Tasks, *Oracle Applications System Adminstrator's Guide - Security*.

Also, if your product uses Oracle Workflow, for example, to manage the approval of business documents or to derive Accounting Flexfield values via the Account Generator, you need to set up Oracle Workflow.

General Ledger Setup Steps

Use the General Ledger Setup, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide* for help in completing the setup steps in the following table:

Step
Define your chart of accounts. See: Defining Accounts, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Define your accounting period types and accounting calendar periods. See: Period Types, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide* and Calendars, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Enable currencies that you plan to use. See: Defining Currencies, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Define a ledger. Specify a ledger name and assign it a calendar, ledger currency, and a chart of accounts structure. See:Defining Ledgers, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Define a transaction calendar to determine which days are business days to be used in cash forecasting. See: Defining Transaction Calendars, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Payables Setup Steps

Use Setting Up Oracle Payables, *Oracle Payables User Guide* for help in completing the setup steps in the following table:

Step
Choose a primary ledger for Oracle Payables. See: Choosing a Ledger, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.
Set the Payables Option: Account for Payment. See: Payment Accounting Payables Options, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

Step
Open your Payables accounting periods. See: Controlling the Status of Payables Periods, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.
Define your bank accounts, and assign GL accounts. Do this if you have not already performed this step as a Receivables Setup step. See**:** Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Payables, page 2-11 or Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14. If you use Payables, assign accounts for Payables payment documents.

Receivables Setup Steps

Use the Setup Steps, *Oracle Receivables User Guide* for help in completing the setup steps in the following table:

Step
Choose a ledger for Oracle Receivables. See: Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14.
Open your Receivables accounting periods. See: Opening and Closing Accounting Periods, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.
Define a receipt class for miscellaneous receipts. See: Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14.
Define receivables activities for miscellaneous transactions. See**:** Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14.
Set up receipt sources. See: Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14
Define your bank accounts, and assign GL accounts. Do this if you have not already performed this step as a Payables Setup step. See: Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Payables, page 2-11 or Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14. If you use Payables, assign accounts for Payables payment documents.

Cash Management Setup Checklist

This checklist summarizes each of the steps you follow to implement Cash Management. It includes setup steps for data that may be shared with other Oracle Applications, which Cash Management requires. If you have already defined this

information when setting up other Oracle Applications, you can skip those steps. This shared data includes:

- Currencies
- Exchange Rates
- Organizations
- Ledgers
- Bank Accounts

Since some setup steps build upon information you define in other steps, you should perform them in the order listed.

After you complete some setup steps, you can submit reports to review your work and confirm that you have successfully completed the step. For example, after you complete entering bank transaction codes, you can submit the Bank Transaction Codes Listing. See: Bank Transaction Codes Listing, page 11-39. The following table contains the Cash Management Setup Checklist:

Step No.	Required	Step
Step 1	Required	**Define your chart of accounts.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See:Defining Accounts, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Step 2	Required	**Define your accounting period types and accounting calendar periods**. If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See:Period Types, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*andCalendars, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Step 3	Optional	**Enable currencies that you plan to use.** See: Defining Currencies, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Step No.	Required	Step
Step 4	Required	**Define a ledger. Specify a ledger name and assign it a calendar, ledger currency, and a chart of accounts structure.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Defining Ledgers, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Step 5	Optional	**Define a transaction calendar to determine which days are business days to be used in cash forecasting.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Defining Transaction Calendars, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.
Step 6	Required	**Define Bank Account Maintenance and Access security in Cash Management Security Wizard.** This step is required before you set up or use bank accounts. See: Cash Management Security, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.
Step 7	Required	**Choose a primary ledger for Oracle Payables.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Choosing a Ledger, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

Step No.	Required	Step
Step 8	Required	**Set the Payables Option: Account for Payment.** The options are When Payment is Issued, and When Payment Clears. Select at least the When Payment Clears option. If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Payment Accounting Payables Options, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.
Step 9	Required	**Open your Payables accounting periods.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Controlling the Status of Payables Periods, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.
Step 10	Required	**Define your bank accounts with Receivable Use, and assign GL accounts and Receivables control options.** Do this if you have not already completed this step as a Receivables setup step. See: Bank Account Setup, page 2-11
Step 11	Required	**Choose a ledger for Oracle Receivables.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14.

Step No.	Required	Step
Step 12	Required	**Open your Receivables accounting periods.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Opening and Closing Accounting Periods, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.
Step 13	Required	**Define a receipt class for miscellaneous receipts.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14.
Step 14	Required	**Define Receivables activities for miscellaneous transactions.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See**:** Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14.
Step 15	Required	**Set up receipt sources.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Setting Up Cash Management to Use with Oracle Receivables, page 2-14

Step No.	Required	Step
Step 16	Required	**Define your bank accounts with Payable Use, and assign GL accounts and Payables control options.** Do this if you have not already performed this step as a Payables setup step. See: Bank Account Setup, page 2-11 If you use Payables, assign accounts for Payables payment documents.
Step 17	Optional	**Define your bank accounts with Payroll Use.** Do this if you need to reconcile Payroll transactions or include Payroll transactions in Cash Forecasting and Cash Positioning.
Step 18	Optional	**In Oracle Payroll, create Payment Methods and assign bank account defined with Payroll Use.** See: Setting Up Oracle Payroll for Oracle Cash Management, page B-1.
Step 19	Optional	**Set 'CE: Mask Internal Bank Account Numbers' profile options.** Do this to mask bank account number in display. See: Profile Options in Cash Management, page 2-17.
Step 20	Required	**Define system parameters.** If you deal with multiple legal entities, perform this step for each legal entity. See: System Parameters, page 2-17.

Step No.	Required	Step
Step 21	Optional	**Define bank transaction codes for each bank account.** This step is required to perform bank statement import and autoreconciliation. See: Bank Transaction Codes, page 2-24 .
Step 22	Optional	**Set up the Bank Statement Open Interface.** See: Bank Statement Open Interface, page 2-27.
Step 23	Optional	**Set up the Reconciliation Open Interface.** See: Reconciliation Open Interface, page 2-44.
Step 24	Optional	**Set up the External Cashflow Open Interface, including the Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield.** See: External Cashflow Open Interface, page 2-57 and Associate External Forecast Source Types with Views, page 2-62.
Step 25	Optionally Required	**Define cash forecasting templates.** See: Creating Cash Forecast Templates, page 6-2.
Step 26	Optionally Required	Define cash position worksheets See: Viewing Cash Positions in Discoverer, page 7-36.

Step No.	Required	Step
Step 27	Optional	**Set up sequential document numbering for bank statements.** If you use Multiple Organization Support, perform this step for each organization. See: Sequential Document Numbering, page 2-63.
Step 28	Optional	**Define request sets.** See: Request Submission, *Oracle Applications User Guide*or Request Sets, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.
Step 29	Optional	**Define descriptive flexfields.** See: Defining Descriptive Flexfields, *Oracle Applications Flexfield Guide*.
Step 30	Optional	**Define Cashflow Subtype.**
Step 31	Optional	**Define Payment Templates.** .
Step 32	Optional	**Define Bank Statement Cashflow Mappings.** .

Related Topics

Cash Management Window Navigation Paths, page A-1

Setting Up Oracle Payables for Cash Management Integration, page 2-11

Setting Up Oracle Receivables for Cash Management Integration, page 2-14

Setting Up Oracle Payroll for Cash Management Integration, page 2-15

Setting Up Oracle Payables for Oracle Cash Management Integration

The following setup steps are necessary for Oracle Cash Management to integrate with Oracle Payables. Confirm that these steps are completed before proceeding with your Cash Management implementation.

Important: Even if you do not have Oracle Payables fully installed, you must have a shared install of Oracle Payables to be able to use Oracle Cash Management. However, in this case, you do not need to perform the Payables-specific steps listed here.

Prerequisite:

- Define your primary ledger in the Ledgers window. See: Defining Accounts, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

To set up Oracle Payables for Cash Management integration:

1. Choose a primary ledger for each responsibility when you set up your Payables application. You set this primary ledger in the Choose Ledger window in Oracle Payables.

   Payables requires you to choose a ledger for your operating unit (in a multi-organization environment) or for your installation (in a single organization environment).

   See:Choosing a Ledger, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

2. The Account for Payment option in the Payables Options window has the following two check boxes:

   - When Payment is Issued
   - When Payment Clears

   You can select one or both options. To account for payments that you reconcile in Oracle Cash Management, you must select at least When Payment Clears. If you select both options, you can use a cash clearing account and create accounting entries for bank charges, errors, and gains/losses. If you do not enable this option, you can still reconcile payments in Cash Management, but you cannot create reconciliation accounting entries.

   See: Payment Accounting Payables Options, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

3. The Account for Gain/Loss option in the Payables Options window has the following two check boxes:

   - When Payment is Issued
   - When Payment Clears

   You can select one or both options. Payables will automatically enable When Payment Clears when you select Account for Payment When Payment Clears. You

must enable this option to account for the gain or loss between the estimated ledger currency payment amount and the actual ledger payment currency amount that was recorded when the bank disbursed funds for the payment.

See: Payment Accounting Payables Options, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

4. Open your Payables accounting periods. See: Controlling the Status of AP Accounting Periods, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

Related Topics

Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications

Multi-Org Architecture in *Oracle Applications Concepts*

Payables Options, *Oracle Payables User Guide*

Setting Up Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables for Oracle Cash Management Integration

The following setup steps are necessary for Oracle Cash Management to integrate with *both* Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables, and can be performed using *either* of these products. Confirm that these steps are completed before proceeding with your Cash Management implementation.

To set up Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables for Cash Management Integration:

1. In the Banks and Bank Accounts windows, define each bank account that you will be reconciling. In the Account Use field, select Internal.

2. In the GL Accounts tab of the Bank Accounts window, enter, for each bank account, the GL accounts you want to use to account for transactions that you reconcile.

3. Cash

4. Cash Clearing

5. Bank Charges

6. Bank Errors (Payables only)

7. Confirmed Receipts (Receivables only)

8. The accounts you defined for the bank account default to any Payables payment documents and Receivables payment methods you define. You can override these default accounts in the Payment Documents window when you define payment documents for the bank account.

9. For each remittance bank account, assign a remittance account.

Related Topics

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Setting Up Oracle Receivables for Oracle Cash Management Integration

The following setup steps are necessary for Oracle Cash Management to integrate with Oracle Receivables. Confirm that these steps are completed before proceeding with your Cash Management implementation.

> **Important:** If you do not have Oracle Receivables fully installed, you must have a shared install of Oracle Receivables to be able to use Oracle Cash Management. However, in this case, you do not need to perform the Receivables-specific steps listed here, unless you want to be able to create miscellaneous transactions.

Prerequisite:

- Define ledgers.

To set up Oracle Receivables for Cash Management Integration:

1. Choose a ledger for each responsibility, when you set up your Receivables application. You indicate this ledger in the Name field of the Accounting tab in the System Options window.

   Receivables requires you to choose a ledger for your operating unit (in a multi-organization environment) or for your installation (in a single organization environment).

2. Define a receipt class for miscellaneous transactions with a Creation Method of Manual and Require Remittance set to No.

   This receipt class is optional, but is required if you plan to create miscellaneous receipts (or payments) from Cash Management.

3. Define receivable activities for miscellaneous transactions, if you want to create miscellaneous transactions from Cash Management. For example, define receivables activities with a type of Miscellaneous Cash or Bank Error.

   When you define a receivables activity with the type Miscellaneous Cash, you must also assign either an account or a distribution set to use for the miscellaneous transaction accounting entries.

Note: Miscellaneous transactions include both miscellaneous receipts and miscellaneous payments. Miscellaneous payments are handled as *negative* miscellaneous receipts in Receivables, rather than as payments in Payables.

4. Define receipt sources that you assign to receipts. When you define a receipt source, you can enter a default receipt class and payment method. Receipt sources assign numbers to batches and determine where deposits get remitted.

Related Topics

Accounting System Options (*Oracle Receivables User Guide*)

Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications

Receipt Classes , *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Receivables Activities, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Receipt Sources, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Tax Codes and Rates, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Payment Methods, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Setting Up Oracle Payroll for Oracle Cash Management Integration

The following setup steps are necessary for Oracle Cash Management to integrate with Oracle Payroll. Confirm that these steps are completed before proceeding with your Cash Management implementation.

To set up Oracle Payroll for Cash Management integration:

1. In the Define Organization window, define an organization and classify it as all of the following: business group, legal entity, HR organization, or operating unit.

2. (This step needs to be performed only if the assignment has not already been made during the initial setup.) Assign the business group to the HR: Security profile option for your Payroll responsibility. (The organization defined in step 1 creates the same unique identity for all the four classifications).

   Important: If you are using Oracle Payroll, the Organization should have already been classified as a Business Group & HR Organization. You need to classify the same Organization as a

Legal Entity and Operating Unit also. However, step 2 needs to be performed only if the assignment has not already been made during initial setup.

3. In Cash Management, ensure that bank accounts you like to use for Payroll reconciliation have Payroll Use defined with correct business groups.

4. In the Organizational Payment Method window, create payment methods. Bank accounts you assign to your payment methods are used for Payroll reconciliation in your Cash Management responsibility. To use the bank accounts in Cash Management, provide the following:
   - Name
   - Type
   - Currency
   - Source Bank
   - Bank Details
   - Ledgers (optional)
   - GL Cash Account (optional)

   Note: If you upgraded your applications from a previous release, Cash Management and Payroll's pre-upgrade step generates bank accounts for Cash Management based on the existing payment methods. If bank accounts are missing from your Cash Management responsibility, make sure that the post-upgrade step ran successfully, and correct any problems with the bank account information in the Payment Method window.

5. To use the Journal Entry Line reconciliation feature from your Payroll bank accounts in Cash Management, specify a cash account and ledger. The ledger you specify here should be the same ledger you assign to the GL: Ledger Name profile option for your Cash Management responsibility.

6. In Cash Management, you can view reconcile Payroll transactions whose bank accounts are set up with Payroll Use and the business group assigned in the Bank Account Use is the one you have in HR: Security profile option.

7. Set up the following bank transactions codes in Cash Management for the bank

account defined in Payroll: Payments and Stopped Payments.

Setting Up Oracle Treasury for Oracle Cash Management Integration

The following setup steps are necessary for Oracle Cash Management to integrate with Oracle Treasury. Confirm that these steps are completed before proceeding with your Cash Management implementation.

To set up Oracle Treasury for Cash Management Integration:

1. Define the legal entities for your companies. See: Treasury Setup Checklist, *Oracle Treasury User Guide*.

2. Define your company information. See:Company Profiles, *Oracle Treasury User Guide*.

3. Assign companies to your users. See: Company Profiles, *Oracle Treasury User Guide*.

4. Define your counterparties and link them to bank branches defined in Cash Management. This will enable the Treasury Use checkbox on the bank account. See: Counterparty Profiles, *Oracle Treasury User Guide*.

5. Define the bank accounts with Treasury Use and enter Treasury bank account specific information in Oracle Cash Management.

System Parameters

Use the System Parameters window to configure your Cash Management system to meet your business needs. For example, system parameters determine the default options for manual reconciliation windows and the control settings for the AutoReconciliation program.

Prerequisites

- Define ledgers in General Ledger.

- Your system administrator has selected a value for the GL Data Access Setsprofile option, page B-1.

To set Cash Management system parameters:

1. Navigate to the System Parameters window.

2. Select your basic system parameters. For details on any field, see: System

Parameters Window Reference, page 2-18.

Note: All options, except for Ledger, can be updated.

3. Select the System Control tab, then choose your control system parameters.
4. Select the Cash Management Transactions tab, then choose your cash management transactions parameters.
5. Save your work.

Related Topics

About Oracle Cash Management, page 1-1

Overview of Setting Up, page 2-1

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management to Use with Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables, page 2-13

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Matching Bank Statement Lines with Transactions, page 1-6

Reconciliation Tolerances, page 5-8

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

System Parameters Window Reference

You can set the following Cash Management options from the System Parameters window.

Basic System Parameters

Legal Entity: The name of legal entity that system parameters are applied to.

Ledger: The name of the Ledger for Cash Management accounting transactions. This value defaults from the GL Data Access Setsprofile option.

Cash Management supports multiple ledgers. Each legal entity is tied to a ledger. If you deal with multiple legal entities, you set up System Parameters for each legal entity

Begin Date: Cash Management will not display transactions dated earlier than this date.

Reconciliation Controls

Show Cleared Transactions: If you select this check box, cleared transactions remain available for reconciliation. Otherwise, only uncleared transactions will appear for reconciliation.

Show Void Payments: You must select this check box if you want voided payments available for reconciliation.

Allow Adding Lines to Imported Statements: If you do not select this check box, you cannot add lines to automatically loaded bank statements.

General Parameters

Archive/Purge: You can set the following options to automatically archive or purge imported bank statement information:

- **Purge:** If you select this check box, the Bank Statement Import program automatically purges all information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables, once the information has been successfully transferred to the Bank Statement tables. If you import intra-day bank statements, the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program automatically purges imported bank statement information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. You can purge bank statements without first archiving them.

- **Archive:** If you select this check box, the Bank Statement Import program automatically archives all information from the Bank Statement Interface tables, once the information has been successfully transferred to the Bank Statement tables. If you import intra-day bank statements, the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program automatically archives imported bank statement information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. You cannot archive bank statements without also purging them.

  > **Note:** You cannot use these two options to automatically archive or purge information from the Bank Statement tables or the Intra-Day Bank Statement tables. You must run the Archive/Purge Bank Statements program.

Lines Per Commit: This is the number of lines that AutoReconciliation will save at a time. It controls the number of transaction rows that AutoReconciliation locks at any given time. The greater the number of lines, the faster AutoReconciliation processes. However, the number of lines you can specify is limited by the amount of memory available in your system.

Signing Authority Approval

Through the Signing Authority Approval system parameter, you can decide if you want to manually approve signing authority or use a workflow process. The following

options are:

Workflow Enabled. This option enables the seeded business event to change the status on the Bank Account Signing Authority window from Pending to Approved, when a record is entered and saved.

Manually Controlled. This option allows the user to configure the workflow approval process.

Cash Management Transactions Parameters

Accounting

Exchange Rate Type: Bank Statement Cashflows and Bank Account Transfers programs select the exchange rates for the transaction currency using the exchange rate type you specify. You can choose any exchange rate type defined in Oracle General Ledger

Bank Statement Cashflow Date: Bank Statement Cashflows program selects the exchange rates for the transaction currency using the date source you specify. You can choose any of the following exchange rate dates:

- Cashflow Date. The date the cashflow is created by the Bank Statement Cashflows program.
- Bank Statement Date. The closing date of the statement.
- GL Date. The accounting date used to clear the statement.
- Cleared Date. The date the transaction cleared the bank.

Bank Transfer Rate Date: Bank Account Transfers program selects the exchange rates for the transaction currency using the date source you specify. You can choose any of the following exchange rate dates:

- Transfer Date. The date the bank account transfer occurred.
- Statement Line Date. The bank statement line date.
- Bank Statement Date. The closing date of the statement.
- GL Date. The accounting date used to clear the statement.
- Cleared Date. The date the transaction cleared the bank.
- Actual Value Date. The statement line value date.
- Cashflow Date. The date the cashflow is created from the bank account transfer.

Bank Account Transfers

Authorization: This parameter provides two options:

- Not Required. Authorization is not required for bank account transfer to be settled. Bank Account transfer is changed to settled status right after the creation.

- Required. Authorization is required for bank account transfers to be settled.

Cash Management Security

Bank Account Security

Two different security mechanisms are provided to secure bank accounts: Bank Account Maintenance security and Bank Account Access security. At a high level, Bank Account Maintenance security secures the creation and update of bank account data, whereas Bank Account Access security secures user access of the bank accounts.

1. Bank Account Maintenance Security

In Bank Account Maintenance security setup, you can assign one or more legal entities to each role (responsibility). In the creation flow, the Bank Account Owner LOV will display only the legal entities that are assigned to your role in this security setup. In the update flow, users can only query the bank accounts whose owner is assigned to your role.

> **Note:** When a user is assigned to multiple roles with multiple Bank Account Maintenance Security setups, all security rules are defined for the user even though the user may access the application through only one particular role.

Bank Account Maintenance Security is implemented using the UMX data security model. A setup wizard called "Cash Management Security Wizard" facilitates the setup procedure. (For more detail, see "Cash Management Security Wizard" section below.)

2. Bank Account Access Security

The Bank Account Access security rule feature is built on top of Bank Account Access Setup and Cash Management Security Profiles. Bank Account Access setup provides a list of organizations that have access to a given bank account; whereas Cash Management Security Profiles provides a list of organizations an application user has access to. If there is at least one common organization between Bank Account Access setup and Cash Management Security Profile then users will be granted access to the bank account. For example, if bank account 101 has account access setup with operating unit OU1, and if user OPERATIONS has access to OU1 in the profile, then the user can view and use bank account 101.

Bank Account Access Setup

Bank Account Access setup defines the uses (Payables, Receivables, Payroll, and Treasury) of bank accounts and organizations that have access for each use. One or more operating units can be assigned to Payables or Receivables Use. Only one legal entity can be assigned for Treasury Use. The legal entity that is assigned to Treasury use is always the same as bank account owner. Lastly, one or more business groups can be assigned for Payroll Use.

Cash Management Security Profile

Cash Management Security Profiles provides a list of organizations (OU/LE/BG) that the user has access to based on following four security rules: Bank Account Use security, Treasury security, MOAC security and Payroll security.

- Bank Account Use security grants users the access to one or more legal entities. Bank Account Use security setup is required to reconcile cashflows in bank statement reconciliation. Bank statement line can be reconciled to a cashflow only if access to the cashflow LE is granted when setting up Bank Account Use security.

- Bank Account Use security setup is also required if the user does not have MOAC, Payroll or Treasury security set up, but wants to include bank accounts in Cash Forecasting, Cash Positioning, and Cash Pools. Only those bank accounts whose owner LE is registered in Bank Account Use security will be able to access these features.

- Bank Account Use security is implemented using the UMX data security model. A setup wizard called "Cash Management Security Wizard" facilitates the setup procedure. (For more detail, see "Cash Management Security Wizard" section below.)

- Treasury security defined in Oracle Treasury provides a list of legal entities that Treasury users have access to.

- MOAC security provides a list of operating units that a given user has access to.

- Payroll security returns a business groups that a given user has access to based on the PER_BUSINESS_GROUP_ID profile option.

Security in Bank Statement Reconciliation

Users can create, update or view bank statements as long as the user has access to the statement's bank account based on bank account access security. However, in order to reconcile transactions a user must have the transaction's organization defined in MOAC, Payroll, Treasury or Bank Account Use security.

Security in Cash Forecasting, Cash Positioning and Cash Pool

Bank Account Access security is applied to these features to restrict the bank accounts that the user has access to.

Bank Account Transfer Security

In Bank Account Transfer security setup, you can assign one or more legal entities to each role (responsibility). In Bank Account Transfers, the source and destination bank account LOVs will list only those bank accounts whose owners are assigned to your role in Bank Account Transfer security setup.

The Bank Account Maintenance Security is implemented using the UMX data security model.

Cash Management Security Wizard

Using the Cash Management Security wizard, an administrator can assign multiple legal entities to a role or roles to set up the following three securities:

- Bank Account Maintenance security – control bank account creation and updates
- Bank Account Use security – control bank account access
- Bank Account Fund Transfers security – control bank account transfers

To launch the Cash Management Security Wizard

1. Go to "User Management" responsibility
2. Open up "Roles & Role Inheritance" page
3. Enter your role/responsibility name in the name field
4. Click "Go' button
5. After the query, click "Update" icon
6. In Update Role page, click "Security Wizard" button
7. Run "Cash Management Security wizard"

To Setup Security

1. "Add Legal Entity" button to add additional legal entities you like to assign to role.

2. Check "Use" checkbox to assign the legal entity to Bank Account Use security.

3. Check "Maintenance" checkbox to assign the legal entity to Bank Account Maintenance security.

4. Check "Bank Account Transfers" checkbox to assign the legal entity to Bank Account Transfers security.

5. Click "Apply" button to save the change or "Cancel" button to cancel the change.

Bank Transaction Codes

If you want to load electronic bank statements or use Cash Management's AutoReconciliation feature, you must define, for each bank account, the transaction codes that your bank uses to identify different types of transactions on its statements. You should define a bank transaction code for each code that you expect to receive from your bank. Payment and Receipt codes may be defined more than once if they apply to transactions from multiple sources.

You can enter effective date range fields, Start Date and End Date, so that you can make a bank transaction code inactive. You can also delete codes that have not been used, in case you make a mistake in creating one.

You can easily view the bank transaction codes you have created here by submitting the Bank Transaction Codes Listing, page 11-39.

To define a bank transaction code:

1. Navigate to the Bank Transaction Codes window.

2. In the Find Bank window, select the bank, whose codes you are defining. Alternatively, you can query the bank account number. The system displays the Bank Transaction Codes window, which includes bank account, bank information, and a region for entering transaction codes.

3. For each transaction code you are defining, select a transaction type from the list of values. The transaction type determines how Cash Management will match and account for transactions with that code.

   Bank statement lines are coded to identify the transaction type the line represents. Since each bank might use a different set of transaction codes, you need to map each code a particular bank uses, to one of the following Cash Management transaction types.

   You can select from the following list of values:

   - **Payment:** Payments such as generated or recorded checks, payment batches, wire transfers, electronic funds transfers, or payroll checks.

- **Receipt:** Receipts such as received checks, remittance batches, direct debits, and bills of exchange.

- **Miscellaneous payment:** Payments not associated with supplier invoices, such as petty cash transactions directly posted to cost accounts or bank charges.

- **Miscellaneous receipt:** Receipts not associated with customer invoices, such as petty cash transactions directly posted to revenue accounts, such as interest received.

- **Stopped:** Stopped payments previously entered, generated, or cleared, such as callback of check. A stopped transaction type matches only to Voided or Stopped payments in Payables or Oracle Payroll.

- **Rejected:** Receipts rejected for reasons other than non-sufficient funds, such as an invalid bank account. A rejected transaction type matches only to reversed receipts in Receivables.

- **NSF (Non-Sufficient Funds):** Receipts rejected by the bank because the accounts on which they were drawn had non-sufficient funds. You can reverse these receipts by creating a standard reversal. Cash Management reopens the invoices you closed with the original receipt. When you match bank statement lines with transactions, an NSF transaction type only matches to reversed receipts in Receivables.

- **Sweep In.** Incoming funds transfer from an internal bank account. This bank transaction type identifies the originating bank account.

- **Sweep Out.** Outgoing funds transfer from an internal bank account. This bank transaction type identifies the receiving bank account.

4. Enter the code used by your bank.

5. Optionally enter a description of the transaction.

6. Enter start and end dates to determine when the bank transaction code is considered active.

7. Enter the number of float days that you want Cash Management to add to or subtract from the statement date to create an anticipated value date for automatic lockbox receipts.

8. Enter a Transaction Source for payment and receipt transactions. Choose Journal from the list of values to reconcile statement lines, with the assigned transaction code, to General Ledger journals. Choose Open Interface to reconcile statement lines to settlements in Oracle Treasury or external transactions in the Reconciliation Open Interface. Choose Payables Payments or Receivables Receipts to reconcile

statement lines to transactions in Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables. Choose Payroll Payments to reconcile statement lines to transactions in Oracle Payroll. Choose Cash Management to reconcile statement lines to cashflows in Oracle Cash Management.

9. Enter the Reconciliation Sequence number. If the same code with bank transaction type Payment or Receipt is entered more than once with different transaction sources this number is used by the AutoReconciliation program to determine the order in which to search the transaction sources for a matching transaction.

10. Optionally select a value for the Payroll Payment Format field to reconcile statement lines, with the assigned transaction code, to Payroll EFT payments. The Payroll Matching Order field is automatically populated based on the value selected in the Payroll Payment Format field. It is populated after a Payroll Payment Format has been selected. This field indicates the order in which you need to set up the format for the BANK_TRX_NUMBER in the bank statement mapping template.

11. If the transaction type is Miscellaneous Receipt or Miscellaneous Payment, use the Matching Against field to determine the order of matching and the type of transactions to match.

    Since the same transaction code may be used for matching against both miscellaneous transactions and/or correcting statement errors, you need to indicate, for miscellaneous payments and miscellaneous receipts, the transaction type to match. If you use a transaction code for both miscellaneous transactions and correcting statement errors, you can also specify the matching sequence. You can choose from the following values to indicate how to use this bank transaction code:

    - **Misc:** Only match against miscellaneous transactions.
    - **Stmt:** Identify the statement line as a correcting entry. The statement line will match against existing statement lines. The netted amount of these lines is used to match to subledger transactions.
    - **Misc, Stmt:** First try to match against miscellaneous transactions, if there is no match, then try to match against statement lines (corrections).
    - **Stmt, Misc:** First try to match against statement lines (corrections), if there is no match, then try to match against miscellaneous transactions.

12. Choose the correction method your bank uses when correcting bank errors: Reversal, Adjustment, or Both.

    This field is only applicable for those Miscellaneous Receipt or Miscellaneous Payment transaction codes that may be used to match to correction statement lines.

13. Choose whether to create transactions for any miscellaneous payments and miscellaneous receipts reported on the bank statement when no transaction number

is provided.

14. If you selected the Create option in the previous field, specify the Receivables Activity type and payment method for any miscellaneous transactions (receipts or payments) you create from within Cash Management.

15. Define each additional bank transaction code, following the previous steps.

16. Save your work.

Related Topics

About Bank Statements, page 1-4

Overview of Setting Up, page 2-1

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Bank Transaction Codes Listing, page 11-39

Bank Statement Open Interface

If your bank provides account statements in a flat file, using a defined format like BAI2 or SWIFT940, you can use the Bank Statement Open Interface to load this information into Oracle Cash Management. You can load previous-day bank statements to reconcile against system transactions, and intra-day bank statements for cash positioning.

You can load bank statement information into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables using the Bank Statement Loader program or a custom loader program. Once you populate the open interface tables, you can run the Bank Statement Import program to validate and transfer the bank statement information into the Cash Management Bank Statement tables. If you import bank statements from bank accounts that are used by Oracle Treasury, the Bank Statement Import program also automatically updates the bank account balances seen in Oracle Treasury. After the bank statement information has been successfully transferred, you can purge the open interface tables.

You can load intra-day bank statements into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables using the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program or a custom loader program. Once you populate the open interface tables, you can run the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program to validate and transfer the bank statement information into the Cash Management Intra-Day Bank Statement tables. After the bank statement information has been successfully transferred, you can purge the open interface tables.

Bank Statement File Formats

The Bank Statement Loader program and the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program can load the following three bank statement file formats:

- BAI2
- SWIFT940
- User-defined

Before you can use the Bank Statement Loader program or the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program, you must complete the setup required for each format that you want to load.

Setup for BAI2

The Bank Statement Loader program uses a predefined SQL*Loader script to load BAI2 bank statement files. However, since each bank adopts the BAI2 standard slightly differently, you need to map the BAI2 format to the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. You can create the mapping information from the BAI2 mapping template. See: Bank Statement Mapping, page 2-31

The BAI2 SQL*Loader script is located in $CE_TOP/bin/BAI2.ctl. The mapping rules for the BAI2 format are listed in BAI2 Mapping Template, page D-1.

Setup for SWIFT940 Format

The Bank Statement Loader program uses a predefined SQL*Loader script to load SWIFT940 bank statement files. However, since each bank adopts the SWIFT940 standard slightly differently, you need to map the SWIFT940 format to the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. You can create the mapping information from the SWIFT940 mapping template. See: Bank Statement Mapping, page 2-31

The SWIFT940 SQL*Loader script is located in $CE_TOP/bin/SWIFT940.ctl. The mapping rules for the SWIFT940 format are listed in SWIFT940 Mapping Template, page D-6.

After you load SWIFT940 bank statement files into the open interface tables, you may need to define new bank transaction codes in Cash Management. SWIFT940 transaction codes represent the type of transaction. For example, TRF represents transfers. However, SWIFT940 transaction codes do not contain information about the debit or credit nature of the transaction. Instead, the Debit/Credit Mark field is used to differentiate debit and credit entries, where D means debit and C means credit. When the Bank Statement Loader program populates the TRX_CODE column in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table, it appends the Debit/Credit Mark to the transaction code to form a new code. For example, debit transfers are identified as TRFD and credit transfers as TRFC. You must set up these new transaction codes before you can import the bank statement information. See: Bank Transaction Codes, page 2-24.

Setup for User-Defined Format

If your bank uses a format other than BAI2 or SWIFT940, you need to develop a SQL*Loader script and create a new mapping template for that format. You may want

to consult the sample SQL*Loader script created for the French EDIFACT standard, located in $CE_TOP/bin/EDIFACT.ctl. The mapping template, EDIFACT-France, is also available for your reference. The mapping rules for the French EDIFACT format are listed in EDIFACT - France Mapping Template, page D-12.

Prerequisites of the bank statement file

- The bank statement information is delivered in a flat file.
- The bank statement file has the following structure:
  - One Header record
  - One or more Line records that belong to the Header
  - One Trailer record
- A file may contain multiple bank statements, but each bank statement must begin with a Header record, followed by a group of Line records, and optionally end with a Trailer record.
- Each record begins with an identifier indicating the record type: Header, Line, or Trailer.
- The field definitions within each record type are consistent within a file.
- Each record has no more than 35 fields.
- Each field has no more than 255 characters. Any field that exceeds this limit must be stored in COLUMN1 of the intermediate table.

Developing your custom SQL*Loader script

- The Bank Statement Loader program uses the SQL*Loader script to copy data from the bank statement file to the intermediate table. The intermediate table is a temporary storage of the file in the database, where a row corresponds to a record in the file and a column corresponds to a field in the record. The Bank Statement Loader program purges the table before inserting data into it. You can consult the SQL*Loader script provided by Cash Management for the French EDIFACT format for an example.
- Your SQL*Loader script must reside in the $CE_TOP/bin directory, where $CE_TOP is the top directory for the Cash Management product. The name of the script must be in upper case and must end with the extension of ctl.
- The SQL*Loader script needs to parse the bank statement file and exclude any extraneous records.

- The SQL*Loader script must populate the REC_NO column and the REC_ID column in the intermediate table for each record loaded from the bank statement file. REC_NO indicates the order of a record in the file. You can use the SQL function of RECNUM to populate the REC_NO column. REC_ID is an identifier of the record type. Common record types found in most bank statement file formats are Header, Line, and Trailer.

- The SQL*Loader script must store the data from each field as a character string in the intermediate table, except for the REC_NO, which is a number column.

- If a field exceeds 255 characters, the SQL*Loader script must store the data in COLUMN 1 of the intermediate table, because COLUMN 1 can contain up to 2000 characters.

- In some formats the record structure may change dynamically. For example, record ID 03 and record ID 16 in the BAI2 format have a variable number of fields. The SQL*Loader script must interpret the format and load the data into the appropriate columns in the intermediate table.

- If zeros are used to fill a field, the SQL*Loader script should treat them as nulls. For example, In the French EDIFACT format, each field has a fixed position and a fixed length. If a field, such as CURRENCY_CODE, PRECISION, or BANK_TRX_NUMBER, does not contain any value, it is filled with zeros. In this case, the French EDIFACT SQL*Loader script converts the zeros to nulls before loading the values into the intermediate table. Similarly, if a value does not fully occupy a field such as BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM, AMOUNT, BANK_TRX_NUMBER, CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE or CONTROL_END_BALANCE, the value is padded with leading zeros. The French EDIFACT SQL*Loader script ignores these leading zeros when loading the values into the intermediate table.

- Amounts may need to be converted into a common format in the SQL*Loader script. For example, decimal points in the SWIFT940 format are not represented by periods. Since numbers stored in the ORACLE database use periods as the decimal separator, the SQL*Loader script must convert that character to a period. You can see an example of this conversion rule in the SWIFT940 SQL*Loader script. In other formats, amounts are expressed in integers qualified by a precision. If the precision varies because of the currency of the amounts, the SQL*Loader script needs to load the precision into the intermediate tables as well. See the French EDIFACT SQL*Loader script for an example.

Creating a New Mapping Template

Define new mapping rules using the Bank Statement Mappings window. See: Bank Statement Mapping, page 2-31

Bank Statement Mapping

Use the Bank Statement Mappings window to map the structure of your bank statement file to the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. You need to define the mapping for each unique file structure. The default mapping templates for BAI2, SWIFT940, and French EDIFACT are provided by Cash Management and cannot be changed. You can create new mapping templates by copying the existing templates.

1. Open the Bank Statement Mappings window.

2. If you want to review a mapping template, choose one from the list of values. Otherwise, cancel the list of values.

3. Create a new record for the new mapping template.

4. In the Name field, enter the name of the new mapping template.

5. In the Description field, enter the description for the new mapping template.

6. In the Control File Name field, enter the SQL*Loader script that should be used with this new mapping template. You can choose an existing script from the list of values or enter a new script that you have created. If your bank uses the BAI2 format, choose BAI2.ctl. If your bank uses the SWIFT940 format, choose SWIFT940.ctl. If your bank uses the French EDIFACT format, choose EDIFACT.ctl. If your bank uses a user-defined format, enter the SQL*Loader script you created.

7. In the Precision field, enter a precision for the amounts if they are expressed as integers and have the same precision within the bank statement file. The Bank Statement Loader program uses the precision to convert integer amounts into decimal numbers. For example, an amount expressed as 10000 with a precision of 2 is interpreted and loaded as 100.00. Leave the precision blank if amounts are already decimal numbers or if they have different precisions. In BAI2, the default precision is 2. In SWIFT940, precision is not used because amounts are already decimal numbers. In French EDIFACT, precision is specified for each amount on the header and line records.

8. In the Date Format field, enter the date format that is used in the bank statement file. You must enter a format that can be recognized by the Oracle database. The default format for BAI2 and SWIFT940 is YYMMDD. The default format for French EDIFACT is DDMMYY.

9. In the Timestamp Format field, enter the time format that is used in the bank statement file. This information is typically available on intra-day bank statements only. You must enter a format that can be recognized by the Oracle database. The default format for BAI2 is HH24MI. No defaults are provided for other file formats. Although the BAI2 standard uses the timestamp format of HHMM, where HH represents hours in a 24-hour format and MM represents minutes, you cannot use

this format, because the Oracle database interprets MM as months instead of minutes.

10. In the Bank File Format Type field, enter the format type of the bank statement file. You can enter a new format or choose from a list of previously defined formats. If you have not defined a new format, the seeded choices are BAI2, SWIFT940, and EDIFACT-France. Once you create a mapping template for a new format, that format is available in the list of values. If your bank uses the BAI2 format, choose BAI2. If your bank uses the SWIFT940 format, choose SWIFT940. If your bank uses the French EDIFACT format, choose EDIFACT-France. If your bank uses a user-defined format, enter that format.

11. Choose the Populate button. If you choose an existing format as the Bank File Format Type, the rules defined in the mapping template for that format are automatically entered in the Header and Lines tabbed regions. If multiple mapping templates are defined for that format, you must select one from the list of values. However, if you are defining a new format, only the column names are entered in the Header and Lines tabbed regions.

    Unlike others, PRECISION and STATEMENT_TIMESTAMP are not columns in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table. The Bank Statement Loader program uses the precision to convert integer amounts into decimal numbers. The Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program appends the timestamp to the STATEMENT_DATE column in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table.

    You should map the PRECISION column only if amounts are expressed in integers and have different currencies. In BAI2, the PRECISION column is not used because the default precision of 2 is defined on the mapping template. In SWIFT940, the PRECISION column is not used because all amounts are already decimal numbers. In French EDIFACT, the PRECISION column is used to convert the amounts for the AMOUNT column. If you do not enter a value for the PRECISION column, the value in the PRECISION column of the Bank Statement Headers Interface table is used.

    You must map the STATEMENT_TIMESTAMP column if you want to load timestamp information from your intra-day bank statements. Since your bank may provide multiple intra-day bank statements within the same day, you can use the timestamp to determine how recent the information is. In the BAI2 mapping template, the STATEMENT_TIMESTAMP column is mapped to Record ID 02 and Position 5.

12. The Headers tabbed region lists all the columns in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table. Define the mapping for the columns according to the file format used by your bank. The four required columns in the table are:

    - STATEMENT_NUMBER
    - BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM

- STATEMENT_DATE
- ORG_ID

You must map all of the four columns, except for the ORG_ID column. The ORG_ID column is populated automatically by the Bank Statement Loader program.

Unlike others, PRECISION is not a column in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table. The Bank Statement Loader program uses this precision to convert integer amounts into decimal numbers. You should map this column only if amounts are expressed in integers and have different currencies.

In BAI2, the PRECISION column is not used because the default precision of 2 is defined on the mapping template. In SWIFT940, the PRECISION column is not used because all amounts are already decimal numbers. In French EDIFACT, the PRECISION column is used to convert amounts for the CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE column, the CONTROL_END_BALANCE column, the CASHFLOW_BALANCE column, the INT_CALC_BALANCE column, the ONE_DAY_FLOAT column, the TWO_DAY_FLOAT column, the AVAILABLE BALANCE column, the VALUE_DATED_BALANCE column, the AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_MTD column, the AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_YTD column, the AVERAGE_CLOSE__AVAILABLE_MTD column, and the AVERAGE_AVAILABLE_YTD column. If you do not enter a value for the PRECISION column, the precision you defined on the mapping template is used.

For each column, you need to specify the location of the source data for this column in the bank statement file. In the Record ID field, enter the type of the record, whether it is a header, line, or trailer. In the Position field, enter the placement of the field within the record, relative to the beginning of the record. For example, in the BAI2 mapping template, the BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM column is mapped to Record ID 03 and Position 1, meaning the data for this column is copied from the first field of a record that has 03 as the identifier.

You can map the same field to two different columns. For example, in the BAI2 mapping template, the STATEMENT_NUMBER column and the STATEMENT_DATE column are both mapped to Record ID 02 and Position 4.

You can map part of a field to a column if the field contains information other than the source data for this column. In the Format field, enter the format in which the source data appears. The Bank Statement Loader program searches for this pattern in the field and copies the data if a match is found. If multiple matches are found, the Bank Statement Loader program selects the first match.

The data in a field may come in one of several possible formats. In the Format field, you can enter multiple formats and separate them by commas. The Bank Statement Loader program applies the formats in the order they are specified and stops when a match is found. If multiple formats need to be applied, the Concatenate Format

checkbox should be checked for the BANK_TRX_NUMBER field on the mapping template. If only one matching format is needed, do not check the Concatenate Format checkbox.

A format may contain an indicator. An indicator is a token that always appears with, before, or after the data. If you expect to find spaces between the indicator and the source data, you must explicitly specify these spaces in the format. The chart in step 13 describes the types of formats supported by the Bank Statement Loader program.

In the Include Indicator field, select the checkbox if you want to copy the indicator to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table. If you leave the checkbox blank, the Bank Statement Loader program excludes the indicator.

13. The Lines tabbed region lists all the columns in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table. Define the mapping for the column according to the file format used by your bank. The four required columns in the table are:

    - STATEMENT_NUMBER
    - BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM
    - LINE_NUMBER
    - TRX_DATE

    You must map the TRX_DATE column. The Bank Statement Loader program copies the values for the STATEMENT__NUMBER column and the BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM column from the respective columns in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table, and automatically generates a sequential value for the LINE_NUMBER column.

    For each column, you need to specify the location of the source data for this column in the bank statement file. In the Record ID field, enter the type of the record, whether it is a header, line, or trailer. In the Position field, enter the placement of the field within the record, relative to the beginning of the record.

    In most formats, the position should be a positive number. In the BAI2 format, however, the position can be negative, meaning that a field can be found only by counting its position from the end of the record. For example, the number of fields in record ID 16 varies depending upon information such as Funds Type. However, Text, Customer Ref No, and Bank Ref No are always located at the end of the record, where Text is the last field, Customer Ref No is the second to the last field, and Bank Ref No is the third to the last field. In the BAI2 mapping template, these fields are represented by negative positions. The BANK_TRX_NUMBER column and the TRX_TEXT column are mapped to the Text field as Record ID 16 and Position -1. The INVOICE_TEXT column is mapped to the Customer Ref No field as Record ID 16 and Position -2. The CUSTOMER_TEXT column is mapped to the Bank Ref No field as Record ID 16 and Position -3.

You can map the same field to two different columns. For example, in the BAI2 mapping template, the BANK_TRX_NUMBER column and the TRX_TEXT column are both mapped to Record ID 16 and Position -1.

You can map part of a field to a column if the field contains information other than the source data for this column. In the Format field, enter the format in which the source data appears. For example, in the BAI2 and SWIFT940 mapping template, the BANK_TRX_NUMBER column has the default format of Example (xxx). You should change this value to the actual format used by your bank. The Bank Statement Loader program searches for this pattern in the field and copies the data if a match is found. If multiple matches are found, the Bank Statement Loader program selects the first match.

The data in a field may come in one of several possible formats. In the Format field, you can enter multiple formats and separate them by commas. The Bank Statement Loader program applies the formats in the order they are specified and stops when a match is found. If multiple formats need to be applied, the Concatenate Format checkbox should be checked for the BANK_TRX_NUMBER field on the mapping template. If only one matching format is needed, do not check the Concatenate Format checkbox. For example, the format for the BANK_TRX_ NUMBER should be entered in the order specified in the Payroll Matching Order field when defining a transaction code for matching Payroll EFT payments. Additionally, you should check the Concatenate Format checkbox.

A format may contain an indicator. An indicator is a token that always appears with, before, or after the data. If you expect to find spaces between the indicator and the source data, you must explicitly specify these spaces in the format. In the example of the BANK_TRX_NUMBER column, the indicator is Example, followed by a space. In the Include Indicator field, select the checkbox if you want to copy the indicator to the Bank Statement Lines Interface table. If you leave the checkbox blank, the Bank Statement Loader program excludes the indicator.

The Bank Statement Loader program supports both fixed and variable length formats. The notations used to define fixed length formats are:

- n a digit
- a a non-digit character, like a letter or a special character
- x any character, including digit, letter, or special character

Variable formats use only the ~ notation, which stands for any number of alphanumeric and special characters. While fixed length formats may come with or without an indicator, variable length formats must be accompanied by an indicator. If you use either the fixed length format without an indicator or the variable format to extract the source data from a field that contains multiple segments of information, these segments must be delimited by white spaces.

The following table summarizes the different types of formats and gives an

example of each:

Type	Description	Format
Fixed length with indicator	The information in the field has an indicator and the length of the data is fixed.	The format must consist of the indicator and a pair of parentheses containing the pattern of the data. Example: If the Transaction Number starts with CR or DR and is made up of six digits followed by one character, the correct format to define is: CR(nnnnnnx),DR(nnnnnnx) This is an example of multiple formats. If the data is CR 1234561, the Transaction Number populated in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table is 1234561. If the data is DR 654321G, the Transaction Number populated is 654321G.
Fixed length without indicator	The information in the field has no indicator and the length of the data is fixed	The format must be a pair of parentheses containing the pattern of the data. Example: If the Transaction Number has six digits followed by one character, the correct format to define is: (nnnnnnx). This is an example of a single format. If the data is 1234561, the Transaction Number populated in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table is 1234561.

Type	Description	Format
Variable length with indicator	The information in the field has an indicator and the length of the data is variable.	The format must consist of an indicator and a pair of parentheses containing the ~ notation. Example: If the Transaction Number starts with CR or DR followed by a space, and the length of the data is variable, the correct format to define is CR (~), DR (~). This is an example of multiple formats. If the data is CR 99999, the Transaction Number populated in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table is 99999. If the data is DR 654G, the Transaction Number populated is 654G.
Variable length without indicator	The information in the field is variable.	This scenario cannot be supported.

14. Select the Enabled checkbox to activate this mapping information.

15. Save your changes.

Using a Custom Loader Program:

1. Create a loader program to map the structure of the bank statement file to the Bank Statement Open Interface tables.

    - You must develop a separate loader program for each unique bank statement file structure.

    - Loader programs are generally developed by your System Administrator or an Oracle consultant.

    - Loader programs are usually written in SQL*Loader. However, depending on the complexity of the file format, you might choose to use one of a variety of other programming languages.

2. Use your loader program to populate the Bank Statement Open Interface tables (see below).

Bank Statement Open Interface Tables

The Bank Statement Open Interface consists of two tables:

- **Bank Statement Headers Interface Table**[Symbol_arrowhorizex]contains the bank statement header information. The table is named CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT.
- **Bank Statement Lines Interface Table**[Symbol_arrowhorizex]contains the bank statement transaction lines. The table is named CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE.

Related Topics

Bank Statement Headers Interface Table, page 2-38

Bank Statement Lines Interface Table, page 2-42

Loading Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-21

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

System Parameters, page 2-17

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

Bank Statement Headers Interface Table

The CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT table must contain exactly one record for each bank account within a bank statement. If a bank statement contains more than one account, define a header record for each of the accounts on the statement.

The following table shows the columns contained in the CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT table:

Column Name	Null?	Type
STATEMENT_NUMBER	N	CHAR
BANK_NAME	Y	CHAR

Column Name	Null?	Type
BANK_BRANCH_NAME	Y	CHAR
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	N	CHAR
STATEMENT_DATE	N	DATE
CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE	Y	NUM
CONTROL_END_BALANCE	Y	NUM
CONTROL_TOTAL_DR	Y	NUM
CONTROL_TOTAL_CR	Y	NUM
CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT	Y	NUM
CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT	Y	NUM
CONTROL_LINE_COUNT	Y	NUM
RECORD_STATUS_FLAG	Y	CHAR
CURRENCY_CODE	Y	CHAR
ORG_ID	Y	NUM
CHECK_DIGITS	Y	CHAR
CASHFLOW_BALANCE	Y	NUM
INT_CALC_BALANCE	Y	NUM
ONE_DAY_FLOAT	Y	NUM
TWO_DAY_FLOAT	Y	NUM
INTRA_DAY_FLAG	Y	CHAR

Column Name	Null?	Type
AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_MTD	Y	NUM
AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_YTD	Y	NUM
AVERAGE_CLOSE_AVAILABLE_MTD	Y	NUM
AVERAGE_CLOSE_AVAILABLE_YTD	Y	NUM

Required Columns

You must provide values for all of the not-null columns in the CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT table. Enter values in the following required columns:

STATEMENT_NUMBER: The identifier for the statement, as provided by the bank. If the bank does not assign a statement number, you may use the statement date, or any value that will be unique within the bank account.

BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM: The bank account number, as defined in Oracle Receivables, Oracle Payables, or Oracle Payroll.

STATEMENT_DATE: The closing date for the statement.

ORG_ID: The organization ID, required only for multiple organization environments.

Optional Columns

You may enter values in the following optional columns of the CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT table:

BANK_NAME: The name of the bank, as defined in Oracle Receivables, Oracle Payables, or Oracle Payroll.

BANK_BRANCH_NAME: The name of the bank branch, as defined in Receivables and/or Payables.

CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE: The beginning balance for the statement, as provided by the bank.

CONTROL_END_BALANCE: The closing balance for the statement, as provided by the bank. In the BAI2 format, this is the Ledger Balance.

CONTROL_TOTAL_DR: Total Debits for the statement.

CONTROL_TOTAL_CR: Total Credits for the statement.

CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT: Number of debit lines for the statement.

CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT: Number of credit lines for the statement.

CONTROL_LINE_COUNT: Total number of lines for the statement.

RECORD_STATUS_FLAG: Set to E if there is an error in the record. Set to N if the record is new.

CURRENCY_CODE: The currency code for the bank account.

CHECK_DIGITS: Numbers used to validate the authenticity of a bank account number.

CASHFLOW_BALANCE: The available balance on the statement. In the BAI2 format, this is the Closing Available Balance.

INT_CALC_BALANCE: The balance on the statement that you want to use to calculate your interest. (Now called the Value Dated Balance.) In the BAI2 format, this is the Closing Available Balance.

ONE_DAY_FLOAT. The one-day float balance on the statement.

TWO_DAY_FLOAT. The two-day float balance on the statement.

INTRA_DAY_FLAG: Set to N if this is a previous-day bank statement. Set to Y if this is an intra-day bank statement.

AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_MTD: The average closing ledger balance month to date.

AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_YTD: The average closing ledger balance year to date.

AVERAGE_CLOSE_AVAILABLE_MTD: The average closing available balance month to date.

AVERAGE_CLOSE_AVAILABLE_YTD: The average closing available balance year to date.

Related Topics

Bank Statement Open Interface, page 2-27

Bank Statement Lines Interface Table, page 2-42

Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Loading Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-21

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

System Parameters, page 2-17

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

Bank Statement Lines Interface Table

The CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table contains the transactions from the bank statement.

The following table shows the columns contained in the CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table:

Colum Name	Null?	Type
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	N	CHAR
STATEMENT_NUMBER	N	CHAR
LINE_NUMBER	N	NUMBER
TRX_DATE	N	DATE
TRX_CODE	Y	CHAR
EFFECTIVE_DATE	Y	DATE
TRX_TEXT	Y	CHAR
INVOICE_TEXT	Y	CHAR
AMOUNT	Y	NUMBER
CURRENCY_CODE	Y	CHAR
EXCHANGE_RATE	Y	NUMBER
EXCHANGE_RATE_DATE	Y	DATE
USER_EXCHANGE_RATE_TYPE	Y	CHAR
ORIGINAL_AMOUNT	Y	NUMBER
CHARGES_AMOUNT	Y	NUMBER

Colum Name	Null?	Type
BANK_TRX_NUMBER	Y	CHAR
CUSTOMER_TEXT	Y	CHAR
BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT	Y	CHAR

Required Columns

You must provide values for all of the not-null columns in the CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table. Enter values in the following required columns:

BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM: For each statement line, enter the bank account number, as defined in the header record in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT.

STATEMENT_NUMBER: For each statement line, enter the bank statement number, as defined in the header record in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT.

LINE_NUMBER: For each statement line, enter the line number, as provided by the bank. If the bank does not provide line numbers, you may use a sequence to assign line numbers. The line numbers must be unique within the bank statement.

TRX_DATE: The date of the bank transaction.

Optional Columns

You may enter values in the following optional columns of the CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table:

TRX_CODE: The Bank Transaction Code that the bank uses to identify the type of banking transaction.

EFFECTIVE_DATE: The value date for the transaction.

TRX_TEXT: Any transaction-related text provided by the bank.

INVOICE_TEXT: This is the statement line invoice number, which is used to match statement lines to invoice numbers for payments in Payables and receipts in Receivables.

AMOUNT: The amount of the transaction, in the bank account currency.

CURRENCY_CODE: The currency code for the transaction.

EXCHANGE_RATE: The exchange rate specified by the bank for the transaction.

EXCHANGE_RATE_DATE: The date associated with the exchange rate used.

USER_EXCHANGE_RATE_TYPE: The exchange rate type (defined in Oracle General

Ledger) used for this transaction.

ORIGINAL_AMOUNT: The amount of the transaction, expressed in its original currency.

CHARGES_AMOUNT: The amount of bank charges in the bank account currency.

BANK_TRX_NUMBER: The Bank Transaction Number. This is the payment document number or deposit number, which AutoReconciliation uses to match the bank transaction with a transaction or batch. If you do not provide a transaction number AutoReconciliation may import the record, but cannot reconcile it.

CUSTOMER_TEXT: Any customer-related text provided by the bank. AutoReconciliation does not use this information; it is for reference use only.

BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT: Agent's bank account. AutoReconciliation uses this information to match transactions along with INVOICE_TEXT.

Related Topics

Bank Statement Open Interface, page 2-27

Bank Statement Headers Interface Table, page 2-38

Loading Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-21

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

System Parameters, page 2-17

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

Defining Conversion Rate Types, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*

Reconciliation Open Interface

Using the Reconciliation Open Interface, you can reconcile settlements created in Oracle Treasury with your bank statements. You can also clear and reconcile payments and receipts that originate in applications other than Oracle Applications. For example, if you use a proprietary accounts receivable system with General Ledger and Cash Management, you can clear and reconcile your receipts by using the Cash Management Reconciliation Open Interface. In Cash Management windows and reports, Open Interface transactions include both Treasury settlements and external transactions.

The Cash Management Reconciliation Open Interface allows you to:

- Find Treasury settlements that are available for reconciliation
- Automatically or manually reconcile Treasury settlements to bank statement lines

- Find reconciled Treasury settlements
- Find external transactions that are available for clearing
- Find external transactions that are available for reconciliation
- Manually clear external transactions
- Automatically or manually reconcile external transactions to bank statement lines
- Find cleared external transactions
- Find reconciled external transactions

Related Topics

Preparing to Use Reconciliation Open Interface, page 2-46

CE_999_INTERFACE_V Description, page 2-48

Package CE_999_PKG Description and Modifications, page 2-53

Program Submission

After following the setup steps, you can run the AutoReconciliation program, or clear or reconcile open interface transactions manually. You do not run the Reconciliation Open Interface as a separate program. Cash Management automatically retrieves the necessary information from the open interface view (CE_999_INTERFACE_ V) for matching bank statement lines to external transactions.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Manually Clearing and Unclearing, page 5-54

Finding Available Transactions, Batches, and Journal Entries for Reconciliation, page 5-26

Using Reconciliation Open Interface to Reconcile Treasury Settlements

Prerequisites to Reconciling Treasury Settlements

- Set up Oracle Treasury. See: Setting Up Oracle Treasury for Cash Management Integration, page 2-17
- Define bank accounts with Treasury Use and enter Treasury bank account specific information.

- Check the Use Reconciliation Open Interface checkbox in the bank account's Open Interface Controls region. See: Bank Account Window Reference, page 2-17

- In the Open Interface Controls region, define the Float Status and Clear Status parameters.

- Choose the Date and Amount option for the Open interface Matching Criteria parameter.

- If you want to automatically reconcile Treasury settlements, define the transaction codes for the bank accounts used in Treasury. See: Transaction Codes, page 2-24

- Create new mapping templates to load bank statements from the bank accounts used in Treasury. See: Bank Statement Mapping, page 2-31

- If your bank provides electronic bank statements in formats other than BAI2, map the balance information in your bank statement files to the CONTROL_END_BALANCE, CASHFLOW_BALANCE, INT_CALC_BALANCE, ONE_DAY_FLOAT, TWO_DAY_FLOAT, AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_MTD, AVERAGE_CLOSE_LEDGER_YTD, AVERAGE_CLOSE_AVAILABLE_MTD, and AVERAGE_CLOSE_AVAILABLE_YTD columns in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table. If your bank delivers BAI2 bank statements, however, you do not need to map these columns because the Bank Statement Loader program uses the pre-defined BAI2 transaction codes to locate the balance information in the bank statement files. See: Bank Statement Headers Interface Table, page 2-38

You can automatically or manually reconcile Treasury settlements. You can also unreconcile a Treasury settlement after it is reconciled. However, you cannot clear or unclear Treasury settlements.

Using Reconciliation Open Interface to Reconcile External Transactions

Prerequisites to Reconciling External Transactions

- Check the Use Reconciliation Open Interface check box in the bank account's Open Interface Controls region.

- Define the Open Interface Float Status and Open Interface Clear Status system parameters. Select the Open Interface Matching Criteria system parameter.

- If you want to automatically reconcile external transactions, define the transaction codes for your bank accounts.

- Customize the Reconciliation Open Interface package and view.

The Reconciliation Open Interface objects include the following view and package, which you would have customized to work in your environment:

- CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view) - cevw.odf (physical file)
- CE_999_PKG (package)
  - ceab999s.pls (physical file)
  - ceab999b.pls (physical file)

When you upgrade Oracle Cash Management, AutoInstall replaces the objects in the $CE_TOP/admin/sql directory with the default ones provided by Oracle Cash Management, except for the cevw.odf which replaces what is in the $CE_TOP/admin/odf directory. If you have customized versions of the view and packages located in the $CE_TOP/admin/sql and the $CE_TOP/admin/odf directory with the same physical file names, you must make backup copies of these objects or move them to another directory before upgrading.

> **Note:** If any of the above objects are patched, the patched objects will be located in $CE_TOP/patch/115/sql, except for odf files which will be located in the $CE_TOP/patch/115/odf. When the patch is applied, it will override your customized files if they are located in that directory with the same names.

Customizing the Reconciliation Open Interface Package and View

To use Cash Management's Reconciliation Open Interface, you must modify certain components of the Oracle database, which are provided when Cash Management is installed.

> **Warning:** We strongly recommend that any modifications to your Oracle database or to your proprietary application's database and programs be made only by qualified individuals. If you are not sure whether you are qualified to make such modifications, contact an Oracle consultant.

When you install Cash Management, one template view and one package are added to your Oracle database:

- **CE_999_INTERFACE_ V** - a view you define to map to your proprietary application's database, which shows all open interface transactions and their status.
- **CE_999_PKG** - a package that contains one function and two procedures. To enable the related functionality in Cash Management, you must write the necessary routines to carry out the described package function and procedures.

The view and package are described in detail below.

Related Topics

Package CE_999_PKG Description and Modifications, page 2-53

CE_999_INTERFACE_V Description

Generally, you define CE_999_INTERFACE_V as a view to your proprietary application's database, and implement it to show all open interface transactions and their status. The CE_999_INTERFACE_V view should include available transactions, cleared transactions, as well as transactions reconciled to bank statements that have not been purged or archived.

Cash Management provides a template of this view in your Oracle database, to allow you to define your view more easily. Note that many elements of this table or view must join to other Oracle Financials reference tables. For example, you need to indicate a particular bank account, which must be defined in CE_BANK_ACCOUNTS.

Alternatively, if your proprietary system does not support real-time access from an Oracle database, you can create a table named CE_999_INTERFACE_V, then use SQL*Loader or another batch mechanism to populate the table with information about your open interface transactions.

The following table contains the key to table abbreviations:

Abbreviation	Meaning
Req.	Payment
Cat.	Receipt
C	Constant Value
D	Defined in required tables
U	User definable
M	Mandatory join to defined tables
O	Optional join to defined tables
S	System Required

The following table contains the column specifications for CE_999_INTERFACE_V :

	Column Name	Type	Req.	Cat.	Description/ Value
1	ROW_ID	ROWID	Yes	S	Transaction row ID.
2	TRX_ID	NUMBER	Yes	U	Transaction internal identifier (see note 2).
3	BANK_ACCOUNT_ID	NUMBER	Yes	M	CE_BANK_ACCOUNTS.BANK_ACCOUNT_ID.
4	TRX_TYPE	VARCHAR2	Yes	C	Transaction type of PAYMENT or CASH (see note 3).
5	TRX_TYPE_DSP	VARCHAR2	Yes	U	Displayed, translated transaction type.
6	TRX_NUMBER	VARCHAR2	Yes	U	Transaction number (see note 4).
7	TRX_DATE	DATE	Yes	U	Date of the transaction.
8	CURRENCY_CODE	VARCHAR2	Yes	D	Transaction currency code.
9	STATUS	VARCHAR2	Yes	U	Status of the transaction.
10	STATUS_DSP	VARCHAR2	Yes	U	Displayed, translated transaction status.

	Column Name	Type	Req.	Cat.	Description/ Value
11	EXCHANGE_RATE_TYPE	VARCHAR2	No	O	NULL or GL_DAILY_CONVERSION_TYPES.CONVERSION_TYPE Required if transaction is foreign.
12	EXCHANGE_RATE_DATE	DATE	No	U	Date of exchange rate. Required if transaction is foreign.
13	EXCHANGE_RATE	NUMBER	No	U	Exchange rate. Required if transaction is foreign.
14	AMOUNT	NUMBER	Yes	U	Transaction amount (transaction currency).
15	CLEARED_AMOUNT	NUMBER	No	U	Cleared transaction amount (transaction currency).
16	CHARGES_AMOUNT	NUMBER	No	U	Transaction bank charges amount (transaction currency).

	Column Name	Type	Req.	Cat.	Description/ Value
17	ERROR_AMOUNT	NUMBER	No	U	Transaction error amount (transaction currency).
18	ACCTD_AMOUNT	NUMBER	No	U	Transaction amount (ledger currency).
19	ACCTD_CLEARED_AMOUNT	NUMBER	No	U	Transaction cleared amount (ledger currency).
20	ACCTD_CHARGES_AMOUNT	NUMBER	No	U	Transaction charges amount (ledger currency).
21	ACCTD_ERROR_AMOUNT	NUMBER	No	U	Transaction error amount (ledger currency).
22	GL_DATE	DATE	Yes	U	GL date.
23	CLEARED_DATE	DATE	No	U	Date the transaction is cleared.
24	creation_date	DATE	Yes	S	Standard Who Column.
25	created_by	NUMBER	Yes	S	Standard Who Column.

	Column Name	Type	Req.	Cat.	Description/ Value
26	last_update_ date	DATE	Yes	S	Standard Who Column.
27	last_updated _by	NUMBER	Yes	S	Standard Who Column.

Notes:

1. The following table contains notes for specific columns:

Column Number	Note
3	The bank account must be defined in AP_BANK_ACCOUNTS view.
8	The currency code must be defined in FND_CURRENCIES table.
9	The STATUS must be defined in one of the following fields in CE_SYSTEM_PARAMETERS table: OPEN_INTERFACE_FLOAT_STATUS, or OPEN_INTERFACE_CLEAR_STATUS.
11	If used, the exchange rate type must be defined in GL_DAILY_CONVERSION_TYPES table.

2. Transaction identifiers (TRX_ID) must be unique within the view. You cannot use duplicate transaction identifiers at any time.

3. Transaction numbers (TRX_NUMBER), used for matching by the automatic reconciliation program when the Open Interface Matching Criteria system parameter is set to Transaction Number, should be:

   - For payments, a payment number.
   - For receipts, a receipt number.

Note: The transaction number, whether a payment or receipt number, appears throughout Cash Management - on inquiry windows, reconciliation windows, and reports.

4. Available, cleared, and reconciled transactions: Cash Management uses the Open Interface Float Status and Open Interface Clear Status system parameters to determine whether a transaction is available for clearing or reconciliation. Cash Management maintains information of transactions that have been reconciled to bank statements, but you must customize the CE_999_PKG package to update the status of the transactions in your proprietary application's database. The status is displayed in Cash Management's forms and reports.

   To find available transactions for clearing or reconciliation, Cash Management selects transactions in the CE_999_INTERFACE_V view with the Open Interface Float Status that have not been reconciled to a bank statement line. During reconciliation, if you have enabled the Show Cleared Transactions check box in the System Parameters window, Cash Management also finds transactions that have been cleared but not reconciled.

   To find cleared transactions, Cash Management selects transactions with the Open Interface Clear Status that have not been reconciled to a bank statement line. To find reconciled transactions, Cash Management selects transactions with the Open Interface Clear Status that have been reconciled to a bank statement line.

Related Topics

Using Reconciliation Open Interface to Reconcile External Transactions, page 2-46

Package CE_999_PKG Description and Modifications

Package CE_999_PKG consists of a function and two procedures:

- **Locking function:** a routine to lock transactions in your proprietary application's database before clearing or reconciliation. You might want to lock transactions so that users cannot change the amounts during the clearing or reconciliation process. Cash Management calls this function when you clear, reconcile, unclear, or unreconcile open interface transactions.

- **Clearing procedure:** procedural logic to clear transactions in your proprietary application's database. Cash Management calls this procedure when you clear or reconcile open interface transactions. You need to implement this routine to update information about the transactions in your proprietary application. For example, the status of the cleared or reconciled transactions should be changed to the value defined in the Open Interface Clear Status system parameter.

- **Unclearing procedure:** procedural logic to unclear transactions in your proprietary

application's database. Cash Management calls this procedure when you unclear or unreconcile open interface transactions. You need to implement this routine to update information about the transactions in your proprietary application. For example, the status of the uncleared or unreconciled transactions should be changed to the value defined in the Open Interface Float Status system parameter.

> **Note:** Cash Management does not generate accounting entries when clearing or reconciling open interface transactions. Therefore, to meet your specific needs you may want to enhance the above described functionality of the CE_999_PKG function and procedures. For example, you can use the information passed to the clearing procedure to create journal entries for the differences between recorded and cleared transaction amounts.

Cash Management provides an empty version of CE_999_PKG in your Oracle database. You must modify this package and write the above described routines if you want to update data in your proprietary application or generate reconciliation accounting entries.

We have included examples of functions in the CE_999 package that you can use or customize.

The remainder of this section describes information you will need before you can write the function and procedures.

> **Note:** CE_999_PKG is called by Cash Management after each transaction is processed, rather than in batch mode. Accordingly, your function and procedures should be written to handle transactional processing.

Locking Function

The locking function is named CE_999_PKG.LOCK_ROW. The function must accept the following parameters passed from Cash Management.

The following table contains parameters the function must accept that are passed from Cash Management:

Parameter Name	Data Type	Description
X_CALL_MODE	VARCHAR2	'U' if the transaction is to be cleared or reconciled. 'M" if the transaction is to be uncleared or unreconciled..

Parameter Name	Data Type	Description
X_TRX_TYPE	VARCHAR2	The transaction type (TRX_TYPE)
X_TRX_ROWID	ROWID	ROWID of the transaction

- Uncomment (remove the slashes and asterisks from) the code enclosed by /*---- .... ----*/

Clearing Procedure

The clearing procedure is named CE_999_PKG.CLEAR.The following tables shows the parameters the procedure must accept that are passed from Cash Management. All of the parameters, except for X_BANK_CURRENCY, come from CE_999_INTERFACE_V:

Parameter Name	Data Type	Column in CE_999_INTERFACE_V
X_trx_ID	NUMBER	TRX_ID
X_trx_type	VARCHAR2	TRX_TYPE (value is PAYMENT or CASH)
X_STATUS	VARCHAR2	STATUS (value comes from ce_bank_accounts.recon_oi_cleared_statu)
X_trx_NUMBER	VARCHAR2	trx_NUMBER
X_trx_date	DATE	trx_date
X_trx_CURRENCY	VARCHAR2	CURRENCY_CODE
X_gl_date	DATE	gl_date
X_BANK_currency	VARCHAR2	AP_BANK_ACCOUNTS.BANK_currency_code
X_cleared_amount	NUMBER	cleared_AMOUNT
X_charges_amount	NUMBER	charges_amount

Parameter Name	Data Type	Column in CE_999_INTERFACE_V
X_errors_amount	NUMBER	error_amount
X_exchange_date	DATE	exchange_rate_date
X_exchange_type	VARCHAR2	exchange_rate_type
X_exchange_rate	NUMBER	exchange_rate

Use the passed parameters to code the procedural logic needed to clear transactions in your proprietary application's database. You need to implement this routine to generate reconciliation accounting entries or update data in the open interface transactions source application. Enter the same value in X_STATUS_DSP as you entered in X_STATUS.

Unclearing Procedure

The unclearing procedure is named CE_999_PKG.UNCLEAR. The following tables shows the parameters the procedure must accept that are passed from Cash Management. All of the parameters come from CE_999_INTERFACE_V.

Parameter Name	Data Type	Column in CE_999_INTERFACE_V
X_trx_id	NUMBER	trx_id
X_trx_type	VARCHAR2	trx_type
X_STATUS	VARCHAR2	STATUS (value comes from ce_bank_accounts.recon_oi_float_status)
X_trx_date	DATE	trx_date
X_gl_date	DATE	gl_date

Use the passed parameters to code the procedural logic needed to unclear transactions in your proprietary application's database. You need to implement this routine to reverse reconciliation accounting entries or update data in the open interface transactions source application. Enter the same value in X_STATUS_DSP as you entered in X_STATUS.

Related Topics

Preparing to Use Reconciliation Open Interface, page 2-46

CE_999_INTERFACE_V Description, page 2-48

Installing External Cash Flow Open Interface Objects in Remote Databases

This step is required only if you are upgrading and planning to use External Cash Flow Open Interface in a distributed database environment. You must install the necessary Cash Forecasting objects in each remote database with your Cash Forecasting sources in your APPS schema.

The following table contains the necessary Cash Forecasting objects:

Object	Physical File Name	Directory
CE_FORECAST_EXT_TEMP (table)	cefextmp.sql	$CE_TOP/sql
CE_FORECAST_EXT_TEMP_NI (index)	cefextmp.sql	$CE_TOP/sql
CE_FORECAST_REMOTE_SOURCES (package)	cefremts.pls	$CE_TOP/admin/sql
CE_FORECAST_REMOTE_SOURCES (package)	cefremtb.pls	

Type the following commands:

```
$cd $CE_TOP/sql
$sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>@remote database @cefextmp.sql
$cd $CE_TOP/admin/sql
$sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS pasword>@remote database @cefremts.pls
$sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>@remote database @cefremtb.pls
```

External Cashflow Open Interface

The Cash Management External Cashflow Open Interface allows you to utilize the following external sources of data as cash inflow and outflow data for flexible cash forecasting and cash positioning:

- Non-Oracle applications on a local database
- Non-Oracle Applications on a remote database

- Oracle Applications on a remote database

Providing an Open Interface to Forecast or Position from External Applications

Two source transaction types, Open Interface Inflow and Open Interface Outflow, allow you to include external application transaction sources for cash forecasting and cash positioning. Having two separate source transaction types for external source transactions gives you an easy way to indicate whether the transaction source consists of cash receipts (inflow) or disbursements (outflow).

The External Cashflow Open Interface collects cash flow amounts from your external systems, and the Cash Forecasting and Cash Positioning modules summarize and calculate the data to include in your cash forecasts and cash positions along with other Oracle Applications data.

See: Preparing to use the External Cashflow Open Interface, page 2-58.

Forecasting and Positioning in a Distributed Environment

You can include transactions located on a remote database in your cash forecasts and cash positions. For each Oracle Application or non-Oracle application source type on a distributed database, you need to specify a database link.

Related Topics

About Cash Forecasting, page 1-24

Cash Forecasting, page 6-1

Creating Cash Forecast Templates, page 6-2

Generating Cash Forecasts from Templates, page 6-20

Program Submission

After following the setup steps in this document, you can generate a cash forecast and cash position and automatically retrieve information available from the external sources you have defined. (You do not run the External Cashflow Open Interface as a separate program.)

Preparing to Use the External Cashflow Open Interface

To use the External Cashflow Open Interface effectively, you need to perform these steps in the following sequence. Each step has substeps that are explained in the referenced section.

1. For each external source transaction type, you define its name, such as External Payments, or External Receipts. Then identify the valid selection criteria. See:

Define External Source Types and Selection Criteria, page 2-59.

2. Define value sets to be used for the selection criteria segments. See: Define Value Sets for Selection Criteria, page 2-59.

3. Define the Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield segments for each selection criteria. See: Define Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield Segments, page 2-59.

4. Define the external forecast source transaction database views. See: Define External Source Views, page 2-60.

5. Associate the external source types with the views, and if necessary, the name of the database link. See: Associate External Forecast Source Types with Views, page 2-62.

Define External Source Types and Selection Criteria

1. Determine the external source types that you want to include in your cash forecasts and cash positions.

2. Determine appropriate selection criteria for each type.

3. Identify the selection criteria common to all external source types.

4. Identify the selection criteria appropriate only for specific external source types.

5. Design the use of criteria segments.

   Use the Descriptive Flexfields worksheets located in the appendix of the *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide* to help you with your design.

Define Value Sets for Selection Criteria

You need to define value sets that determine the values users can enter for selection criteria for open interface inflow and outflow source types when defining forecast templates and positioning worksheets.

1. Navigate to the Value Sets window (Descriptive Flexfield Segments window > Segments button > Value Sets button).

2. Define your value set and give it a validation type, and enter the appropriate validation information to suit your selection criteria.

Define Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield Segments

1. Navigate to the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window.

2. Enter Oracle Cash Management in the Application field, and Forecast Selection

Criteria in the Title field.

3. Uncheck the Freeze Flexfield Definition check box.

4. Refer to the worksheet you filled out in designing your descriptive flexfield.
   - Include the common selection criteria that are applicable to all external source types.
   - Specify external source types in the Context Field region.
   - For each external source type defined as a context field value, define the criteria segments that are used by the specific external source type as the context-sensitive segments. These are the selection criteria that depend on the external source types.
   - All segments must be enabled and non-required.
   - Choose the value sets that you predefined in the Value Set field.
   - Do not update any existing default entries.

5. Check the Freeze Flexfield Definition check box and save your work.

Define External Source Views

Define the External Source Transaction View as a view that will access your proprietary application's database to include all open interface transactions that you want to select for cash forecasting and cash positioning.

Alternatively, if your proprietary application system does not support real-time access from an Oracle database, you can create a table for the External Source Transaction View, and use SQL*Loader or another batch mechanism to populate the table with information from the non-Oracle system transactions.

Cash forecasting and Cash positioning share the same Open Interface setup. However, you can only use the Cash Flow Open Interface feature for cash positioning if the External Transaction view includes the BANK_ACCOUNT_ID column. The BANK_ACCOUNT_ID column is optional when you use the Open Interface for cash forecasting.

Column specifications for the External Source Transaction View are outlined in the following table:

Column Name	Type	Required?	Description/Value
ROW_ID	ROWID	Yes	Row ID

Column Name	Type	Required?	Description/Value
TRANSACTION_AMOUNT	NUMBER	Yes	Amount in transaction currency
FUNCTIONAL_AMOUNT	NUMBER	Yes	Amount in ledger currency
CURRENCY_CODE	VARCHAR2(15)	Yes	Transaction currency code, must be valid currency code defined in FND_CURRENCIES
FUNCTIONAL_CURRENCY	VARCHAR2(15)	Yes	ledger currency code, must be valid currency code defined in FND_CURRENCIES
CASH_ACTIVITY_DATE	DATE	Yes	Projected cash transaction date, date when the transaction has become or will become a cash transaction (e.g. check date)
BANK_ACCOUNT_ID	NUMBER	No	Bank Account ID, must be valid bank account id stored in BANK_ACCOUNT_ID column of AP_BANK_ACCOUNTS_ALL table
CRITERIA1...15	VARCHAR2(150)	No	Selection criteria

Note: Organization ID is not included as a default criterion. However, if you want to select transactions for a specific organization, you can define it as a common selection criterion for all external source types.

If your environment includes a distributed source transaction type, either you must import remote data to the local database, or you must establish a database link from the local database to the remote database. See: Associate External Forecast Source Types

with Views, page 2-62

Using Remote Databases

If you are planning to use the Cash External Cashflow Open Interface in a distributed database environment, your database administrator must install the necessary Cash Forecasting objects to each of the remote databases with your External Cashflow sources in your APPS account.

These objects are located in the $CE_TOP/sql directory:

- CE_FORECAST_EXT_TEMP (table) - cefextmp.sql (physical file)
- CE_FORECAST_EXT_TEMP_N1 (index) - cefextmp.sql (physical file)

These objects are located in the $CE_TOP/admin/sql directory:

- CE_FORECAST_REMOTE_SOURCES (package) - cefremts.pls and cefremtb.pls (physical files)

If any of the above objects are patched for Release 11, the patched objects will be located in $CE_TOP/patch/110/sql. Therefore, apply the objects from the $CE_TOP/patch/110/sql directory instead of from the $CE_TOP/admin/sql and $CE_TOP/sql directories.

Use of Indexes on Views

To maximize performance when generating cash forecasts and cash positions that collect data using the External Cashflow Open Interface, we recommend that you create appropriate indexes on the tables accessed by the views you create. The columns that are frequently used as selection criteria, such as cash activity date, should be defined as indexes.

Associate External Forecast Source Types with Views

You need to associate your external source types with an external source transaction view, and if that view is on a remote database, then you need to specify the database link as well.

To associate external forecast source types and views:

1. Navigate to the External Forecast Sources window.
2. Choose an external forecast source Type. The list of values is the context field of the Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield.
3. Enter an external forecast source View. This field is not validated until you submit a forecast that uses the associated external forecast source type.
4. (Optional) Enter a Database Link Name if the source type is on a remote database.

The list of values includes currently available links, but you can enter others as this field is not validated until you submit a forecast that uses the associated external forecast source type.

Related Topics

Planning Your Descriptive Flexfields, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Defining Descriptive Flexfield Structures, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Descriptive Flexfield Segments Window, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Context Field Values, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Defining Value Sets, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Creating Cash Forecast Templates, page 6-2

Sequential Document Numbering

Cash Management supports Oracle Application's Document Sequences feature. With this feature enabled, you can have Cash Management assign sequential document numbers to your bank statements.

To set up sequential document numbering:

1. Choose the System Administrator responsibility.

2. **Define Document Flexfield:** You define and enable the Document Flexfield, which may consist of two, three or four segments. Possible segments include Application, Category, Ledgers and Method.

3. **Define Document Sequences:** You enter a sequence Name and enter Oracle Cash Management as the Application that "owns" the sequence. You can also specify Effective From and To dates and the sequence numbering Type (Automatic, Gapless, or Manual).

4. **Define Document Categories:** You define one document category for each bank account for which you want to use sequential numbering. In the Code field you enter the bank account name. In the Table Name field you enter CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS.

5. **Assign Document Sequences to Documents:** In the Sequence Assignments window you must map your Document Categories to a Document Sequence. You can also specify a Start and End Date for the assignment.

6. **Set the** Sequential Numbering System Profile Option: You or your System Administrator must enable sequential numbering for Cash Management. Use the

System Profile Values window to set the Sequential Numbering profile option at the Application level. Choose Cash Management as the Application. Query the Sequential Numbering profile name. You can select from Always Used, Partially Used, or Not Used.

> **Note:** If you select Always Used, then to have miscellaneous receipts automatically created during the AutoReconciliation process, you must create and assign a sequence to the payment method for the receipt. The sequence numbering type must be Automatic.

Related Topics

Sequence Assignments Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Document Sequences, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Cash Transaction Subtypes

Cash Transaction Subtypes allows you to categorize cashflows for reporting purposes. Once you create a subtype using Cash Transaction Subtypes > Setup > Transactions, you can assign it to either Bank Account Transfers or Bank Statement Cashflows. You can also build a hierarchy between the subtypes by entering a subtype parent name.

To Setup Cash Transaction Subtypes:

1. Navigate to the Cash Management Subtypes page, select the Create button.
2. Apply new information in the Update Cash Transaction Subtypes page.
3. Enter a Subtype Name (required), for example, Rent or Travel and Entertainment.
4. Enter a Short Name.
5. Enter Subtype Parent Name.
6. Select a Status from the list of values.
7. Click Apply.

3

Bank Account Setup

Bank Account Model Overview

The Bank Account model allows users to define and keep track of all bank accounts in the e-Business Suite in one place and explicitly grant account access to multiple operating units/functions and users. Bank accounts for internal use are consolidated in:

- Payables
- Receivables
- Treasury
- Global Financials
- CRM

The Bank Account model reduces the number of access points to manage bank accounts by providing a centralized user interface where all internal bank accounts can be set up.

Bank account access in this model can be granted to multiple operating units, thus eliminating the redundant duplicate bank account setup under different operating units in case these operating units share the same bank account. This will also simplify the reconciliation process since now one bank account is the system corresponds to one bank account at the bank.

Bank Account Model Setup

To set up Bank Account model:

1. Define Banks in Oracle Cash Management.
2. Define Bank Branches in Oracle Cash Management.

3. If you intend to use this bank account in Oracle Treasury as a company bank account, switch to that application, define Bank Counterparties and link them to Bank Branches that you have created. If you do not intend to use this bank account in Oracle Treasury, skip this step and proceed straight to the Bank Account definition.

4. Then, create your Bank Accounts in Oracle Cash Management.

5. If you do not intend to use this bank account in Payroll, then the setup process is complete for you. If you intend to use this bank account in Payroll, switch to that application and add Payroll properties.

Overview of Bank Accounts

When you access the bank setup, the first page shows you all the banks, bank branches and accounts that have already been created. You can navigate the hierarchy at the country, bank, branch and bank account level.

Create Banks

The first step in the bank account creation is the bank definition. This page allows you to search for existing banks, view and update them or create new banks.

Create Bank: Bank Information

1. Navigate to the Manage Banks and Branches window, select the Banks tab, and select the Create button.

2. Select one of the two radio buttons in the Bank Options region. When creating a new bank, you can either create a new bank or add bank details to an existing party defined in your Trading Community.

3. Enter a country name or select a country from the list of values. This is a mandatory field.

4. Enter the Bank Name.

5. (Optional) Enter an Alternative Bank name, Short Bank Name, Bank Number, Description, Taxpayer ID, Tax Registration Number, Inactive Date.

6. Select Finish to save your bank or select Save and Next to enter Bank Address information.

Create Bank: Bank Address

You can maintain several addresses for the bank in case, for example, when the bank

has different mailing and physical locations. One of the addresses has to be marked as a primary or identifying.

1. Navigate to the Create Bank Address window and select the Create button.
2. Enter a country, or select one from the list of values.
3. Enter the remaining country specific address details.
4. Select Apply to save the address.
5. Select Finish to complete the bank creation or select Save and Next to enter Bank Contact Information.

Create Bank: Contact Information

Similar to multiple addresses, you can maintain multiple contacts at the bank.

1. Navigate to the Create Bank Contact window and select the Create button.
2. Enter Contact Information. You need only enter a first or last (Family) name, a Registry ID, and Start Date.
3. Optionally enter Email, Phone, and Address information for the contact.
4. Select Apply to save the contact.
5. Select Finish to complete the bank creation.

Define Bank Branches

Navigate to the Manage Banks and Branches window, then select the Bank Branches tab. Bank branch creation is the next step after the bank creation. This page allows you to search for existing bank branches, view and update them or create new bank branches. You may conduct a Simple Search by filling in information in one of the following fields, and then clicking the search icon: Branch Name, Branch Number, EDI Location, Alternate Branch Name, Country, or Bank Name.

Create Bank Branch: Bank Branch Information

1. Navigate to the Manage Banks and Branches window, select the Bank Branches tab, and select the Create button.
2. Enter the Country and Bank Name for which you are creating the branch or select from the list of values and select the Continue button.

3. Select one of the two radio buttons in the Branch Options region to indicate if you are creating a new branch or adding branch details to an existing party defined in your Trading Community.

4. Enter the Branch Name (required).

5. Select a Branch Type from the pulldown menu.

6. Optionally, enter the remaining branch information, such as Alternate Branch Name, Branch Number, BIC, Bank Code.

7. Select Finish to save your branch or select Save and Next to enter Branch Address and/or Branch Contact information.

Entering Branch Address Details, and supplying Contact Information are the same processes as described when entering this information for banks.

Link Bank Branches in Treasury

If you intend to create an internal bank account for use in Treasury, before proceeding to the bank account setup, you have to link the bank branch you have just created to the counterparty in Treasury. You can create a new or update an existing counterparty. In order to establish the link, you, first of all, need to check the Bank Branch check box. After you do that, a list of values will be enabled in the Full Name field. All the available bank branches will be shown there. You navigate to Setup, Parties, then the Counterparty Profiles window.

Bank and Account Administration: Define Bank Accounts

Once you are done with the bank branch creation, you can proceed to the bank account setup. This page allows you to search for existing bank accounts, view and update them or create new bank account.

Select the bank branch to which your bank account belongs and proceed to the bank account setup. In the first step you will have to select the owner of the bank account – the legal entity that opened this account at the bank. In the following steps you will be able to define which organizations within your company will be able to use this bank account.

1. Navigate to the Manage Bank Accounts window and select the Create button.

2. Enter the Country, Bank Name and Branch Name for which you are creating this account and select the Continue button.

3. Enter the Bank Account Owner - the legal entity that owns the account.

4. Select the types of functions that this bank account is going to be used for: Payables, Payroll, Receivables, and/or Treasury. If the Treasury option is disabled, you have

not linked this bank branch to the counterparty in Treasury.

5. Select the Next button and enter information in the Account Information tab. For details of the fields, see Bank Account Window reference.

6. Select the Save and Next button and enter information in the Account Controls tab.

7. Select the Save and Next button and enter information in the Account Access tab. In this step you will define for which organizations and in which functional areas – Payables, Payroll, Receivables, and/or Treasury – this bank account can be used. For example, you can let Operating Unit #1 use this bank account in Payables and Receivables, but limit Operating Unit #2 to use this bank account only in Payables. If you choose a particular functional area for you bank account, you will be taken to the page where you may be required to enter certain bank account attributes that are unique for this particular functional area. It is also important to note that if you grant Operating Unit #1 access to this bank account in Payables and Receivables, then all users who have been granted access to Operating Unit #1 will be able to use this bank account in Payables and Receivables (provided that the functional access has been granted to these uses as well).

8. Select the Saqve and Next button and enter information in the Account Contact tab. Note: This is the same process as described in Bank Contacts.

9. Select the Finish button to save your bank account.

Banks, Bank Branch, and Bank Accounts Window References

Banks Window Reference

Bank Information Region

- **Bank Name:** The name of the bank.
- **Short Bank Name:** This may be an alpha or a numeric reference.
- **Country:** The name of the country where the bank is located.
- **Alternate Name:** You can enter an alternate name for your bank. This is particularly useful if you do business in Japan so you can enter both Kanji and Kana values for your bank name. The system does not use the value. It is for your reference only.
- **Bank Number:** Identification number of the bank. Payables uses this information to identify the bank in payment formats that use electronic payment methods. The combination of Bank Number, Branch Number, and Country must be unique.

Bank Addresses Region

- **Address:** The mailing address for the bank.
- **Country:** The name of the country where the bank is located.
- **Identifying:** In many countries a fiscal code is the principal means of identifying and querying suppliers. The fiscal code is unique across all entities and appears on all official documentation.
- **Update:** Select this button to change any information as needed.

Bank Contact Region

- **Name:** Name of your contact person.
- **Phone:** Direct number to your bank contact.
- **Email:** Email address for your contact at the bank.
- **Address:** The mailing address for your contact.
- **Update:** Select this button to change any information as needed.

Bank Branch Window References

Bank Branch Information Region

- **Branch Name:** The name of the bank branch.
- **Branch Number:** The bank branch number. Payables used this information to identify the bank branch in payment formats that use electronic payment methods, in creating positive pay files, and when printing the MICR line on checks.

  Note: For banks based in the United States, enter the American Banking Association nine–digit transit routing number in this field. Also, if you use the National Automated Clearing House Association (NACHA) electronic payment format, include the bank branch number on both internal and supplier banks. The combination of Branch Number, Bank Account Number, and Country must be unique within a bank.

- **EDI Location:**The Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) location code for this bank.
- **Alternate Branch Name**You can enter an alternate name for your bank branch. This is particularly useful if you do business in Japan so you can enter both Kanji and Kana values for your bank branch name. The system does not use the value. It is for your reference only.

- **Country:** The name of the country where the bank is located.
- **Bank Name:** Bank in which you have a disbursement and/or receipt account. Or bank in which your customer has a disbursement account, or your supplier has a receipt account.

Bank Branch Addresses Region

- **Address:** The mailing address for the bank.
- **Country:** The name of the country where the bank is located.
- **Identifying:** In many countries a fiscal code is the principal means of identifying and querying suppliers. The fiscal code is unique across all entities and appears on all official documentation.
- **Update:** Select this button to change any information as needed.

Bank Branch Contact Region

- **Name:** Name of your contact person.
- **Phone:** Direct number to your bank branch contact.
- **Email{** Email address for your contact at the bank branch.
- **Address:** The mailing address for your contact.
- **Update:** Select this button to change any information as needed.

Bank Accounts Window References

Account Owner and Use Region

- **Bank Account Owner**The name of the source account holder.
- **Account Use**Select the checkboxes that apply to your account: Payables, Payroll, Receivables, Treasury.
- **Update**Select this button to change any information as needed.

Account Information Region

- **Account Name**The name you use to refer to the bank account. You may want to use a name that indicates the usage of the bank account.
- **Alternate Account Name**The alternate name for your bank account. You can enter an alternate name for your bank account. This is particularly useful if you do business in Japan so you can enter both Kanji and Kana values for your bank

account name. The system does not use the value you enter here unless you enable the Sort by Alternate Fields Payables option. If you enable that option then Payables uses the alternate name when it sorts reports by bank account name.

- **Short Account Name**This may be an alpha or a numeric reference.

- **Account Number**The bank account identification number. The combination of Bank Account Number, Bank Branch Number, Account Use, and Currency must be unique for each bank. Refer to your country–sepcific documentation on validation that the system performs on the bank account number for specific countries.

- **Check Digit**The value used to validate the authenticity of your bank account number according to country specific bank account validation requirements. This value is provided by your financial institution.

- **Currency**Currency for a bank account. The default value is your ledger currency.

- **Multiple Currencies Allowed** If you do not enable the Use Multiple Currencies Payables option, Payables does not allow you to change this value. If you select your ledger currency as your bank currency, you can enable the Use Multiple Currencies Payables option and use this bank account to pay foreign currency invoices. If you select a different currency than your ledger currency in this field, when you define Payables Payment Documents, you will only be able to select payment formats that you define in that currency. Also, you will only be able to pay invoices that you enter in this foreign currency.

- **IBAN**International Bank Account Number. The IBAN is an international standard that uniquely identifies the account number of a bank's customer. It is used in euro–zone countries to help ensure error–free cross–border payments. The IBAN is validated upon entry. If you provide the IBAN on your supplier's bank account, we recommend that you also provide the BIC for that supplier's bank branch.

- **Account Type**Bank account type. For example, Controlled Disbursement for your internal bank account or Checking for a supplier or customer bank account.

- **EFT Number**Your enterprise's EFT (electronic funds transfer) user number. This number is used to identify your company on any EFT transmissions with the bank.

- **Account Suffix**An identifier for your bank.

- **Account Holder** Name of the person or organization within your organization who is responsible for this account (optional).

- **Secondary Account Reference** Additional account reference. For your reference only.

- **Description**Description of the Bank Account. For your reference only.

- **Alternate Account Holder**The alternate name for your bank account holder. If you are using this internal bank account to process NACHA–formatted electronic payments, enter the name of the tax reporting entity that will be referenced by the payment files, exactly as it appears in the Reporting Entity window. If you do not use this bank account for NACHA–formatted payments, then this value is not used by the system and is for your reference only.

- **Start Date**Enter the start date if you want to limit the time during which this supplier site uses this bank account as the primary bank account for receiving electronic payments in the bank account currency.

- **Treasury Bank Account Number Reference** If your enterprise is a United States federal agency then you might need to define the bank account number reference for a branch of the United States Treasury bank.

- **End Date**Enter the end date if you want to limit the time during which this supplier site uses this bank account as the primary bank account for receiving electronic payments in the bank account currency.

Account Controls Window References

General Controls Region

- **Cash**Enter the cash account number in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product. For example: 01-000-1110-0000-000.

- **Cash Clearing**Enter the cash clearing account number in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Bank Charges**Enter the bank charges account number in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Bank Errors**Enter the bank errors account number in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Foreign Exchange Charges**Enter the foreign exchange charges account number in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Agency Location Code** If your enterprise is a United States federal agency then you might need to enter an Agency Location Code. This code is assigned by the United States Department of the Treasury to identify the source of financial transactions.

- **Netting Account**Select Yes or No. When netting receipts, both receipts must be in the same currency.

Cash Management Controls Region

- **Minimum Target Balance**You can define a minimum target balance for bank accounts. The target balances help you determine the minimum balance for bank accounts that you include in your cash position.

- **Maximum Target Balance**You can define a maximum target balance for bank accounts. The target balances help you determine the maximum balance for bank accounts that you include in your cash position.

- **Minimum Payment Amount**You can opt to pay the minimum payment available.

- **Minimum Receipt Amount** This is the minimum amount in this currency that must be specified when you create automatic receipts with this payment method.

- **Rounding Factor** Indicates the way amounts are displayed. Select an option from the pulldown menu.

- **Rounding Rule**Select the method you want the system to use from the pulldown menu: Round Up, Round Down, Nearest.

- **Cash Flow Display Order**Cash receipts minus cash disbursements from a given operation or asset for a given period.

Payables Controls Region

- **Multiple Currency Payments**Enable this option if you want to use this bank account to pay invoices entered in multiple currencies. You can select this option only if the Use Multiple Currencies Payables option is enabled and if the bank account is in your ledger currency.

- **Allow Zero Payments**Enable this option to allow zero–amount payments from this bank account.

- **Pooled Account** If you use Automatic Offsets and you want to associate multiple companies with this bank account, then enable this option. When you enable the Automatic Offsets Payables option, Payables creates one offsetting liability distribution for each invoice distribution. If you then pay the invoice from a pooled bank account, then which Payables accounts for the invoice payment, Payables creates one corresponding cash accounting entry for each liability distribution. In addition, Payables builds the cash account based on the Cash Account defined for the bank account, and on the account segments of the liability lines. If you do not use a pooled account, then when Payables accounts for the payment, it creates a single accounting entry for the Cash Account, and uses the Cash Account that is defined for the bank account without modifying any account segments.

- **Maximum Outlay**The largest currency outlay that you allow for a payment batch for this bank account. If the total outlay of a payment batch exceeds the maximum outlay for the payment batch, Payables displays a warning, but allows you to

continue processing the payment batch. The Maximum Outlay for a bank account defaults from the Payables Options window. When you initiate a payment batch using the bank account, Payables uses the bank account's Maximum Outlay as a default. You can override this default.

- **Minimum Payment**The lowest payment amount that you allow in a payment batch. When you initiate a payment batch using the bank account, Payables uses the bank account's Minimum Payment as a default. You can override this default.

- **Maximum Payment**The largest payment amount that you allow in a payment batch. When you initiate a payment batch using the bank account, Payables uses the bank account's Maximum Payment as a default. You can override this default.

Receipt Controls Region

- **Multiple Currency Receipts** Check this check box to define the bank account as a multiple currency bank account. A multiple currency bank account is an account that accepts payments in more than one currency.

Reconciliation Controls Region

- **Payables Matching Order** Select Transaction or Batch.

- **Float Handling** Select Error or Ignore.

- **Receivables Matching Order** Select Transaction or Batch.

Foreign Currency Bank Region

- **Exchange Rate Type**AutoReconciliation selects the exchange rates for the transaction currency using the Exchange Rate Type you specify. You can choose any Exchange Rate Type in the pulldown menu.

- **Exchange Rate Date**AutoReconciliation selects the exchange rates for the transaction currency using the date source you specify. You can choose any of the following exchange rate dates:
    - **Bank Statement GL Date**The accounting date used to clear the statement.
    - **Bank Statement Date**The closing date of the statement.
    - **Statement Line Date**The date the transaction cleared the bank.
    - **Transaction Creation Date**The date the transaction was created.
    - **Transaction Creation GL Date**The accounting date used to create the transaction.
    - · **Transaction Exchange Rate Date**The date associated with the exchange rate

that was used to create the transaction.

Open Interface Controls Region

- **Use Reconciliation Open Interfaces** Enable the checkbox if you use this feature.
- **Open Interface Matching Criteria**This parameter specifies the matching criteria for open interface transactions. The default is Transaction Number. If you want to reconcile bank statement lines to Treasury settlements, select the Date and Amount option.
- **Float Status**Status of open interface transactions that are available for clearing and reconciliation. If you reconcile only Treasury settlements in the Reconciliation Open Interface, enter the status code of Reconciled.
- **Clear Status**Status of open interface transactions that have cleared or reconciled. If you reconcile only Treasury settlements in the Reconciliation Open Interface. enter the status code of Available.

Manual Reconciliation Tolerances Region

- **Tolerance Amount**You enter reconciliation tolerances as an amount.
- **Tolerance Percentage** You enter reconciliation tolerances as a percentage.

Auto Reconciliation Tolerances Region

Payments Region

- **Tolerance Amount**You enter reconciliation tolerances as an amount.
- **Tolerance Percentage** You enter reconciliation tolerances as a percentage.
- **Foreign Tolerance Differences**Use this option to control how AutoReconciliation handles bank discrepancies caused by exchange rate fluctuations resulting from foreign currency transactions in a multi–currency bank account.
- **Tolerance Differences** There are two tolerance differences you can set: AP or Foreign.

Receipts Region

- **Tolerance Amount**You enter reconciliation tolerances as an amount.
- **Tolerance Percentage** You enter reconciliation tolerances as a percentage.
- **Foreign Tolerance Differences**Use this option to control how AutoReconciliation handles bank discrepancies caused by exchange rate fluctuations resulting from foreign currency transactions in a multi–currency bank account.

Cashflows Region

- **Tolerance Amount**You enter reconciliation tolerances as an amount.
- **Tolerance Percentage** You enter reconciliation tolerances as a percentage.
- **Foreign Tolerance Differences**Use this option to control how AutoReconciliation handles bank discrepancies caused by exchange rate fluctuations resulting from foreign currency transactions in a multi–currency bank account.
- **Tolerance Differences** There are two tolerance differences you can set: AP or Foreign.

Open Interface Region

- **Tolerance Amount**You enter reconciliation tolerances as an amount.
- **Tolerance Percentage** You enter reconciliation tolerances as a percentage.

Oracle Intercompany Setup Steps

Advanced Global Intercompany System (AGIS) enables you to create, settle and reconcile intercompany transactions. Intercompany transactions are transactions that occur between two related legal entities in an enterprise or between groups in the same legal entity. Transactions that occur between two legal entities are called intercompany transactions and transactions that occur between two groups within one legal entity are called intracompany transactions.

Intercompany transactions must be processed in a consistent, systematic way across the enterprise. Use the Intercompany Setup tab to define the processing rules at the enterprise level.

AGIS setup is required to use the Bank Account Transfers feature. Use the Intracompany Balancing rule in AGIS if the bank account transfers are between the same ledgers; whereas, you use the Intercompany Accounts rule if the transfers are between different ledgers.

Intercompany Accounting Pages

This section describes the Intercompany Accounting page.

This section describes key Intercompany accounting setup pages.

Common Intercompany Accounts Fields

This section describes some of the common fields used in the Intercompany accounts setup pages.

Transacting Legal Entity

The legal entity with the transacting (from) perspective in the intercompany trading relationship. The legal entity from which the intercompany transaction is initiated. Choose the transacting legal entity from the list of values.

Transacting Ledger

The ledger with the transacting (from) perspective in the intercompany trading relationship. You can choose any ledger that is mapped to the transacting legal entity, including both primary and secondary ledgers, since intercompany accounts can be defined for both primary and secondary ledgers.

Transacting Balancing Segment Value

The balancing segment value for the transacting (from) perspective for which intercompany accounts are defined. The list of values displays all the balancing segment values in the transacting ledger to which the transacting legal entity is mapped.

Trading Partner Legal Entity

The legal entity with the trading partner (to) perspective in the intercompany trading relationship. Choose the trading partner legal entity from the list of values. The list of values shows all legal entities to which you have access to and the value All Other.

Trading Partner Ledger

The ledger with the trading partner (to) perspective in the intercompany trading relationship.

Trading Partner Balancing Segment Value

The balancing segment value for the trading partner (to) perspective for which intercompany accounts are defined. The list of values displays all the balancing segment values in the trading partner ledger to which the trading partner legal entity is mapped.

Intercompany Accounts Search Page

Use this page to query, create, and update intercompany accounts. To update intercompany accounts, query the trading legal entity and transacting ledger and click Update, or choose Create Accounts to create a new Intercompany account.

Create Intercompany Accounts Pages

This page is the first step in creating a new intercompany account. To access the Define

Accounts page, click the Define Accounts icon.

Define Accounts Page

Use this page to define Intercompany Receivables and Payables accounts. For each of these account types you must define at least one account.

Use for Balancing

Use this field to select an account to be used as the balancing account in subledgers and intercompany General Ledger journals.

Update Intercompany Accounts

This page is similar to the Create Intercompany Accounts page and allows you to update existing intercompany accounts.

View Reciprocal Accounts

Clicking this button displays the accounts used by the Trading Partner (to) Legal Entity and Trading Partner (to) Balancing Segment Value to book intercompany transactions with the Transacting (from) Legal Entity and Transacting (from) Balancing Segment Value. This button is inactive if the Trading Partner Legal Entity or Balancing Segment Value does not have reciprocal intercompany accounts defined, or if the Trading Partner Legal Entity resides on another applications instance, or if the value is All Other.

Balancing Accounts Search Page

Use this page to query, create, or update intracompany balancing rules. To update a balancing rule, query the rule and select the rule from the results table. Choose the Create Rule button to create a new intracompany balancing rule.

Create Intracompany Balancing Rules Page

Use this page to create new balancing rules. Before creating a new rule, you should query the rule on this page to ensure the rule does not already exist.

Selected Fields

Ledger: Enter the ledger for which to define balancing rules. The list of values displays all the ledgers to which you have access and indicates whether the ledger is primary or secondary. The ledgers available here come from the Data Access Set assigned to your responsibility. The list of values displays only ledgers that are assigned to complete configurations in Accounting Setup Manager and that have the Enable Intracompany Balancing Journals check box checked on the Update Ledger: Ledger Options page.

Status: This field indicates whether the rule is enabled or disabled.

Additional Information Context: This field allows you to enter the context for the Intracompany Rule Descriptive flexfield. The information entered is only for your reference.

Balancing Details Tab

Credit Balancing Segment: This field represents the credit (party recording payable) balancing segment value. The list of values shows all of the balancing segment values allowed by your security profile. For each ledger-legal entity-source-category combination, there must be the default rule All Other-All Other.

Debit Account: This is the balancing account that the debit balancing segment value uses to balance when trading with the credit balancing segment value.

For balancing segment value - balancing segment value rules where values are explicitly chosen, the balancing account you choose is used exactly. However, when you select the value All Other, the Balancing API determines and substitutes the correct balancing and intercompany segment values at the time of balancing. For example, if you enter an account code combination 01.4000.02, it actually means xx.4000.yy, where xx is the balancing segment value of the debit balancing segment value on the journal and yy is the balancing segment value of the credit balancing segment value on the journal. The Balancing API substitutes these values during balancing.

Credit Account: This is the balancing account that the credit balancing segment value uses to balance when trading with the debit balancing segment value.

For balancing segment value - balancing segment value rules where values are explicitly chosen, the balancing account you choose is used exactly. However, when you select the value All Other, the Balancing API determines and substitutes the correct balancing segment value at the time of balancing. For example, if you enter and account code combination 02.2000.01, it actually means xx.2000.yy, where xx is the balancing segment value of the credit balancing segment value on the journal and yy is the balancing segment value of the debit balancing segment value on the journal. The Balancing API substitutes these values during balancing.

Options Tab

Level of Summarization:

- **Summary Net:** If you select Summary Net, the Balancing API summarizes the debits and credits for each balancing segment value on the journal, determines the overall net debit or net credit for each balancing segment value, balances using the net amounts for each balancing segment value, and produces a summary balancing line for each balancing segment value. When processing in Summary Net mode, the Balancing API retains the differences in exchange rates for lines with the same balancing segment value. Negative debits are interpreted as positive credits and negative credits as positive debits, because each balancing segment value is

summarized.

Summary Net is the default.

- **Detail:** If you select Detail, each line on the journal is balanced individually and a balancing line is generated for each line on the journal. For lines with negative amounts (debits or credits), the sign of each original line is retained in the balancing line.

Clearing Balancing Segment Value Usage:

- **Use for All Journals:** This option specifies that a clearing balancing segment value will be used for all types of journals. You can enter a clearing balancing segment value at the journal header level (in General Ledger only), or the default clearing balancing segment value will be used if no value is manually entered. This option is the default.

- **Use for Many-to-Many Journals Only:** This option specifies that a clearing balancing segment value should be used only to clear many-to-many journals. You can enter a clearing balancing segment value at the journal header level (in General Ledger only), or the default clearing balancing segment value will be used if no value is manually entered.

Default Options:

Default options include specifying clearing options in case a clearing company should be used but none can be determined for the journal.

- **Default Clearing Balancing Segment Value:** If no clearing company is specified for the journal, use the default clearing company. The list of values for the Default Clearing Balancing Segment Value is restricted to those that are mapped to the legal entity. If you choose the Default Clearing Balancing Segment Value, you need to enter a clearing balancing segment value.

- **Manually Entered Clearing Balancing Segment Value:** If no clearing company is specified for the journal then an error occurs. This option should not be used with journals coming from subledgers because the clearing company cannot be specified in Subledger Accounting.

- **Default Rule:** This option can be used with either Detail or Summary Net level balancing. The Default Rule is the rule defined for All Other-All Other. When this option is specified, balancing lines are built using the All Other-All Other rule, ignoring all the other rules defined in the Balancing Rules subtab.

> **Note:** This option is not available if you set the Clearing Balancing Segment Value Usage to Use for All Journals. This option is available only if you set the Clearing Balancing Segment Value Usage to Use for Many-to-Many Journals.

Oracle Payments Setup Steps

Oracle Payments setup is required if you want to settle Bank Account Transfers through the Oracle Payments system.

Setting Up First Party Payees

On the funds capture side, the first party payee is the deploying company, or organizations within the deploying company, that receives funds from its customers, the payers, by credit card payments, debit card payments, direct debits to bank accounts, and bills receivable transactions sent to banks.

Prerequisites

Before you can set up first party payees, you must perform the following setup steps:

- payment systems
- payment system accounts
- payment methods
- funds capture process profiles

Purpose

The purpose of setting up first party payees is to tie the payment processing rules of the funds capture process profile to the business entities that need to use them.

Completing the Header

In the Code field of the Create Payee page, enter a shortname for the payee. This value is not updateable in the Update Payee page.

In the Merchant Category Code field of the Create Payee page, enter a four-digit code that is usually supplied by the payment system, which identifies the industry in which the deploying company operates.

Selecting Payment Systems and Payment System Accounts

In the Payment System Accounts region of the Create Payee page, you select payment systems from the Payment System list of values that are used by the deploying company or its organizations. Additionally, you select payment system accounts from the Payment System Account list of values.

Each payment system is associated with one or more payment system accounts. The

payment system account is an account identifier used by the deploying company's payment system, which is stored in Oracle Payments.

> **Note:** If you do not select a payment system from the Payment System list of values, then all the payment system accounts are displayed in the Payment System Account list of values and the Payment System field is populated with the option that corresponds to the selected payment system account.

Assigning Operating Units

In the Assign Operating Units region of the Create Payee page, you can assign one or more operating units to the payee. The assignment of one or more operating units to a first party payee occurs because source products attribute each funds capture transaction to an operating unit. This setup allows Oracle Payments to map a transaction from an operating unit to a payee. Each operating unit may only be assigned to one payee.

Selecting Default Payment Systems

Default payment systems are used by Oracle Payments to process transactions only if the routing rules do not specify a payment system account or none of the conditions in the routing rules are met for the transaction in question.

Selecting Purchase Card Processing Transaction Detail

You can specify the level of transaction detail that is sent to the payment system for purchase card processing, along with the settlement. Level II of purchase card processing transaction detail includes the amount to be captured plus additional information, such as tax and shipping charges. Level III of purchase card processing transaction detail includes the amount to be captured plus tax and shipping charges, as well as itemization of the products or services purchased, such as one sweater, two pairs of slacks, and three pairs of shoes.

Creating a Risk Formula

A risk formula is a group of risk factors plus weights, which tells Oracle Payments how to calculate the risk score of credit card transactions. A risk factor is any information, which a first party payee uses to evaluate the risk of a customer who wishes to buy products or services from the payee. Examples of risk factors are address verification, payment history, and transaction amount.

One or more risk formulas, comprised of risk factors, can be configured for each first party payee. First party payees can associate each risk factor with different weights that must total 100. Based on their business model, deploying companies can use any number of the seeded risk factors for their organizations.

The majority of the risk factors have associated updatable fields for which you enter information or select options. For some risk factors, such as address verification code or risk scores, your payment system provides values for you to enter.

Specifying a Risk Threshold

A risk threshold is a number value, or score, between 0 and 100, above which, the deploying company may want to review or reject a credit card or a purchase card as payment for products or services. A zero risk threshold represents no risk and 100 represents the highest possible risk. The risk threshold value is determined and entered after reviewing all the risk factors for the particular payee and their associated weights.

Creating Routing Rules

Oracle Payments routes settlement requests to the appropriate payment systems. Each first party payee may have one or more routing rules with corresponding priorities. Routing rules determine which payment system account and which funds capture process profile are used to process funds capture transactions for specific payment methods.

Routing rules are comprised of destination information and one or more conditions that must be met if the funds capture transaction is to be routed using that rule's destination information. Destination information specifies the payment system account to which the transaction is routed. A condition is comprised of a criterion, (such as Amount, Currency, Organization, Card Type, or Bank Routing Number) an operator related to the criterion, and the value of the criterion. An example of a condition is **Amount** (criterion) **Greater Than** (operator) **$1,000** (value).

Routing rule are prioritized and the one with the highest priority is evaluated by Oracle Payments first. If the values in the requested funds capture transaction match the conditions in the routing rules, the settlement request is routed to the applicable payment system account for processing.

Setting Up Payments Systems

A payment system is an organization that provides financial settlement services. Companies that deploy Payments typically choose payment systems to process their funds captures and, sometimes, their electronic funds disbursements payment instructions. A payment system can be the bank at which the deploying company has its bank accounts or it can be a third party processor that connects deploying companies with financial institutions. The latter is commonly the case for credit card processing. Payment systems are not required for printed funds disbursement payments, but may be required for related services, such as positive pay or other reporting.

Prerequisites

Before you can set up payment systems, you must perform the following setup steps:

- formats
- transmission configurations

Purpose

The purpose of setting up payment systems is to:

- define the external organizations that Oracle Payments collaborates with to process your funds capture and funds disbursement transactions
- define the deploying company's relationships with its payment systems

Specifying Supported Capabilities

When creating a payment system on the Create Payment System setup page, you:

- specify payment instruments the payment system will support on the funds capture side and/or the funds disbursement side
- assign payment instruction formats to the payment system
- assign transmission protocols to the payment

Settings Required by Payment System

In this region, you can define parameters that the payment system requires for each transaction or settlement batch. When you define payment system accounts, you provide the actual payment system-provided values for these parameters.

Payment Systems on the Funds Capture Side

On the funds capture side, payment systems play a central role in the creation of funds capture process profiles, since the creation of a funds capture process profile is payment system-specific. Funds capture process profiles specify how Payments processes settlements, including how the settlement is to be formatted and how it is to be transmitted.

Payment Systems on the Funds Disbursement Side

On the funds disbursement side, the payment system plays a smaller role in the creation of payment process profiles, which are blueprints for payments that contain payment instruction formatting and transmission information, as well as payment grouping, payment limits, and payment sorting details.

Setting Up Transmission Configurations

A transmission configuration implements a specific transmission protocol, which allows the delivery of a transaction to a specific payment system or financial institution.

Each transmission protocol has parameters that require values. The values defined for the parameters comprise the transmission configuration for that transmission protocol. For example, the payment system, PaymentTech, may require a Socket IP Address of X and a Socket Port Number of Y. Together, X and Y represent Transmission Configuration A for a given transmission protocol.

Purpose

The purpose of setting up transmission configurations in the Create Transmission Configuration setup page is to enable electronic connectivity with payment systems by specifying parameter values.

Understanding Funds Capture Bank Account Transfers

Oracle Payments supports funds capture bank account transfers for both business-to-consumer and business-to-business models. The funds capture bank transfer functionality facilitates electronic transfer of payment amounts from a customer's bank account to the payee's bank account. Online validations are online and real-time, while actual funds transfer transactions are offline. In addition to standard direct debits, Oracle Payments supports remittance of bills receivable instruments. Source products use Oracle Payments as their interface to payment systems that provide connectivity to appropriate clearing house networks.

Setting Up Funds Capture Payment Methods

A funds capture payment method is a payment medium by which a third party payer, such as a customer, chooses to remit payment to the first party payee, which is the deploying company. Oracle Payments supports three funds capture payment methods for automated funds capture processing: credit cards, PINless debit cards, and bank account transfers.

Oracle Payments seeds three updateable funds capture payment methods for credit card, PINless debit card, and bank account transfer instrument types and also seeds five updateable payer-initiated instrument types, such as check or wire transfer. For payer-initiated instrument types, Oracle Payments records the transaction, but does not perform any processing for these payment methods.

From the Funds Capture Payment Methods page, you can view and update the seeded funds capture payment methods or define new funds capture payment methods for bank account transfers only.

How Source Product Users Employ Funds Capture Payment Methods

Once the funds capture payment methods are set up, they are available for selection by the source product user while creating or updating external payers. Additionally, source product users select one of the following seeded funds capture payment methods before submitting a payment transaction to Oracle Payments:

1. ACH (Automated Clearing House) Transfer
2. EFT (Electronic Funds Transfer) Bank Transfer
3. Credit Card
4. PINless Debit Card
5. Check
6. Cash Payment
7. Wire Transfer
8. Invoice
9. Offline Manual Payment

> **Note:** Of those in the preceding list, the first two are bank account transfer methods and the last five are payer-initiated methods.

Purpose

The purpose of setting up funds capture payment methods is to assign validation sets to seeded funds capture payment methods and to assign validation sets and define details of bank account transfers.

Creating Payment Methods

When you create a funds capture payment method for the processing type of bank account transfer, you enter user-defined values in the Code field, which is an identifier, or shortname, for the funds capture payment method you are creating.

Assigning Validations

In the Assign Validation Sets region, you assign applicable validation sets to the funds capture payment methods of processing type Bank Account Transfer that you are creating.

Note: The Assign Validation Sets and Descriptive Flexfields regions only display for non payer-initiated payment instrument types.

Setting Up Funds Capture Process Profiles

A funds capture process profile is a setup entity that acts as a blueprint for funds capture processing. It is equivalent to the payment process profile for funds disbursement processing. When you create a funds capture process profile, you specify funds capture processing rules for a specific payment system. These funds capture process profile rules include how:

- online messages, such as authorizations, for bank account transfers, credit cards, and debit cards are formatted and transmitted
- settlements are aggregated into a settlement batch
- settlement batches are formatted and transmitted
- acknowledgements received from the payment system are received and parsed
- payment system account information is linked into the payment process

Prerequisites

Before you can set up funds capture process profiles, you must perform the following set up steps:

- formats
- transmission configurations
- payment systems
- funds capture payment methods

Purpose

The purpose of setting up funds capture process profiles is to specify funds capture processing rules for a specific payment system. The funds capture process profiles contain all the rules necessary for the execution of funds capture orders for specific payment systems.

Sending and Receiving Online Payer Verifications, Authorizations, and Debits

The region name that you see in the Create Funds Capture Process Profiles page is

dependent upon the option selected in the Processing Type drop-down list.

Sending and Receiving Online Payer Verifications

If you select Bank Account Transfer from the Processing Type drop-down list in the Create Funds Capture Process Profile page, the Online Payer Verification region displays. By selecting outbound and inbound payment system formats, as well as a transmission protocol, the deploying company ensures that it can:

- send an online message to the payment system, asking it to verify that the transmission configuration is set up correctly to capture funds from customer bank accounts
- receive an online response message from the payment system

> **Note:** Online Payer Verification is an optional feature and is not offered by all payment systems.

Sending and Receiving Online Authorization

If you select Credit Card from the Processing Type drop-down list in the Create Funds Capture Process Profile page, the Online Authorization region displays. By selecting outbound and inbound payment system formats, as well as the transmission protocol, the deploying company ensures that it can:

- send an online message to the payment system, asking it to authorize an online credit card payment from the customer's credit card account with the issuing bank
- receive an online response message from the payment system

Sending and Receiving Online Debits

If you select Debit Card from the Processing Type drop-down list in the Create Funds Capture Process Profile page, the Online Debit region displays. By selecting outbound and inbound payment system formats, as well as the transmission protocol, the deploying company ensures that it can:

- send an online message to the payment system, asking it to debit a customer's checking account for payment via the customer's debit card
- receive an online response message from the payment system

Sending and Receiving Settlements

By selecting outbound and inbound payment system formats, as well as the transmission protocol, the deploying company ensures that it can:

- send a settlement request to the payment system, which includes individual online settlements for gateway-model payment systems and settlement batches for processor-model payment systems
- receive an online response message from gateway-model payment systems

Sending Payer Notifications to Payers

Payer notification is a message sent by the deploying company to each of its customers after the settlement or settlement batch is transmitted, notifying them of a funds capture transaction. This notification is formatted according to the option selected in the Format field of the Payer Notification region and delivered to the payer, that is, the deploying company's customer, by e-mail, fax, or United States mail.

> **Note:** If the payment system is a processor, then the Automatically Submit at Settlement Completion check box appears in the Payer Notification region of the Create Funds Capture Process Profile page. If the payment system is a gateway, then the Automatically Submit at Settlement Completion check box disappears from the Payer Notification region of the Create Funds Capture Process Profile page.

Receiving Acknowledgements from Payment Systems

By selecting outbound and inbound payment system formats, as well as the transmission protocol, the deploying company ensures that it can:

- Actively retrieve a response from the payment system, acknowledging that a settlement or batch settlement was received or not received from the deploying company.
- Parse the acknowledgement message.

Acknowledgements are sent from the payment system to the deploying company, indicating whether credit card or bank account transfer settlements were made. Acknowledgements can be pushed by the payment system onto the deploying company's system, or the deploying company may need to actively retrieve acknowledgements from the payment system. Acknowledgements can also indicate whether the settlement batch was processed and had successes or failures.

A payment system can reject a settlement batch when the batch is incomplete or missing information.

Specifying Settlement Grouping

Settlement grouping begins when you select check boxes in the Settlement Grouping region of the Create Funds Capture Process Profile page. Selection of settlement

grouping attributes specifies that settlements with the same settlement grouping attributes will be included in a unique settlement batch when that Funds Capture Process Profile is used.

The grouping example in the table below illustrates how settlements A to D are grouped into settlement batches, given the three settlement grouping attributes selected for Funds Capture Process Profile Y. The following settlement grouping attributes are used in the example:

- First Party Organization
- First Party Legal Entity
- Settlement Date

Example of Settlement Grouping into Settlement Batches for the Funds Capture Process Profile Y

Settlement	Settlement Attributes on Settlement	Unique Settlement Batches Contains...
A	• First Party Organization = Organization Unit 1 • First Party Legal Entity = Oracle North America • Settlement Date = January 1, 2006	Settlement Batch I contains: • Settlement A • Settlement B
B	• First Party Organization = Organization Unit 1 • First Party Legal Entity = Oracle North America • Settlement Date = January 1, 2006	

Settlement	Settlement Attributes on Settlement	Unique Settlement Batches Contains...
C	• First Party Organization = Organization Unit 2 • First Party Legal Entity = Oracle North America • Settlement Date = January 1, 2006	Settlement Batch II contains: • Settlement C
D	• First Party Organization = Organization Unit 1 • First Party Legal Entity = Oracle North America • Settlement Date = January 2, 2006	Settlement Batch III contains: • Settlement D

Specifying Settlement Limits

You can specify limits that apply to each settlement batch, including the maximum number of settlements in a batch.

The Exchange Rate Type drop-down list has the following options:

- Corporate: An exchange rate you define to standardize rates for your company. This rate is generally a standard market rate determined by senior financial management for use throughout the organization.
- Spot: An exchange rate which you enter to perform conversion based on the rate on a specific date. It applies to the immediate delivery of a currency.
- User: An exchange rate you specify when you enter a foreign currency journal entry.

Specifying Payment System Accounts

When you specify payment system accounts to be used with the funds capture process profile, you are effectively creating separate profiles at the account-level. By default, these account-level profiles are named by concatenating the funds capture process profile name and the payment system account name, but you can change it.

Once the identifier is entered, you can select the applicable transmission configuration that corresponds to each selected transmission protocol.

The transmission configuration options available in the Payment System Accounts region are dependent on the options selected in the Transmission Protocol fields.

> **Note:** When you change options in the Transmission Protocols fields, you must clear the transmission configuration selections and reselect.

The following conditions apply to the selection of transmission configurations:

- When you select a transmission protocol, the corresponding transmission configuration list of values only displays the transmission configurations for the selected transmission protocol.
- If you do not initially select a transmission protocol and then select a transmission configuration, the corresponding transmission protocol field is populated.

Maintaining Bank Account Signing Authorities

You can add, delete, and modify signing authority information for your internal bank accounts in the Maintain Bank Account Signing Authority window. You can also update, track, and obtain approval for any exceptions or changes in signing authority records.

You can use existing individual profiles from Oracle Human Resources or create profiles for individuals that will be granted signing authority for an internal bank account. You can indicate single and joint limits, signer groups, effective dates, and approval status.

You can use Discoverer Views on the bank account signing authority information to view historical audit trails for changes made to the signatory information.

You can configure Oracle Approvals Manager and Oracle Workflow to set up rules to determine the required approvals and send workflow notifications when adding and updating signing authority information.

Setup Prerequisites

1. Enter the potential signing authorities in Oracle HRMS. Non-Oracle HRMS users can enter people in the Oracle HR Foundation Responsibility.
2. Set up internal bank accounts in Oracle Cash Management.
3. In the System Parameters window, select the appropriate option for the system parameter, Signing Authority Approval. The default is Workflow Enabled. Workflow will change the status of all new signing authorities from Pending to

Approved when saved. To configure Workflow and manually control the approval status, you must select Manually Controlled.

4. Link your FND user ID or applications ID to a valid Person ID in Oracle HR to access the Bank Account Signing Authority window in the maintain mode.

5. (Optional) Modify or update the Lookup for Signing Group.

6. (Optional) Set up descriptive flexfields.

Enter Signing Authority

To enter bank account signing authority:

1. Navigate to the Maintain Bank Account Signing Authority window.

2. In the Find Bank Account window, select the bank account number for which you want to enter signing authorities.

3. Select the person name for whom the signing authority information is being entered. The Person Type, HR Organization, Job, Location, and Email information default in, if previously entered in Oracle HRMS.

4. Enter a single and/or joint signing limit.

5. Enter the Effective Start Date for this signing authority.

6. Enter or update the Group, Other Limitations, and Effective End Date.

7. (Optional) Add attachments to the new signing authority record.

8. Save your work.

Update Signing Authority

You can update the Group, Other Limitations, Effective End Date, and Status information on an existing signing authority.

If a signer's limits change, you should update the existing signing authority record with an effective end date and enter another record with the new limits.

Similarly, if a signer's authority is revoked, you should update the end date on the record.

If you make an error when entering a signer's limits or effective start date, you should delete the record.

Enter a Signing Authority Multiple Times

You may enter a signer multiple times on the same account, but you cannot overlap the effective date ranges.

If the start date of a new entry for the same signer and bank account is before the earliest start date of the existing entries, the end date should be prior to the earliest start date of the existing entries.

Example

Example. The following records exists:

Signer A, Single Limit 50,000, Start Date 01-Jan-05, End Date 30-Jun-05

Signer A, Single Limit 70,000, Start 01-Jul-05, End Date <null>

If you want to add Signer A's limit for 2004, the start date and end date should be before 01-Jan-05.

If the start date of a new entry for the same signer and bank account is between the start dates of the existing entries, the end date should not fall on or between the effective date ranges of any existing entries.

Example

Example. The following records exists:

Signer A, Single Limit 50,000, Start Date 01-Jan-05, End Date 31-Mar-05

Signer A, Single Limit 70,000, Start Date 01-Jul-05, End Date <null>

If you want to add Signer A's limit for April through June 2005, the start date and end date should be before 01-Apr-05.

View Signing Authority

You can view signing authority information by navigating to the View Bank Account Signing Authority window.

Maintain Bank Account Signing Authority Window Reference

Bank Account Region

Account Number. Bank account number.

Account Name. Name of the bank account.

Bank Name. Name of the bank.

Bank Branch. Name of the bank branch.

Currency. Bank account currency.

Main Details Tabbed Region

Name. Name of the bank signatory.

Single Limit. The amount of the single signing limit. If the Single Limit is zero, the Joint Limit should not be zero.

Joint Limit. The amount of the joint signing limit.

- If the Joint Limit is zero, the Single Limit should not be zero.
- If the Single Limit is greater than zero, including null, the Joint Limit should not be between zero and the Single Limit. The Joint Limit can be equal to or greater than zero or the Single Limit, including null.

Group. (Optional) User-defined lookup for bank signing authorities. Available values are Null, GROUP A, GROUP B, and GROUP C.

You can use this field to do the following:

- Record bank requirements that signers be grouped in schedules, such as A, B, C, according to their limitations.
- Group signers according to a certain characteristic like location, and create groups with names like CORPORATE or LOCAL.
- Record organization restrictions of joint signing authority by having signers in one group sign with a signer in a different group.

Other Limitations. (Optional) Any limitation information not conveyed in other fields, such as the rule of who can sign with whom.

Effective Start Date. The date the signing authority begins.

Effective End Date. The date the signing authority ends.

Status. The status of the signing authority. The status can be Approved, Pending, or Rejected.

Additional Details Tabbed Region

Name. Name of the bank signatory.

Person Type. The classification of the bank signatory in OracleHRMS.

HR Organization. The group or department the bank signatory belongs to.

Job. The job function of the bank signatory.

Location. The physical location of the bank signatory in the organization.

Email. The email address of the bank signatory.

Discoverer View

The Discoverer view for Bank Account Signing Authority provides details and a historical audit trail of the changes made to the signing authority record. The Discoverer view of the Bank Signing Authority can be used to report on the bank account signing authority information.

Bank Account Signing Authority Messages

The following table contains bank account signing authority messages and explanation of those messages.

Error Message	Explanation
In order to maintain bank account signing authority, your FND user ID must be mapped to a valid person-id in HR. Please contact your system administrator. [OK]	FND user ID is not mapped to HR Person ID.
Do you want to save the changes you have made? [YES] [NO] [CANCEL]	Standard save changes message
Delete Message [text]	Standard confirm deletion message
The limit amount can not be negative. Please enter a new limit. [OK]	Negative limit amount
Please enter a limit amount. [OK]	Enter a signing limit amount.
The joint signing limit must be zero or greater than or equal to the single signing limit. Please enter a new amount. [OK]	Joint signing limit amount
The effective start date must equal or precede the effective end date. Please enter a new date. [OK]	Effective dates
The effective date ranges, of the records for a signer's limits, may not overlap. Please correct the effective dates. [OK]	Overlapping effective date ranges

Cash Pools

Cash pooling is a cash management technique aimed at optimizing the balances of the

internal bank accounts held at one or several banks. It is usually performed on a daily basis.

To perform cash pooling, you need to define a cash pool and assign internal bank accounts to the cash pool.

Creating Cash Pools

A cash pool is a group of bank accounts with one or more concentration accounts and multiple sub accounts. You can create the following two types of cash pools:

- **Notional Cash Pool.** A cash pool consisting of one concentration account and multiple sub accounts. This type of cash pool is used for cash leveling similar to zero balancing without the actual funds movement. The cash pool's closing balance for a day is calculated as a notional sum of the individual balances of the bank accounts included in the pool. The interest is calculated on the notional net balance of all accounts included in the pool and then paid out or charged to the concentration or lead account.

- **Physical Cash Pool.** A cash pool consisting of one or two concentration accounts and multiple sub-accounts with funds transfer rules specified for each combination of concentration accounts and sub accounts. This type of cash pool is used for cash leveling wherein the user can initiate fund transfers or mirror cash transfers performed by the bank.

  Before creating Physical Cash Pools, you have to decide how the physical fund transfers will be recorded in the system. If you are using Oracle Treasury, you can choose to create fund transfers in Oracle Treasury or Oracle Cash Management by choosing one or the other in the site-level system profile option CE: Bank Account Transfers. If you are using Oracle Cash Management only, you will only be able to create fund transfers in Oracle Cash Management.

To create a notional cash pool:

1. Navigate to the Cash Pools Search and Results page.
2. Select Notional Cash Pool.
3. Select Go.
4. In the Create Notional Cash Pool: Header Information page, enter a unique Cash Pool name.
5. Select a concentration account for your cash pool. The Account Number, Bank Name, Legal Entity, and Cash Pool Currency default in based on the selected bank account.

Note: You can only select bank accounts that you have access to, that have not been assigned to other cash pools, and for which the Interest Rounding and Interest Includes options have been assigned as a part of the Interest Rate Schedule.

6. In the Effective Date From field, enter the first date that the notional cash pool is active, such as the first date the consolidated bank account balances will be displayed on the Bank Balances page or the first date the interest will be calculated on the consolidated balance.

7. In the Effective Date To field, enter the last date that the notional cash pool is active.

8. Click Next to assign sub accounts.

9. In the Create Notional Cash Pool: Sub Accounts page, select bank accounts to include as sub accounts for your cash pool.

10. In the Create Notional Cash Pool: Review page, review the information you have entered.

11. Click Finish to save the cash pool.

To create a physical cash pool:

1. Navigate to the Cash Pools Search and Results page.

2. Select Physical Cash Pool.

3. Select Go.

4. In the Create Physical Cash Pool Header Information page, enter a unique name for your cash pool.

5. In the Concentration Type field, select either One Account or Two Accounts to indicate if the cash pool will have one or two concentration accounts.

   If you select the One Account option, the Concentration Account field is displayed.

   Select a Concentration Account. The Account Number, Bank Name, Company, and Cash Pool Currency default in.

   If you select the Two Accounts option, the Investment Concentration Account field and the Funding Concentration Account field is displayed.

   Select an Investment Concentration Account and a Funding Concentration Account for the cash pool. The Account Number, Bank Name, Legal Entity, and Cash Pool Currency default is based on the selected bank accounts. Both the investment and

funding concentration accounts should belong to the same legal entity.

6. In the Effective Date From field, enter the first date that the physical cash pool is active, such as the first date the cash leveling transactions can be created.

7. In the Effective Date To field, enter the last date that the physical cash` pool is active.

8. In the Bank Initiated Sweeps field, select Yes if your bank initiates the cash leveling transactions. Select No if you want to use this cash pool to create transactions in the system and send payment instructions to the bank.

9. Select Next to assign sub accounts.

10. In the Create Physical Cash Pool: Sub Accounts page, select bank accounts to include as subaccounts in the cash pool.

11. Select Next.

12. In the Create Physical Cash Pool: Target Balances page, define target balances and transfer amount calculation rules for each sub account . If target balances for sub accounts included in the cash pool have already been defined in the bank account setup, they will default here.

13. Select Next.

14. If your system profile option CE: Bank Account Transfers is set to Treasury, in the Create Physical Cash Pool: Treasury Deal Attributes page, select the attributes that are required for creating transactions in Oracle Treasury during cash leveling for company-initiated transfers, or during sweep transaction generation for bank initiated sweeps, see: Reconciling Sweep Transactions, page 5-6.

    If your system profile option CE: Bank Account Transfers is set to Cash Management, in the Create Physical Cash Pool: Bank Account Transfer Attributes page, select that attributes that are required for creating transactions in Oracle Cash Management during cash leveling for company-initiated transfers, or during sweep transaction generation for bank initiated sweeps. For more information, see: Reconciling Sweep Transactions, page 5-6.

15. Select Next.

16. In the Create Physical Cash Pool: Review page, review the information you have entered.

17. Click Finish to save the cash pool.

Create (Notional/Physical) Cash Pool: Header Information Page Reference

Cash Pool Name. The name of the cash pool.

Concentration Type. (Physical Cash Pool only) The concentration type that determines whether the cash pool will have one or two concentration accounts. The following two options are available: One Account or Two Accounts.

Concentration Account. The concentration bank account for the cash pool.

Investment Concentration Account. (Physical Cash Pool only) The concentration account used for transferring surplus funds from subaccounts.

Funding Concentration Account. (Physical Cash Pool only) The concentration account used for transferring funds to subaccounts to cover the deficit.

Account Number. The account number corresponding to the selected concentration accounts.

Bank Name. The bank name corresponding to the selected concentration account.

Legal Entity. The name of the legal entity corresponding to the concentration accounts.

Cash Pool Currency. The currency of the selected concentration account. In case the physical cash pool has two concentration accounts, then both the concentration accounts must have the same currency.

Effective Date From. The first date that the cash pool is active.

- In notional cash pool, this is the first date the consolidated bank account balances will be displayed in Bank Balances page and the first date the interest will be calculated on the consolidated balance. If this value is left null, all available balances prior to the Effective Date To will be consolidated.

- In physical cash pool, this is the first date that the cash leveling or ZBA transactions can be created.

Effective Date To. The last date that the cash pool is active.

- In notional cash pools, this is the last date the consolidated bank account balances will be displayed in the Bank Balances page and the last date the interest will be calculated on the consolidated balance. If this value is left null, all available balances after the Effective Date From will be consolidated.

- In physical cash pools, this is the last date that the cash leveling/ZBA transactions can be created.

Bank Initiated Sweeps. (Physical Cash Pool only) This choice list indicates whether the cash leveling transfers are initiated by the bank or not.

- If Yes is selected, the system will not be generating transactions based on the cash position results. Instead, transactions will be generated when the bank statement is

imported and the Sweep Transactions Generation program is run.

- If No is selected, the system can be used to initiate cash leveling transactions and send the payment instructions to the bank.

Create (Notional/Physical) Cash Pool: Sub Accounts Page Reference

Cash Pool Currency. The currency of the concentration account of the cash pool.

Concentration Account. The concentration bank account for the cash pool.

Name. The bank account name.

Type. The type of the sub account. The type can be Account.

Account Number. The account number for the bank account.

Bank. The bank corresponding to the bank account number(s) shown in the Account Number column.

Legal Entity/Subsidiary. The legal entity or subsidiary corresponding to the account number(s) displayed in the Account Number column.

Create Physical Cash Pool: Target Balances Page Reference

Cash Pool Currency. The currency of the concentration account of the cash pool.

Concentration Account. The cash pool concentration account.

Name. The bank account name.

Minimum Target Balance. The minimum target balance of the bank account used to determine the projected fund deficit during cash positioning. If the minimum target balance has been entered for the bank account in Oracle Treasury it is displayed in this field. You can overwrite the default value.

Maximum Target Balance. The maximum target balance of the bank account used to determine the projected fund surplus during cash positioning. If the maximum target balance has been entered for the bank account in the bank account setup is displayed in this field. You can overwrite the default value.

Minimum Payment Amount. The minimum payment amount used to determine if and how much of the projected fund surplus is transferred to the concentration account during cash leveling.

Minimum Receipt Amount. The minimum receipt amount used to determine if and how much of the projected fund deficit is transferred from the concentration account during cash leveling.

Rounding Factor. A funds transfer rule used to determine how to round amounts when calculating the projected fund surplus or deficit for transfer to or from the concentration account during cash leveling. The default is Unit.

Rounding Rule. A funds transfer rule used to determine how to round amounts when calculating the projected fund surplus or deficit for transfer to or from the concentration account during cash leveling. The options are: Nearest, Round Down and Round Up. The default is Nearest.

Create Physical Cash Pool: Bank Account Transfer Deal Attributes

General Details Region

- **Transaction Subtype.** Default portfolio of the company of the concentration account. The list displays all non-external portfolios belonging to the legal entity.
- **Bank Account Transfer Authorization.** Default a bank transfer creation rule used to determine if the transfer requires manual authorization or if is automatically authorized. The options are: Not Required and Required. The default is Not Required.

Payment Details Region

- **Bank Account Name.**Bank account name.
- **Payment Method.**Payment method for this bank account.
- **Bank Charge Bearer.**Options include: Payee, Payer, Pays Express Charges, Shared.
- **Payment Reason.**Payment reason.
- **Payment Reason Comments.**Comments.
- **Remittance Message 1.**Remittance message.
- **Remittance Message 2.**Remittance message.
- **Remittance Message 3.**Remittance message.

Create Physical Cash Pool: Treasury Deal Attributes

Inter-Account Transfers Region

- **Portfolio.** Default portfolio of the company of the concentration account. The list displays all non-external portfolios belonging to the company.
- **Product Type.** The product type authorized for Inter-Account Transfers in Oracle Treasury.

Intercompany Funding Region: Company Attributes

- **Company.** The company of the concentration account.

- **Portfolio.** Default portfolio of the company of the concentration account. The list displays all non-external portfolios belonging to the company.

- **Product Type.** The product types for Intercompany Funding deal type.

Intercompany Attributes

- **Intercompany Party.** The name of the company or subsidiary to which the sub accounts included in the cash pool belong.

- **(Company Details) Funding Limit.** The authorized funding and foreign exchange type limit for the company of the concentration account(s). This is used for determining the rules for creating intercompany transactions in Oracle Treasury for transfers between the concentration account and the sub account when they belong to different companies.

- **(Company Details) Investment Limit.** The authorized investment and foreign exchange type limit for the company of the concentration account(s). This is used for determining the rules for creating intercompany transactions in Oracle Treasury for transfers between the concentration account and the sub account when they belong to different companies.

- **(Intercompany Party Details) Portfolio.** A list of all non-external portfolios belonging to the company displayed in the Company field in the table row. This field is disabled for all subsidiaries included in the cash pool. If no default portfolio is defined in Oracle treasury, then this field does not display a value.

- **(Intercompany Party Details) Product Type.** The product type authorized for Intercompany Funding transactions for the company displayed in the Company field of the table. This field is disabled for all subsidiaries included in the cash pool.

- **(Intercompany Party Details) Funding Limit.** The authorized funding and foreign exchange type limit for the company displayed in the Company field of the table. This is used for determining the rules for creating intercompany transactions in Oracle Treasury for transfers between the concentration account and the sub account when they belong to different companies. This field is disabled for all subsidiaries in the cash pool.

- **(Intercompany Party Details) Investment Limit.** The authorized investment and foreign exchange type limit for the company displayed in the Company field of the table. This is used for determining the rules for creating intercompany transactions in Oracle Treasury for transfers between the concentration account and the sub account when they belong to different companies. This field is disabled for all subsidiaries in the cash pool.

- **(Intercompany Party Details) Pricing Model.** The authorized pricing model for Intercompany Funding deal type. This field is disabled for all subsidiaries in the

cash pool. The default value is No Revaluation.

- **Interest Rounding.** The default value for rounding of interest amount as set up in the company profile in Oracle Treasury. The default is Nearest. The following options are available: Nearest, Round Down, and Round Up.

- **Interest Includes.** The default value for calculation of interest amount as set up in the company profile in Oracle Treasury. The default is Last Day. The following options are available: Last Day, First Day, and Both Days.

- **Company Pricing Model.** The authorized pricing model for Intercompany Funding deal type. The default value is No Revaluation.

  Note: For additional information, please refer to the Oracle Treasury User Guide.

Viewing and Updating Cash Pools

You can view cash pool information by searching for the cash pool name and clicking on the cash pool name in the Search and Results page. If you have the appropriate user security, you can update the cash pool.

4

Managing Bank Statements

Entering Bank Statements

Before you can reconcile transactions against a bank statement, you need to enter the bank statement information into Oracle Cash Management. You can accomplish this task by doing one of the following:

- Using the Bank Statement Loader program
- Using a custom loader program
- Manually entering the information

Loading the Bank Statement Open Interface Tables

If your bank provides account statements in a flat file using a defined format like BAI2 or SWIFT940, you can use the Bank Statement Open Interface to load this information into Oracle Cash Management.

You can use the Bank Statement Open Interface to load prior day bank statements for reconciliation. You can also load intra-day bank statement information for cash positioning into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables using the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program, by using a custom loader, or by using the automatic bank transmission feature.

The Bank Statement Loader Program

The Bank Statement Loader program is a platform-independent solution for mapping and transferring bank statement information from an electronic bank statement into the open interface tables in Oracle Cash Management.

The Bank Statement Loader program runs in two phases. In the first phase, the program uses a SQL*Loader script to insert data from the bank statement file into the intermediate table. The SQL*Loader script understands the format of the file and parses

the data accordingly. The intermediate table is simply a representation of the bank statement file in the database, where a row corresponds to a record in the file and a column corresponds to a field in the record.

In the second phase, the Bank Statement Loader program uses a set of mapping rules to transfer data from the intermediate table to the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. These rules map the structure of the bank statement file to the open interface tables. These rules may also perform simple pattern searches and data transformations.

The loading of BAI2 and SWIFT940 file formats is mostly automated. Since Oracle Cash Management provides the SQL*Loader scripts and mapping templates for these two formats, you can run the Bank Statement Loader program with minimal setup. You simply need to modify the default mapping information to match the variations your bank has made to the standards. In addition, the Bank Statement Loader program can accept other formats, provided you have created the corresponding SQL*Loader script and mapping information.

You can execute the Bank Statement Loader program in one of the following modes:

- Load
- Load and Import
- Load, Import, and AutoReconciliation

If you choose the option of Load and Import, the Bank Statement Import program starts after the Bank Statement Loader program completes successfully. If you choose the option of Load, Import, and AutoReconciliation, both the Bank Statement Import program and the AutoReconciliation program launch after successful completion of the Bank Statement Loader program. In either case, if the Bank Statement Loader program completes with errors or warnings, the concurrent request terminates. You can review the exceptions encountered by the Bank Statement Loader program using the Bank Statement Loader Execution Report.

To Run the Bank Statement Loader Program

Prerequisites

- Create a SQL*Loader script for the format of your bank statement file, if it is neither BAI2 nor SWIFT940.

  See: Setup for User-Defined Format, page 2-27

- Define a mapping template for the format of your bank statement file.

  See: Bank Statement Mapping, page 2-31

- Place your bank statement file in a directory.

To run the Bank Statement Loader Program:

1. Navigate to the Requests window.
2. Submit a concurrent request for the Bank Statement Loader program.
3. Select one of the following options:
   - Load
   - Load and Import
   - Load, Import, and AutoReconciliation
4. Enter the name of the mapping template.
5. Enter the name of the bank statement file.
6. Enter the directory path in which the bank statement file is located.
7. Enter the bank branch name and the bank account number you want to load from the bank statement file. If nothing is entered, the entire file is loaded. Otherwise, only statements belonging to the bank branch or the bank account are loaded.
8. If you selected either the option of Load and Import or Load, Import, and AutoReconciliation, enter the GL Date.
9. If you selected the option of Load, Import and AutoReconciliation, enter the Receivable Activity and NSF Handling. Also enter the Payment Method if you specified a bank account number.
10. Submit the program.
11. Check the SQL*Loader log file and the Bank Statement Loader Execution Report to see any exceptions generated during the loading process.

    See: Bank Statement Loader Execution Report, page 11-25
12. If you selected either the option of Load and Import or Load, Import and AutoReconciliation, review the results of the import process.

    See: Reviewing Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-17
13. If you selected the option of Load, Import and AutoReconciliation, review the results of the AutoReconciliation program and correct the reconciliation errors.

    See: Reviewing Reconciliation Errors, page 5-15
14. If you did not run the AutoReconciliation program, or you are unable to correct the

reconciliation errors, you can manually reconcile the bank statements.

15. After you have reconciled your bank statements, you can run the following Cash Management reports to ensure they contain accurate information:
    - Cash in Transit Report
    - GL Reconciliation Report
    - Bank Statement Summary Report
    - Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report

Bank Statement Loader Program Parameters

Process Option. You can choose one of the three following options:

1. Load
2. Load and Import
3. Load, Import, and AutoReconciliation

If you choose either Load and Import or Load, Import, and AutoReconciliation, a separate process will be submitted for each bank statement after the loader program completes successfully.

Mapping Name. Name of the mapping rules that should be used

Data File Name. Name of the bank statement file to load from

Directory Path. Location of the bank statement file. The length defaults to 50 characters, but can be set up to 240 characters. If none is entered, the Bank Statement Loader program looks for the bank statement file in the directory of $CE_TOP/bin.

Bank Branch Name. If the bank statement file contains information for multiple bank branches, you can ask the Bank Statement Loader program to load only bank statements from a specific bank branch.

Bank Account Number. If the bank statement file contains information for multiple bank accounts, you can ask the Bank Statement Loader program to load only bank statements from a specific bank account.

GL Date. If you selected either the option of Load and Import or Load, Import, and AutoReconciliation, enter the GL Date. This is the default date for all General Ledger journal entries created by AutoReconciliation. The date must be in an open or future-enterable Payables or Receivables period.

Receivable Activity. If you selected the option of Load, Import and AutoReconciliation, enter the Receivable Activity to create Receivables miscellaneous receipts for differences that AutoReconciliation encounters when matching remittance batches or NSF

transactions within tolerances.

Payment Method. If you selected the option of Load, Import and AutoReconciliation and have specified a Bank Account Number, enter the Payment Method to create Receivables miscellaneous receipts for differences that AutoReconciliation encounters when matching remittance batches or NSF transactions within tolerances.

NSF Handling. If you selected the option of Load, Import and AutoReconciliation, enter the NSF Handling for handling any NSF or rejected receipts on the bank statement. The valid actions are:

- **No Action**.to handle manually
- **Reverse**. to reverse receipt and reopen the invoices
- **Debit Memo Reversal.** to create a debit memo that replaces the item closed by the original receipt.

Using a Custom Loader Program:

First, create your custom loader program. Then:

1. Run the custom loader program against the bank statement file to populate the Bank Statement Open Interface tables.
2. Verify that the bank statement information was loaded into the open interface tables correctly.

   You can use the Bank Statement Interface window to ensure that bank statement header information is correctly inserted into the CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT table.

   You can use the Bank Statement Lines Interface window to ensure that bank statement transaction lines are correctly inserted into the CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table.

   The Bank Statement Interface and Bank Statement Lines Interface windows show you the statement header and lines information in the open interface tables. You can correct the information using these windows, or you can correct the original bank statement file and reload it using your custom loader program.

Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader Program

You can use the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program to load bank statements updated with the latest transactions that occur on the day the statements are created. If the intra-day bank statements include the time they are created, the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program can also load the timestamp information.

You can run the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader in one of two modes:

- Load
- Load and Import

If you choose the Load option, the program loads the bank statement information into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables, and you can make corrections to the statements prior to importing them into Oracle Cash Management. Alternatively, you can choose the Load and Import option to automatically start the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program after the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program completes successfully. If the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program encounters any errors or warnings, the concurrent request stops. You can review the exceptions using the Bank Statement Loader Execution Report.

Submitting the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader Program

Prerequisites

- Set up Oracle Treasury for integration with Oracle Cash Management. See: Setting Up Oracle Treasury for Oracle Cash Management Integration, page 2-17.
- Create a SQL*Loader script for the format of your bank statement, if it is neither BAI2 nor SWIFT940.
- Define a mapping template for the format of your bank statement file. See: Bank Statement Mapping, page 2-31.
- Save your bank statement file in a directory.

To submit the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader Program

1. Navigate to the Requests window.
2. Submit the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program.
3. Select one of the following options:
   - Load
   - Load and Import
4. Enter the name of the mapping template.
5. Enter the name of the bank statement file.
6. Enter the directory path in which the bank statement file is located.
7. If you want to limit loading records from a particular bank branch and branch

account, then specify the bank branch name and the bank account number. Otherwise the program will import all records in the bank statement file.

8. Submit the program.

9. Check the SQL*Loader log file and the Bank Statement Loader Execution Report to see any exceptions generated during the loading process.

Receiving XML Bank Statements

You can set up XML Gateway to receive XML bank statements automatically and securely from your bank. The bank delivers the prescheduled bank statements in the IFX XML format to the XML Gateway. The XML Gateway validates the message using the IFX specifications and predefined Cash Management mapping rules. Upon successful validation, the XML Gateway populates the Bank Statement Open Interface tables and launches the Bank Statement Import program to transfer the bank statement information to Cash Management. If the validation fails, the XML Gateway sends e-mail notifications to the system administrator and the bank contact. In addition, the system notifies the designated cash manager of the status of the import process.

Setting Up Your System to Receive XML Bank Statements

Prerequisites

- Oracle XML Gateway is installed. See: *Oracle XML Gateway User's Guide*
- Oracle Advanced Queuing is installed.
- Oracle Workflow Business Event System is installed. See: *Oracle Workflow Business Event System User's Guide*
- Both the bank and your system should use Oracle Transport Agent. If the bank is not using Oracle Transport Agent, the bank needs to integrate its communication software to conform to the Oracle Transport Agent message protocol.

Setting up a dummy user to receive XML statements

Your bank will send the XML statements to a dummy user, so that you do not expose the internal user name to the bank.

1. Log on as System Administrator.

2. Navigate to the Users window.

3. Enter cexml for the User Name.

4. Enter Dummy User for CE XML Data Transmission for the Description.

5. Enter the password cexml. The password is case sensitive.

Setting up a user in Cash Management to receive XML statements

1. Log on as System Administrator.

2. Navigate to the Users window

3. Add Cash Management, Cash Management Notifications, XML Gateway, System Administrator, Workflow Administrator, Payables Manager, and Receivables Manager Responsibilities.

4. In the E-mail field, enter a valid e-mail address for the person who will receive error notifications.

5. Save your work.

Running the Notification Mailer

Check the status of the Notification Mailer. If it isn't running, submit the Notification Mailer program so users can receive e-mail notifications. To run this program:

1. Log on as System Administrator.

2. Navigate to the Requests window.

3. Submit the Notification Mailer.

XML Gateway Trading Partner Setup

Refer to the *Oracle XML Gateway User's Guide* for setup instructions.

If your current version is Financials Family Pack D, the Bank field will be replaced by the Company Admin E-mail field.

The following table shows the values to enter for each parameter:

In this field	Enter
Trading Partner Type	Bank
Trading Partner Site	The bank site
Bank	Bank name

In this field	Enter
Transaction Type	BANKSVCRS
Transaction Sub-Type	DEPACCTSTMTINQRS
Standard Code	IFX
External Transaction Type	BANKSVCRS
External Transaction Sub-Type	DEPACCTSTMTINQRS
Direction	IN
Map	CE_BSI_IFX12_IN
XML Header	The code that is decided by your party and your bank for your Party Site ID

The following table shows the values that default for each parameter:

In this field	These values will default
Transaction Type	BANKSVCRS
Transaction Sub-Type	DEPACCTSTMTINQRS
Standard Code	IFX
External Transaction Type	BANKSVCRS
External Transaction Sub-Type	DEPACCTSTMTINQRS
Direction	IN

Bank Setup

- In the Banks setup window, enter the bank administrator's e-mail address in the XML Administrator E-mail field.

Note: If your current version is Financials Family Pack D, please disregard this step.

Processing XML Bank Statements

1. The bank creates the XML message detailing the previous day bank account activities.

2. The bank sends the XML message to your enterprise.

3. The Oracle Transport Agent (OTA) receives the message, and checks the message for transmission errors. If no errors are found, Oracle Transport Agent sends an HTTP success response to the bank server. If errors are found, then Oracle Transport Agent sends an HTTP failure response to the bank.

4. The XML Gateway validates the received file for the XML message structure, the IFX specifications, and predefined Cash Management mapping rules.

5. If there are data errors in the message, XML Gateway sends the bank an error notification.

6. If XML Gateway identifies system/process related errors, it sends the System Administrator an error notification. The System Administrator can check the error message notification for the error detail and correct the problem. Once the problem has been corrected, the System Administrator can then reply to the Oracle Workflow error by:

   - choosing the Reprocess option. This will begin the XML processing again, starting with step 4 .

   - choosing the Abort option. This will stop the system from attempting to process the statement.

7. XML Gateway populates the Bank Statement Open Interface tables with the XML message according to the mapping rules.

8. If Cash Management identifies data errors, the system sends a data error notification to the Cash Manager. The Cash Manager can correct the data errors in the Bank Statement Open Interface window. Possible data errors include:

   - no bank ID found

   - multiple bank accounts found

   - duplicate bank statement exists

9. The Bank Statement Import program launches automatically once the bank statement is successfully processed.

10. The Cash Manager receives either a success or a failure notification indicating whether the bank statement import process completed successfully or not.

11. The Cash Manager can check and correct any import errors before trying to import the bank statement again.

12. If the Cash Manager receives a success notification regarding the import process, then the bank statement was correctly imported into the Cash Management tables, and it is now ready for reconciliation.

Related Topics

Bank Statement Open Interface, page 2-27

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

About Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Reviewing Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-17

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-21

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

Importing Bank Statements

If you load electronic bank statements into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables, you must import the bank statement information into the Cash Management Bank Statement tables before you can reconcile the statement detail lines.

Oracle Cash Management's Bank Statement Import program validates the information in the Bank Statement Open Interface tables and imports the validated bank statement information. If you import bank statements from bank accounts that are used by Oracle Treasury, the Bank Statement Import program also updates the bank account balances seen in Oracle Treasury. Additionally, the Bank Statement Import program can launch the AutoReconciliation program to perform an automatic reconciliation after the import process completes.

If you load intra-day bank statements, you must use the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program to validate and import the information into the Cash Management Intra-Day Bank Statement tables.

After you have successfully imported the intra-day bank statements, you can include the information in your cash positioning in Oracle Treasury. Since intra-day information is not used for reconciliation, you cannot view the imported intra-day bank statements in Cash Management windows or reports. However, you can archive or

purge the bank statements. When you import multiple intra-day bank statements within the same day, the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program deletes the existing bank statement before importing the new bank statement.

You can use one of several ways to import data from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables into the Bank Statement tables.

To load and import a bank statement in the same request:

1. Navigate to the Submit Request window.
2. Select the Bank Statement Loader program.
3. Choose the option of Load and Import.
4. Specify the other parameters as appropriate.
5. Submit your request.

See: To Run the Bank Statement Loader Program, page 4-2

To load, import, and reconcile a bank statement in the same request:

1. Navigate to the Submit Request window.
2. Select the Bank Statement Loader program.
3. Choose the option of Load, Import and AutoReconciliation.
4. Specify the other parameters as appropriate.
5. Submit your request.

See: To Run the Bank Statement Loader Program, page 4-2

To import a bank statement only, without AutoReconciliation:

1. Navigate to the Submit Request window. Alternatively, you may submit the request directly from the Bank Statement Interface window by selecting AutoReconciliation from the Oracle Applications Tools menu.
2. Select the Bank Statement Import program.
3. Enter the Bank Account Number for the statement you want to import.
4. Specify the range of statement numbers in the Statement Number From and Statement Number To fields.

5. Specify dates for the Statement Date From, Statement Date To, and GL Date fields.

   The GL Date is the default date for all General Ledger journal entries generated by AutoReconciliation. The date must be in an open or future-enterable Payables or Receivables period.

6. Submit your request. The Bank Statement Import program validates the data in the Bank Statement Interface tables, imports the validated information, and prints an AutoReconciliation Execution Report.

7. Review and correct any import validation errors, then repeat the steps above.

To import and reconcile a bank statement in the same request:

1. Navigate to the Submit Request window.

2. Select the Bank Statement Import and AutoReconciliation program.

   Note: Alternatively, you may submit the request directly from the Reconcile Bank Statements window or Bank Statement Interface window by selecting AutoReconciliation from the Oracle Applications Tools menu.

3. Enter the Bank Account Number for the statement you want to import.

4. Specify the range of statement numbers in the Statement Number From and Statement Number To fields.

5. Specify dates for the Statement Date From, Statement Date To, and GL Date fields.

6. Select a Receivable Activity and a Payment Method to create Miscellaneous Receipts for differences that AutoReconciliation encounters when matching remittance batches or NSF transactions within tolerances.

7. Specify how to handle any NSF transactions that are in your bank statement. Choose:

   - **No Action:** to handle manually
   - **Reverse:** to reverse receipt and reopen the invoices
   - **Debit Memo Reverse**: to create a debit memo that replaces the item closed by the original receipt

8. Submit your request. The AutoReconciliation program validates the data in the Bank Statement Open Interface tables, imports the validated information, reconciles

the bank statement, and prints an AutoReconciliation Execution Report.

> **Note:** You can get an AutoReconciliation Execution Report at any time by submitting a request using the Submit Request window.

9. Review and correct any import validation errors, then repeat steps above. Once any import validation errors have been corrected, the AutoReconciliation program submits a request to reconcile the bank statement.

To load and import an intra-day bank statement in the same request:

1. Navigate to the Submit Request window.
2. Select the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program
3. Choose the option of Load and Import.
4. Specify the other parameters as appropriate.
5. Submit your request.

See: To Submit the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader Program, page 4-6

To import an intra-day bank statement only

1. Navigate to the Submit Request window. Alternatively, you may submit the request directly from the Bank Statement Interface window by selecting AutoReconciliation from the Tools menu.
2. Select the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program.
3. Enter the Bank Account Number for the statement you want to import.
4. Specify the range of statement numbers in the Statement Number From and Statement Number To fields. The list of values displays only intra-day bank statements that are within the range.
5. Specify dates for the Statement Date From and Statement Date To fields.
6. Submit your request. The Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program validates the data in the Bank Statement Interface tables, imports the validated information, and prints an AutoReconciliation Execution Report.
7. Review and correct any import validation errors, then repeat the steps above.

Related Topics

About Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Reviewing Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-17

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-21

Loading Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

About Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Multi-Currency Handling, page 1-9

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

About Bank Statement Validation

The Bank Statement Import program validates the information you load into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. If the data passes validation, the program imports it into the Cash Management Bank Statement tables. If any records in a statement fail validation, the program does not import the statement and assigns the statement an Error status.

You can use the AutoReconciliation Execution Report or the View Reconciliation Errors window to review any import validation errors. You can use the Bank Statement Interface window to correct any import validation errors.

Bank Statement Header Validation

Import validation requires that the imported bank statement header information pass the following checks:

- The bank account must be defined.
- If the bank account number is not unique within the system, you must provide a bank and branch name in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table.
- The bank statement currency must be the currency defined for the bank account.
- If the bank account is used by Oracle Treasury, you must have access to the company that owns the Treasury bank account.

Control Total Validation

Many bank statements provide control totals in the statement header for error-checking purposes. The Bank Statement Header Interface table has seven control total columns. The Bank Statement Import program verifies the values in these columns as follows. If the program encounters exceptions with the control totals, it generates warning

messages but proceeds to import the statement.

The control totals are as follows:

CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE: The statement opening balance. No validation is done for this entry.

CONTROL_END_BALANCE: The statement closing balance. The closing balance should satisfy the following equation:

CONTROL_END_BALANCE = CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE + CONTROL_TOTAL_CR - CONTROL_TOTAL_DR.

CONTROL_TOTAL_DR: Payment control total in the statement header should match the total payment amount on the statement lines. Payments are statement lines that have a bank transaction code with a type of Payment, Misc. Payment, NSF or Rejected.

CONTROL_TOTAL_CR: Receipt control total in the statement header should match the total receipt amount on the statement lines. Receipts are statement lines that have a bank transaction code with a type of Receipt, Misc Receipt, or Stop.

CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT: Number of payment lines in the statement should match the payment line control total in the statement header. Payments are statement lines that have a bank transaction code with a type of Payment, Misc. Payment, NSF or Rejected.

CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT: Number of receipt lines in the statement should match the receipt line control total in the statement header. Credits are statement lines that have a bank transaction code with a type of Receipt, Misc. Receipt, or Stop.

CONTROL_LINE_COUNT: Number of lines in the statement should match the line control total in the statement header.

Statement Line Validation

Values populated in the CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table must not contain any trailing spaces.

Currency Code: If you enter a currency code on the statement line, it must be a currency that is defined in the system. The currency code does not affect the matching or calculations.

Bank Transactions Codes: Bank Transaction Codes, if entered, must be defined in Cash Management.

Exchange Rate Type: The Exchange Rate Type must be a valid type as defined in Oracle General Ledger.

Amount: An amount must be entered for the statement line.

Multi-Currency Validation

AutoReconciliation checks each bank statement line for a valid currency and exchange rate type. During reconciliation, the program checks the following once a matching

transaction is found:

- For transactions:
  - Bank statement line currency must be the same as the transaction currency. (Your bank statement currency may be different.)
- For batches:
  - All transactions in the batch must use the same currency.
  - Statement line currency is the same as the batch currency.
- For both transactions and batches:
  - For user exchange rates, each transaction must include the Exchange Rate, and the Rate Type must be User.
  - For predefined rates (such as Corporate or Spot), each transaction must include the Rate Type and Exchange Rate Date.

Related Topics

System Parameters, page 2-17

Bank Statement Open Interface, page 2-27

Loading Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Reviewing Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-17

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-21

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Multi-Currency Handling, page 1-9

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

Country Specific Bank Account Validations, page F-2

Reviewing Bank Statement Interface Errors

You can use the Bank Statement Interface window to review import validation errors that resulted when you imported bank statement information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. In addition, you can review the AutoReconciliation Execution Report that is printed automatically by the Bank Statement Import program.

You can review all import and validation errors for a statement, or you can review only those errors that occurred for a specific statement line.

> **Note:** Only import validation errors are available from the Bank Statement Interface window. To review reconciliation-related errors, use the Reconcile Bank Statements window.

If you encounter import errors, you can correct the data one of three ways:

- Use the Bank Statement Interface and Bank Statement Interface Lines window.
- Repair the Bank Statement Open Interface tables manually.
- Repair, reload, and re-import the original bank statement file.

Prerequisite

- Import bank statement information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. See: Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

To review bank statement interface errors online:

1. Navigate to the Bank Statement Interface window.
2. Query the statement whose interface errors you want to review.
3. Choose Errors. You see the Bank Statement Interface Errors window containing the list of interface errors.
4. Choose Done to exit.

> **Tip:** If you prefer to review the errors in a printed report, the AutoReconciliation Execution Report is run automatically when you run either of the programs that include Bank Statement Import.

Related Topics

Statement Interface Window Reference, page 4-18

Statement Interface Window Reference

Account Number: The bank account number as defined in Oracle Payables, Oracle Receivables, or Oracle Payroll.

Bank Name: The name of the bank.

Bank Branch: The name of the bank branch.

Currency: The currency of the bank account.

Intra-Day: Indicates whether or not the statement is an intra-day bank statement.

Statement Number: The number of the bank statement. If you do not use sequential numbering, the default statement number is the statement date.

Statement Date: The closing date of the bank statement. The date also includes the timestamp information provided by your bank. On intra-day bank statements, the timestamp indicates how recent the information is.

Status: The status of the bank statement:

- **Corrected:** Errors corrected after input.
- **Error:** Errors detected during input.
- **New:** New statement, not imported.
- **Transferred:** Successfully imported.

Check Digits: Field for bank account validation.

Creation Date. The creation date of the bank statement. This is the date that the bank statement was created in Oracle Cash Management, not the date that your bank created the bank statement. If the intra-day bank statement does not contain timestamp information, you can use this date to determine how recent the information is.

Opening Amount: The beginning balance for the statement, as provided by the bank.

Receipts Amount: The total amount of receipts on the statement.

Receipts Lines: The total number of receipt lines on the statement.

Payments Amount: The total amount of payments on the statement.

Payments Lines: The total number of payment lines on the statement.

Closing: The closing balance on the bank statement.

Lines: The total number of lines on the statement.

Available. The available balance on the statement.

Value Dated. The balance on the statement used to calculate interest.

One Day Float. The one day float balance on the statement. When you import bank statements from a shared bank account, this balance is used to update the One Day Float Balance in Oracle Treasury.

Two Day Float Balance. The two day float balance on the statement. When you import bank statements from a shared bank account, this balance is used to update the Two Day Float Balance in Oracle Treasury.

Reviewing Interface Errors Online for a Specific Statement Line

To review interface errors online for a specific statement line:

1. Navigate to the Bank Statement Interface window.
2. Query the statement whose interface errors you want to review.
3. Choose Lines to see the Bank Statement Line Interface window.
4. Select the line whose errors you want to review.
5. Choose Errors.

   You see the Bank Statement Interface Line Errors window containing the list of interface errors for the selected line.
6. Choose Done to exit.

Bank Statement Line Interface Window Reference

Account: The bank account number, as defined in Oracle Receivables, Oracle Payables, or Oracle Payroll.

Date: The closing date of the bank statement.

Line Number: The line number provided by the bank. If the bank does not provide line numbers, you can enter line numbers in a sequence.

Code: The code that the bank uses to identify a transaction.

Number: The transaction number, such as the receipt number, check number, or payment batch name. Automatic Reconciliation uses this number to identify transactions when matching the bank statement line to a transaction or batch.

Date: The date that the transaction cleared the bank. The default is the statement date.

Amounts Tabbed Region

Amount: The amount of the transaction, in the bank account currency. This amount must be within tolerance for AutoReconciliation to succeed (even if the netted value of the Amount and Charges column equals the amount of the system transaction).

Charges: The amount of any bank charges associated with the transaction. This field is not required.

Original Amount: The statement line amount, in its original currency. This amount is used in foreign exchange transactions when the currency of the transaction is different from the currency of the bank account.

Exchange Tabbed Region

Curr: The currency of the transaction.

Date: The date associated with the exchange rate that was used.

Type: The exchange rate type (as defined in Oracle General Ledger) used for this transaction.

Rate: The exchange rate specified by the bank for this transaction.

Reference Tabbed Region

Agent: The customer or supplier associated with the transaction.

Agent Bank Account: The bank account number of the customer or supplier associated with the transaction.

Invoice: The invoice number associated with the transaction.

Description Tabbed Region

Effective Date: The value date for the transaction.

Description: Any other information provided by the bank.

Related Topics

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-21

About Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

Correcting Bank Statement Interface Errors

If any record in a statement fails validation, the Bank Statement Import program does not import the statement, and assigns it an Error status. You can review import validation errors from the Bank Statement Interface window, or by reviewing the AutoReconciliation Execution Report.

Interface errors may occur for a variety of reasons. The following is a list of the most common causes of bank statement interface errors:

- Incorrect setup information in Oracle Cash Management, such as bank transaction codes, currencies, or bank account information.

  Solution: Update the Cash Management setup information and reload the bank statement file.

- Errors in the bank statement file.

  Solution: Obtain a corrected transmission file from your bank and reload it.

- Exceptions from the Bank Statement Loader program or the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program.

  Solution: Review the Bank Statement Loader Execution Report and resolve the exceptions by correcting the SQL*Loader script, the mapping template, or the bank statement file. Reload the file.

- Problem in your custom loader program.

  Solution: Modify the custom loader program and reload the bank statement file. After you have reloaded the file, import the bank statement file again.

Instead of reloading the bank statement file, you may want to directly modify the information in the Bank Statement Interface tables by using the Bank Statement Interface and the Bank Statement Interface Lines window. You can update all bank statement header and line information as well as any optional descriptive flexfield content.

To correct the bank statement interface header information:

1. Navigate to the Bank Statement Interface window.
2. Query the Statement you want to correct.
3. Edit the bank statement header information as necessary, including the Control Balances.
4. Save your work.
5. Run the Bank Statement Import program to import the corrected bank statement information from the open interface tables. If this is an intra-day bank statement, run the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program.

   Note: You can submit the Bank Statement Import program or the Intra-Day Bank Statement Import program directly from the Bank Statement Interface window. Choose AutoReconciliation from the Tools menu.

To correct the bank statement interface lines:

1. Navigate to the Bank Statement Interface window.
2. Query the Statement you want to correct.

3. Choose the Lines button.

4. Edit the bank statement transaction information. You can edit the Line Number, transaction Code, transaction Number, and Date.

5. In the Amounts tabbed region, edit the transaction Amount, bank Charges, and Original Amount.

6. In the Exchange tabbed region, edit exchange rate information, including Currency code, Exchange Date, Exchange rate Type, and Exchange Rate.

7. In the Reference tabbed region, edit the Agent (customer or supplier), Invoice number, and Agent Bank Account associated with each line.

8. In the Description tabbed region, edit the Value Date and Description for each line.

9. Save your work.

10. Run the Bank Statement Import program to import the corrected bank statement information from the open interface tables.

Related Topics

Loading Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

About Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Reviewing Bank Statement Interface Errors, page 4-17

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements, page 5-62

Entering Bank Statements Manually

In addition to loading bank statement information automatically with the Bank Statement Open Interface, you can enter bank statement information manually. You can enable users to update information on a statement that was previously entered manually or loaded automatically, even if the statement is already reconciled.

When you enter a bank statement manually, you enter the bank statement header and the transaction lines. You can reconcile transaction lines as you enter them, or you can reconcile the bank statement (manually or automatically) after you enter all the transaction lines and save your work.

Note: Cash Management assumes that you enter statements in

chronological order, and uses this order to calculate cumulative bank account balances.

Prerequisites

- Define your banks.
- If you plan to use the Bank Statement Import program, you need to define bank transaction codes for the bank account.
- Set up Receivables activities and payment methods for miscellaneous transactions.
- If you want to use document sequences, you or your System Administrator must set up sequential document numbering for Cash Management.

  Note: For document sequencing, the effective date is the statement date.

- If you have enabled the Allow Adding Lines to Imported Statements feature in the System Parameters window, you can add lines to automatically-loaded statements.

To enter a bank statement manually:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window. Choose New.
2. Choose the New button to display the Bank Statement window.
3. Enter the following bank header information: Account Number, Account Name, Bank Name, Bank Branch, and Currency.
4. Enter the new statement Date.
5. If you use manual document sequence numbers, enter the bank statement Document Number.

   Note: If you use automatic document sequence numbers, Cash Management creates the Document Number for the statement automatically. You cannot edit an automatically assigned Document Number.

6. Enter the Statement number. The default Statement Number is the statement date.
7. Enter the GL Date-the default is the Statement Date. The GL Date must be in an

open or a future-enterable period in Receivables or Payables.

8. Optionally, enter bank statement Control Totals:

   Enter the opening and closing balances as needed. Enter control totals for Receipts and Payments, as well as the number of statement lines for each.

   > **Note:** You can compare the Control Total amounts to those displayed by Cash Management in the Line Totals tabbed region of the Statements window, to ensure the completeness and correctness of your entered bank statement.

9. Choose Lines to begin entering your statement lines. Optionally, you can save the header information now and enter the statement lines later.

10. Save your work.

Bank Statement Window Reference

Account Number: The bank account number. Note that you can update this value but if you have already reconciled bank statement lines, it will not update them.

Account Name: The bank account name.

Bank Name: The name of the bank.

Bank Branch: The name of the bank branch.

Date: The closing date of the statement.

Currency: The currency of the bank account.

Document Number: The document number that appears on the bank statement. If you use automatic document sequence numbers, Cash Management creates the document number for the statement automatically. You cannot edit a document number that is assigned automatically.

Statement Number: The statement number. The default statement number is the statement date.

GL Date: The date that the transaction posts to the General Ledger. The default is the statement date. The GL Date must be in an open or future-enterable period in Oracle Receivables or Oracle Payables.

Check Digits: Enter Check Digits for bank account validation.

Control Totals and Line Totals: The Control Totals and Line Totals tabbed regions of the window contain the same fields. You can compare these fields to ensure that the bank statement that you entered is complete and correct.

Opening Balance: The beginning balance for the statement, as provided by the bank. The default is the closing balance of the previous statement.

Receipts Amount: The total amount of receipts on the statement.

Receipts Lines: The total number of receipt lines on the statement.

Payments Amount: The total amount of payments on the statement.

Payments Lines: The total number of payment lines on the statement.

Closing Balance: The closing balance on the statement.

Available Balance: The available balance on the statement.

Value Dated Balance: The value dated balance on the statement. This balance is used to calculate your interest.

One Day Float. The one day float balance on the statement.

Two Day Float. The two day float balance on the statement.

Complete: Check this field to indicate that the bank statement is complete and to prevent any changes to it. You may want to freeze a bank statement after completing the reconciliation process. However, you can mark or unmark the statement as complete at any time.

Unreconciled Amount: The total amount on the statement that is unreconciled. This amount is the net of unreconciled receipts and unreconciled payments.

Unreconciled Lines: The number of unreconciled lines on the statement.

Related Topics

Bank Statements, page 1-4

Sequential Document Numbering, page 2-63

Entering Bank Statement Lines, page 4-26

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Creating Reconciled Bank Statement Lines, page 5-24

Country Specific Bank Account Validations, page F-2

Entering Bank Statement Lines

To enter bank statement lines:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Choose Find to see a list of all statements you have already entered.
3. Select the statement whose header information you've already entered, then choose Review to see the Bank Statement window.

Note: If you have not already entered the bank statement header information, see Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23.

4. Choose Lines to enter the bank statement lines.

5. Enter the Line Number.

6. Enter the transaction Type for the line, or select a type from the poplist.

7. Optionally, if you plan to automatically reconcile the bank statement once you finish entering it, for each transaction line enter the Bank Transaction Code and:

   - Transaction Number, or
   - Invoice Number (see step 11 below) and Agent Bank Account

   Note: For Payroll EFT payments, the transaction number should be entered in the order specified by the Payroll matching order for the transaction code and separated by "/".

8. In the Amounts tabbed region, enter transaction amount details.

   - Enter the Transaction Date. The default is the statement date.
   - Enter the Value Date.
   - Enter the transaction Amount. The transaction type determines whether the amount is a payment or receipt.

9. In the Exchange tabbed region, enter exchange information for foreign currency transactions.

   - Enter the Original Currency Code and Exchange Date.
   - Enter an exchange rate Type or select one from the available list of values.
   - If you select exchange rate type of User, enter the exchange Rate. If you use a predefined rate type, Cash Management picks up the exchange rate automatically if you do not enter one.

10. In the Reference tabbed region, enter the Agent (customer or supplier), Invoice number, and Agent Bank Account associated with the transaction.

11. In the Description tabbed region, enter a description of the transaction and any Bank Charges related to the transaction.

12. Enter each additional transaction line.

13. Save your work.

Bank Statement Interface Lines Window Reference

Account: The number of the bank account associated with the transaction.

Date: The closing date of the bank statement.

Line: The line number provided by the bank. If the bank does not provide line numbers, you can enter line numbers in a sequence.

Type: The transaction type:

- **Payment:** Payments, such as generated or recorded checks, wire transfers, and electronic funds transfers.
- **Receipt:** Receipts, such as received checks, direct debits, and bills of exchange.
- **Miscellaneous Payment:** Payments not associated with supplier invoices, such as petty cash transactions posted directly to cash accounts.
- **Miscellaneous Receipt:** Receipts not associated with customer invoices, such as petty cash transactions posted directly to revenue accounts.
- **Stopped:** Stopped payments previously entered, generated, or cleared, such as callback of a check. A stopped transaction type matches only to voided or stopped payments in Oracle Payables and Oracle Payroll.
- **Rejected:** Receipts rejected for reasons other than nonsufficient funds, such as an invalid bank account. A rejected transaction type matches only to reversed receipts in Oracle Receivables.
- **NSF:** Receipts rejected by the bank because the accounts on which they were drawn had nonsufficient funds.
- **Sweep In.** Incoming funds transfer from an internal bank account. This bank transaction type identifies the originating bank account.
- **Sweep Out.** Outgoing funds transfer from an internal bank account. This bank transaction type identifies the receiving bank account.

Code: The code that the bank uses to identify a transaction.

Number: The transaction number.

Amounts Tabbed Region

Transaction Date: The date the transaction cleared the bank. The default is the

statement date.

Value Date (formerly Effective Date)**:** The date when cash activity (payments or receipts) is recognized in a bank account. This date is important for interest calculations on a bank account. The statement line Value Date can be provided by the bank or entered manually. It is used to populate the Actual Value Date in Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables.

Amount: The amount of the transaction, in the bank account currency. This amount must be within tolerance for autoreconciliation to occur (even if the netted value of the Amount and Charges column equals the subledger transaction amount).

Amount Reconciled: The amount of the transaction that was reconciled.

Charges: The amount of any bank charges associated with the transaction. This field is not required. Cash Management derives the amount reconciled by adding the Charges and Amount columns.

Original Amount: The statement line amount, in its original currency. This amount is used in foreign exchange transactions when the currency of the transaction is different from the currency of the bank account.

Exchange Tabbed Region

Currency: The currency of the transaction.

Date: The date associated with the exchange rate that was used.

Type: The exchange rate type (as defined in Oracle General Ledger) used for this transaction.

Rate: The exchange rate specified by the bank for this transaction.

Original Amount: The statement line amount, in its original currency. This amount is used in foreign exchange transactions when the currency of the transaction is different from the currency of the bank account.

Reference Region

Agent: The name of the customer or supplier associated with the transaction.

Agent Bank Account: The bank account of the customer or supplier associated with this transaction.

Invoice: The invoice number associated with the transaction.

Description Tabbed Region

Status: The status of the transaction, reconciled or unreconciled.

Description: The customer-related text provided by the bank.

Related Topics

Bank Statements, page 1-4

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Creating Reconciled Bank Statement Lines, page 5-24

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Updating Bank Statements

You can update any bank statement, whether imported or entered manually in Cash Management.

Prerequisites

- Import or enter a bank statement.
- Make sure the bank statement is not marked as Complete. See: Marking a Bank Statement as Complete, page 5-59.

To update a bank statement:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Enter the query criteria for the statement you want to update, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.
3. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.

   Note: You can modify the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window to customize your query capabilities on statements you have entered. Refer to the *Oracle Applications User's Guide* for more information on modifying and saving folders.

4. Select the statement you want to update, and choose Review.
5. Update bank statement header and line information as necessary. You can change any bank statement information. You can also add information, such as transaction lines.
6. Save your work.

Related Topics

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Changing the Reconciliation Status, page 5-38

Marking a Bank Statement as Complete, page 5-59

5

Reconciliation Setup

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically
- Reconciling Bank Statements Manually
- Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions
- Creating Miscellaneous Transactions
- Recording Exceptions
- Entering Reversals
- Reconciling Corrections and Adjustments to Bank Errors
- Manually Clearing and Unclearing
- Marking a Bank Statement as Complete
- Transferring Bank Reconciliation Transactions to Your General Ledger
- How Using Cash Management Affects Your Closing Process
- Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically

You can use the AutoReconciliation program to automatically reconcile any bank statement in Oracle Cash Management. There are three versions of the program:

- **AutoReconciliation**: Use this program to reconcile any bank statement that has already been entered in Cash Management.

- **Bank Statement Import**: Use this program to import an electronic bank statement after loading the bank statement file into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables.. See: Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11.

- **Bank Statement Import and AutoReconciliation:** Use this program to import and

reconcile a bank statement in the same run.

You can run these programs from the Submit Request window, the Reconcile Bank Statements window, or the Bank Statement Interface window. You can also import and automatically reconcile a bank statement from the Bank Statement Loader program, by using the option of Load, Import and AutoReconciliation. See: Loading the Bank Statement Open Interface Tables, page 4-1

After you run the program, you can review the AutoReconciliation Execution Report to identify any reconciliation errors that need to be corrected. This report is produced automatically, or you can run it whenever needed. You can also review reconciliation errors online.

After you automatically reconcile a bank statement and correct any reconciliation errors, you can run the Bank Statement Detail Report or use the View Bank Statements window to review reconciled and unreconciled statement lines. If lines remained unreconciled, you can:

- Update the bank statement and rerun the AutoReconciliation program.
- Reconcile the statement lines manually.

Once you have reviewed your reconciliation results, you can transfer the accounting entries to your general ledger from Oracle Payables, Oracle Receivables, and Oracle Cash Management. If you use Oracle General Ledger, you can reconcile you General Ledger cash account balance to your bank account balance by running the GL Reconciliation Report.

To reconcile a bank statement automatically:

1. Define your Reconciliation options. See: Reconciliation Setup and System Parameters, page 2-17.

   Note: If you do not use Oracle Receivables AutoLockbox, and your bank statement includes direct deposits or bank transfers, you must create the related receipts manually in Receivables before you can reconcile them automatically in Cash Management. For more information on Automatic Lockbox, see your *Oracle Receivables User's Guide.*

2. Navigate to the Submit Request window.

   Note: Alternatively, you may submit the request directly from the Reconcile Bank Statements or Bank Statement Interface windows by selecting AutoReconciliation from the Oracle Applications Tools menu.

3. Select the AutoReconciliation program.

4. Enter the Bank Branch for the statements that you want to reconcile. This field is required.

5. Enter the Bank Account Number for the statement that you want to reconcile. If you do not enter a bank account number, you reconcile statements for the entire bank branch.

6. In the following fields, enter a statement number or select one from the list of values:

   - **Statement Number From:** the beginning statement number in the range of statements to be reconciled.

   - **Statement Number To:** the ending statement number in the range.

7. Enter dates in the following fields:

   - **Statement Date From:** the opening day of the bank statement period.

   - **Statement Date To:** the closing day of the bank statement period.

   - **GL Date:** (Required). The default date for all General Ledger journal entries generated by AutoReconciliation. The date must be in an open or future-enterable Payables or Receivables period.

8. Select an Organization or leave blank to reconcile transactions from all organizations.

9. Select a Receivable Activity and Payment Method to create Miscellaneous Receipts for differences that AutoReconciliation encounters when matching remittance batches or NSF transactions within tolerances.

10. Specify how to handle any NSF or rejected receipts that are in your bank statement. Choose:

    - **No Action:** to resubmit the check or request for transfer later

    - **Reverse:** to reopen the invoice

    - **Debit Memo Reverse**: to create a debit memo that replaces the item closed by the original receipt.

11. Submit your request.

12. When the concurrent request is finished, review the AutoReconciliation Execution Report for reconciliation errors. Also review the Bank Statement Detail Report,

which shows reconciled and unreconciled statement lines.

13. If any statement lines remained unreconciled, or you need to correct a reconciled line, use the Reconcile Bank Statement Lines window to manually reconcile those lines.

14. Transfer the accounting transactions you created during reconciliation for Payables and Receivables to your General Ledger.

15. Review the GL Reconciliation Report.

To submit the programs from the Reconcile Bank Statements window or the Bank Statement Interface window:

1. Select AutoReconciliation from the Oracle Applications Tools menu. The Submit Automatic Reconciliation window appears.

   - Euro fixed exchange rates default regardless of Foreign Currency Bank system parameters setup.

   - Cash Management does not select exchange rates for foreign bank statements that contain partial or complete exchange rates.

     When you submit from the Reconcile Bank Statements window, then the Bank Account Number, Statement Number From, Statement Number To, Statement Date From, and Statement Date To fields appear on the Submit Automatic Reconciliation window. Also, the only available option from this window is to Reconcile Only. When you submit from the Bank Statement Interface window the only available options are to Import or Import and Reconcile.

2. Select your Options. You may choose to Import, Reconcile Only, or Import and Reconcile.

3. Optionally, change the default entries for Bank Account Number, Statement Number From, Statement Number To, Statement Date From, and Statement Date To fields.

4. Select the GL Date, Organization (optional), Receivable Activity, Payment Method, and NSF Handling.

5. Submit your request.

6. When the concurrent request is finished, review the AutoReconciliation Execution Report for reconciliation errors. Also review the Bank Statement Detail Report, which shows reconciled and unreconciled statement lines.

7. If any statement lines remained unreconciled, or you need to correct a reconciled

line, use the Bank Statement Lines window to manually reconcile those lines.

Submit Automatic Reconciliation Window Reference

Options: When you access this window from the Reconcile Bank Statements window, the only available option is Reconcile Only. If you access this window from the Bank Statement Interface window, the only available options are: Import, and Import and Reconcile.

GL Date: The date that the transaction is posted to General Ledger. The default is the date that you run reconciliation.

Organization: The organization from which you would like to select transactions for reconciliation. You may leave this blank to reconcile transactions from all organizations to which you have access.

Receivable Activity: The Receivables activity type for any miscellaneous transactions that you created. It accounts for differences encountered when matching remittance batches or NSF transactions within tolerances.

Payment Method: The payment method for any miscellaneous transactions that you created. It accounts for differences encountered when matching remittance batches or NSF transactions within tolerances.

NSF Handling: Indicates how to handle any NSF or rejected receipts that are on your bank statement:

- **No Action:** Resubmit the check or request for transfer later.
- **Reverse:** Open the invoice.
- **Debit Memo Reverse**: Create a debit memo that replaces the item closed by the original receipt.

Related Topics

Submitting a Request, page 11-18

Reviewing Reconciliation Errors, page 5-15

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

About Bank Statement Validation, page 4-15

Multi-Currency Handling, page 1-9

Multi-Currency Matching, page 5-10

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Cash Management Reports, page 11-17

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management, page 2-1

Defining System Parameters, page 2-17

Matching Bank Statement Lines with Transactions, page 1-6

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Reconciling Sweep Transactions

You can load, import, and reconcile bank statements containing bank-initiated sweep lines.

Prior to running the AutoReconciliation program, you can automatically create and settle transactions in Oracle Treasury or Oracle Cash Management corresponding to the sweep statement lines by running the Sweep Transactions Generation program. This program searches for treasury or cash management bank account transfer transactions that match the details in the sweep statement lines and the corresponding cash pool. If a match is not found, the program creates and settles a transaction in Oracle Treasury or Oracle Cash Management. For more information, see: Cash Management Programs, page 11-41.

You can then run the AutoReconciliation program to reconcile the bank-initiated Sweep statement lines.

To reconcile sweep transactions automatically:

1. Set up cash pools. For more information, see Creating Cash Pools in Cash Leveling.

2. Enter bank transaction codes corresponding to the sweep transactions. For more information, see: Bank Transaction Codes, page 2-24.

3. Create a bank statement mapping for sweep transactions by defining the BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT field to match the free text field on your bank statement lines.

   #### Example

   Example. In the BAI2 bank file example below, a bank account sweep in transaction is identified by the text ZBA TRANSFER FROM: and a bank account sweep out transaction is identified by the text ZBA TRANSFER TO:.

   You can create a bank statement mapping in the Lines tab of the Bank Statement Mappings window, defining the BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT field to match the free text field (Rec ID: 16, Position: -1). In this example, the format will be ZBA TRANSFER FROM: (~), ZBA TRANSFER TO: (~). The (~) designates the characters to pick up following the ZBA TRANSFER FROM: or ZBA TRANSFER TO: and store in the BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT field.

This bank account information is then used by the Sweep Transaction Generation program to search for transactions or to create new transactions in Oracle Treasury or Oracle Cash Management.

Sample BAI2 Bank File with Sweep Transactions

01,121000248,0060981,991105,0727,0727,80,1,2/

02,0060981,121000248,1,991104,0000,USD,/

03,4510001011,,,015,5000000,,,045,5000000,,,040,5000000,, 400,35789779,3,/

88,100,35789779,1,,072,0,,,050,5000000,,/

16,275,45592306,0,,,ZBA TRANSFER FROM: 4522020841

16,575,547940,,,ZBA TRANSFER TO: 4091214650

16,575,9432205,,,ZBA TRANSFER TO: 4091214668 49,163159116,8/

98,23032892911,21,161/

99,23032892911,1,163/

4. Run the Bank Statement Loader program to populate the interface tables with the bank statement file. For more information, see: Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11.

5. Run the Bank Statement Import program to transfer information from the interface tables to the bank statement tables. For more information, see: Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11.

6. Run the Sweep Transactions Generation concurrent program.

7. Run the AutoReconciliation program to reconcile the bank statement. For more information, see: Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1.

8. You can manually reconcile a sweep bank statement line if the corresponding transaction is available in Oracle Treasury or Oracle Cash Management. For more information, see: Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21.

9. You can run the Unreconcile Bank Statement program to automatically unreconcile bank statement lines, including sweep in and sweep out transactions. The unreconciliation process will not delete any transactions that were generated by the Sweep Transactions Generation concurrent program.

To submit the Sweep Transactions Generation concurrent program:

1. Select Sweep Transactions Generation program from the Submit Request window.

2. Enter the following parameters:

- Bank Branch Name (required)
- Bank Account Number
- Statement Number From
- Statement Number To
- Statement Date From
- Statement Date To

3. Submit your request.
4. The concurrent program generates the Sweep Transactions Generation Execution Report, page 11-29, which lists the exceptions found during Sweep Transactions Generation program.

Reconciliation Tolerances

You can define reconciliation tolerances for the AutoReconciliation program. The program reconciles Payables payments, Receivables receipts, and Cash Management cashflows if they are within tolerances and automatically posts any amount differences. General Ledger journal entries are automatically reconciled in Cash Management only if the journal line amount and the bank statement line amount are the same. For Treasury settlements and external transactions in the Reconciliation Open Interface, tolerances are verified, but amount differences are not automatically accounted. As a security feature, tolerances are not allowed on payments and voided payments that are generated by Oracle Payroll.

You enter reconciliation tolerances as percentages and/or amounts. For example, assume you've defined the following tolerances:

- Amount = 70
- Percent = 10%

Now assume the program encounters a statement line with an amount of $1,000. It first computes the tolerance percentage amount (10% of $1,000 = $100). The program then selects the smaller of the computed amount or the defined tolerance amount-in this case, the program selects $70. The program then attempts to match the statement line against a transaction in the range $930 to $1,070 ($1,000, plus or minus $70).

Posting Amount Differences Within Tolerances

If the difference between a Payables payment or Cash Management cashflow amount and the statement line amount is within defined tolerances, the AutoReconciliation program posts the difference to either the Bank Charges account or the Bank Errors

account, depending on how you defined the Cash Management Tolerance Differences parameters.

If the difference between a receipt amount and the statement line amount is within defined tolerances, the program posts the difference to the Receivables Bank Charges account.

For matching remittance batches using reconciliation tolerances, you can choose to create a miscellaneous transaction for the difference between the remittance batch amount and the bank statement line. To select this option, you make an entry in the Receivables Activity parameter found on the Bank Account's Receivables Access Options. .

The following table contains posting differences for payments and receipts:

Document	Matched against:	If within Tolerances:
Payment Batch	1. Reference 2. Payment Batch Name	Difference posted to Bank Charges or Bank Errors account
Payment	1. Payment Number 2. Invoice Number and Agent Bank Account 3. Invoice Number and Agent Name	Difference posted to Bank Charges or Bank Errors account.
Remittance Batch	1. Remittance Batch Deposit Number 2. Remittance Batch Name	Miscellaneous transaction created for amount of difference.
Receipt	1. Receipt Number 2. Invoice Number and Agent Bank Account 3. Invoice Number	Difference posted to Bank Charges account.

Related Topics

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management, page 2-1

Matching Bank Statement Lines with Transactions, page 1-6

System Parameters, page 2-17

Multi-Currency Matching

The AutoReconciliation program handles statement line matching to transactions differently, depending on the bank account currency.

- The transaction amount is the amount recorded in the system.
- The tolerance amounts are always in the bank account currency. .
- The minimum of the percent and amount tolerance is used as the actual tolerance.

Bank Account Currency is Ledger (International Scenario)

Cash Management compares the transaction ledger amount to the bank statement line amount. They must be equal or within the tolerance range.

The following table shows how Cash Management validates tolerances in the international scenario. The bank account currency is US dollars.

Receipt in Oracle System	In Bank Statement
Receipt in Oracle System	**In Bank Statement**
Ledger currency = USD	Statement line amount = USD 145
Transaction amount = CAD 200	
Transaction exchange rate = 0.75	
Transaction in ledger currency amount = USD 150	
Tolerance = USD 10	
Is this a match?	
Tolerance amount = USD 10	
Statement line amount = USD 145	
Yes, since |(145-150)| < 10	

Bank Account Currency is Foreign (Foreign Scenario)

For foreign currency bank accounts:

- You can reconcile transactions only if they are in the same currency as the bank account.

- You can create a miscellaneous receipt only if the related transaction is in the same currency as the bank account.

- You must include exchange rates on the bank statement lines if you want to use automatic reconciliation but do not set up the Foreign Currency Bank bank account parameters. The exchange rate information is required for accounting.

If you complete the Foreign Currency Bank system parameters setup, Cash Management automatically selects exchange rates for foreign currency bank statement lines during automatic reconciliation. However, Cash Management does not select exchange rates for bank statement lines that have partial or complete exchange rate information.

The AutoReconciliation program does not update bank statement lines with the exchange rate it selects. To view the exchange rate information used to automatically reconcile a bank statement line, select the statement line in the Bank Statement Lines window and choose the Reconciled button. If matching fails, you need to manually reconcile the bank statement line using the Reconcile Bank Statements window.

Multi-Currency Clearing

Clearing takes place after matching, so any difference between the statement line amount and the original transaction amount is already verified to be within the specified tolerance limit.

Cash Management determines clearing amounts for the charges, errors, and foreign gain/loss accounts as necessary to clear the transaction.

Bank Account Currency is Ledger (International Scenario)

Cash Management checks the Foreign Tolerance Differences parameters (in the Bank Account Controls region of the Bank Account) to determine what to do with the difference between the cleared amount and the transaction amount. The options for Payables and Receivables transactions are as follows:

- **Gain/Loss**

  The unaccounted difference is due to changes in foreign currency gain or loss. Lines are cleared using the calculated bank statement line exchange rate. The *calculated rate* is the bank statement line amount (less any bank charges) divided by the transaction amount.

- **Charges/Errors**

  The unaccounted difference is due to charges or errors.

  - **Receivables**

    Differences are always bank charges.

- **Payables**

  Cash Management checks the Tolerance Differences parameter (in the Bank Account Controls region of the Bank Account) to determine whether the difference is due to charges or errors.

- **No Action**

  The unaccounted difference indicates an error. The statement line must be reconciled manually.

The options for Cash Management Cashflows are as follows:

- Charges

  The unaccounted difference is due to bank charges.

- Errors

  The unaccounted difference is due to bank errors.

- FX Charges

  The unaccounted difference is due to foreign exchange charges.

Bank Account Currency is Foreign (Foreign Scenario)

How differences are handled in this case depends on the transaction source:

- **Receivables**

  Differences are always bank charges.

- **Payables**

  Cash Management checks the Tolerance Differences parameter (in the Bank Account Controls region of the Bank Account) to determine whether the difference is due to charges or errors.

- **Cash Management**Cash Management checks the Tolerance Differences parameter (in the Bank Account controls region of the Bank Account)to determine whether the difference is due to charges or errors..

Example of Multi-Currency Clearing for International Scenario

These tables show how Cash Management clears discrepancies. In these examples the ledger currency is US dollars. The AP Tolerance Differences are Errors and the Tolerance Percent is 50.

The following table contains the bank account transaction information in Oracle Receivables and Oracle Payables:

Date	Source	Ref	Description	Expenditure	Deposit
22-Jan	A/R	bid2002	Halifax Printworks CAD 10,000 (Rate = 0.5)		5,000.00
25-Jan	A/P	bid1015	Sutcliff International, Ltd. GBP 10,000 (Rate = 1.5)	15,000.00	

The following table contains the bank statement received from the Bank and sorted by the User:

Date	Type	Ref	Description	Expenditure	Deposit
26-Jan	Receipt	bid2002	Halifax Printworks CAD 10,000 (Rate = 0.4) Charge USD 40		3,960.00
28-Jan	Payment	bid1015	Sutcliff International, Ltd. GBP 10,000 (Rate = 1.6) Charge USD 40	16,040.00	

After Reconciliation

The following table displays how Cash Management resolves the transaction and bank statement line differences for the above example (International Scenario):

System Parameter : Foreign Difference Handling	Ref	Amount Reconciled	Charges	Errors	Curr	Rate
Gain/Loss	bid1015	16,040.00	40.00	0.00	GBP	1.6
Charges/Errors	bid1015	16,040.00	40.00	1,000.00	GBP	1.5
No Action (unreconciled)						
Gain/Loss	bid2002	3,960.00	40.00		CAD	0.6
Charges/Errors	bid2002	3,960.00	1,040.00		CAD	0.5
No Action (unreconciled)						

About Value Dates

The *value date* of a payment or receipt is the date when the cash activity is realized in a bank account. Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables maintain an Anticipated Value Date and an Actual Value Date. The Anticipated Value Date can be entered when the subledger transaction is created. The Actual Value Date is populated from the bank statement line value date during the reconciliation or clearing processes. The bank statement line value date is provided by the bank or entered manually.

The following example illustrates the difference between the transaction date and the value date on a bank statement line: A receipt is deposited into your account on December 1. The receipt clears (funds become available) on December 3. The transaction date is December 1 and the value date is December 3.

The relationship between certain bank statement and subledger dates is as follows:

- The Transaction Date in the Bank Statement Lines window updates the Cleared Date in Payables and the Transaction Date in Receivables (History).
- The Value Date in the Bank Statement Lines window updates the Actual Value Date in Payables and Receivables.

Note: For release 11.5 and subsequent releases, Value Date replaces Effective Date on the Bank Statement Line window.

Reviewing Reconciliation Errors

After you run the AutoReconciliation program, you can review any reconciliation errors online from the Bank Statement or Bank Statement Line window. You can review all reconciliation errors for a statement, or just those errors that occurred for a specific statement line.

Note: The Bank Statement window shows errors for both statements and individual lines. To review import validation errors, use the Bank Statement Interface window

.

Prerequisite

- Run the AutoReconciliation program to reconcile a bank statement.

To review reconciliation and validation errors:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Enter your query criteria, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.
3. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.
4. Select the statement whose errors you want to review, and choose Review.
5. If you want to review statement line errors, choose Lines.
6. Choose Errors. You see the Reconciliation Errors window, showing a list of all reconciliation errors for all statement lines, or the selected statement line if you are reviewing statement line errors. See the following chart for further explanation of any error.

You can correct any reconciliation errors in the bank statement and rerun AutoReconciliation, or reconcile the statement lines manually.

Bank Reconciliation Errors

The following table contains bank reconciliation error codes and explanations of those error codes.

Error Code	Explanation
AP period not open or future	The GL date is not in an open or future period in Oracle Payables.
AR period not open or future	The GL date is not in an open or future period in Oracle Receivables.
Cannot find transactions to lock	
Charge amount exceeds tolerance	The charge amount cannot be greater than the tolerance amount.
Currencies don't match	The statement line currency is not the same as the Foreign currency bank account. Reconciliation is not allowed.
Duplicate BACS payment batches	Duplicate BACS payment batches
Duplicate journal entries	Oracle General Ledger has more than one matching journal entry line.
Duplicate NACHA payment batches	Duplicate NACHA payment batches
Duplicate Open Interface transactions	More than one Open Interface transaction number matches the bank statement transaction number.
Duplicate payment batches	Oracle Payables has more than one matching payment batch.
Duplicate payments	There is more than one matching payment in Oracle Payables. Please reconcile manually.
Duplicate payroll payments	There is more than one matching payroll payment in Oracle Payroll.
Duplicate receipts	Oracle Receivables has more than one matching receipt.
Duplicate remittance batches	Oracle Receivables has more than one matching remittance batch in.

Error Code	Explanation
Duplicate statement lines	There is more than one matching statement line.
EFT payment amount does not match	The payment amount does not match the amount on the line.
Exchange rate date missing	The statement line does not have an exchange rate date.
Exchange rate type missing	The statement line does not have an exchange rate type.
Future payment not yet negotiable	This future dated payment's status is "Issued". You can reconcile future dated payments only if the payment status is "Negotiable". The payment status can be updated to "Negotiable" in Payables after the maturity date.
Future value date	You cannot reconcile a statement line that has a future value date.
Inconsistent currencies	The statement line and the transaction currency are different.
Inconsistent exchange rates	The statement line exchange rate and the GL daily rate for the exchange type and exchange rate date do not match.
Inconsistent transaction currencies within batch	All transactions within a batch must be in same currency.
Line amount ledger currency not within the tolerance range	The statement line amount in the ledger currency is not within the tolerance range.
Miscellaneous receipt currency doesn't match bank currency	Miscellaneous receipts must have the same currency as the foreign bank account currency.

Error Code	Explanation
Missing exchange rate information	This message appears for one of the following reasons: 1) The exchange type is User, and you have not provided both the exchange rate and the exchange rate date; 2) The bank currency differs from your ledger currency and you are creating a miscellaneous receipt; 3) You are creating a foreign currency miscellaneous receipt.
Missing matching criteria	The statement line needs at least one of the following criteria to match, and all are missing: 1) transaction number; 2) invoice number and agent name; 3) invoice number and agent bank account.
No document sequence defined	Document sequence is not set up for the receipt/payment method.
No matching BACS payment batches	No matching BACS payment batches
No matching journal entries	Oracle General Ledger has no journal entry line that matches the bank statement transaction number.
No matching NACHA payment batches	No matching NACHA payment batches
No matching Open Interface transactions	The Open Interface has no transaction number that matches the bank statement transaction number.
No matching payment	Oracle Payables has no payment number that matches the bank transaction number.
No matching payment batch	Oracle Payables has no payment batch number that matches the bank statement transaction number.
No matching payment for the invoice number and the agent bank account	Oracle Payables has no matching payment for the invoice number and the agent bank account.
No matching payment for the invoice number and the agent name	Oracle Payables has no matching payment for the invoice number and the agent name.

Error Code	Explanation
No matching payroll payments	Oracle payroll has no payroll payment number that matches the bank statement transaction number and amount.
No matching receipt	Oracle Receivables has no receipt number that matches the bank transaction number.
No matching receipt for the invoice number and the agent bank account	Oracle Receivables has no receipts that match the invoice number and the agent bank account number.
No matching receipt for the invoice number and the agent name	Oracles Receivables has no receipts that match the invoice number and the agent name.
No matching remittance batch	Oracle Receivables has no remittance batch number that matches the bank statement transaction number.
No matching statement line	A matching statement line cannot be found.
No partial reconciliation for EFT payments.	You must unreconcile all Payroll transactions that are reconciled to the statement line.
No receivables activity or payment method for tolerance receipt	Autoreconciliation could not create a miscellaneous receipt for the tolerance amount for this NSF line because at least one of the following parameters were not entered at program submission: receivables activity, payment method.
Note: AP reconciliation accounting not enabled	You can reconcile this payment, and Payables will update the payment status to Reconciled but Unaccounted. However, note that the Oracle Payables option "Account for Payment When Payment Clears" is not enabled. Therefore Payables accounts for the payments and gain/loss only at payment issue time, and does not account for bank charges, bank errors, or gain/loss at payment clearing time.
Payment method for the bank account is invalid	The payment method for the bank account is invalid.

Error Code	Explanation
Receipt already reconciled	The receipt has already been reconciled to statement line.
Receipt is not reversed	The receipt history shows that this receipt has not been reversed. The statement line has a transaction code identifying it as NSF.
Receipt not remitted	The receipt history shows that this receipt has not been remitted to the bank.
Receipt reversed	The receipt history shows that this receipt has been reversed. The statement line has a transaction code identifying it as a receipt.
Reconciliation Open Interface not enabled	Please enable "Use Reconciliation Open Interface" in the Bank Account Controls region of the Bank Account.
Statement line amount is not within the tolerance range	The statement line amount is not within the tolerance range.
Stop initiated	You have initiated a stop on the payment in Oracle Payables. You can match to a stop initiated payment only if the transaction code is "Stopped". However, this transaction line code is "Payment".
Stopped statement line	The payment has not been voided or stop initiated. However, the statement line is "Stopped". The statement line can be matched to a payment only if the payment has been voided or stop initiated.
The statement line is currently in use. Please try again later.	The statement line is currently in use. Please try again later.
The Cleared Date for this payment is earlier than the Transaction Date.	This is a warning to let you know the Cleared Date for this payment is earlier than the Transaction Date.
The transaction is currently in use. Please try again later.	The transaction is currently in use. Please try again later.

Error Code	Explanation
Undefined exchange rate	No exchange rate is defined in General Ledger for this combination of exchange date and exchange type.
Voided	The payment is voided in Oracle Payables. You can match to a voided payment only if the transaction code is "Stopped". However, this transaction line code is "Payment".
Voided (Payroll)	The payroll payment is voided in Oracle Payroll. You can match a statement line to this payment only if the transactions code is "Stopped". However, the transaction code is "Payment".

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually

In Cash Management you can reconcile a bank statement manually as well as automatically. You can use the manual method to reconcile any bank statement, whether imported or entered manually. In addition, you can create new bank statement lines as you reconcile transactions, as well as update the reconciliation information for a previously manually-or automatically-reconciled statement.

When you use manual reconciliation, you reconcile each bank statement line with available transactions. You can search for Payroll payments, Receivables receipts, Payables payments, Cash Management Cashflows, miscellaneous transactions, GL journal entries, open interface transactions, and statement lines that meet specific criteria, and reconcile the statement line against them. If the bank statement belongs to a bank account shared by Oracle Treasury and Oracle Cash Management, you can search for Treasury settlements using the Reconciliation Open Interface. You can search for transactions based on customer or supplier, batch name, or remittance number, as well as ranges for transaction numbers, transaction date, transaction amount, and maturity date. You can search for journal entries based on Period Name, Journal Entry Name, Document Number, or Line Number.

As you reconcile a statement manually, you may need to create transactions to account for differences between the sum of the reconciled transaction and the line amount. For example, you can create a miscellaneous transaction to account for bank charges or interest. You can also create Payables payments and Receivables receipts from Cash Management. To account for amount differences for Treasury settlements, you need to create exposure transactions in Oracle Treasury.

Recalculating Amount Differences

When manually reconciling, you can automatically default the amount difference between the statement line amount and the transaction amount to the Charges and Errors field based on how the Tolerance Differences parameters are set.

For Payables payments or payment batches, and Cash Management Cashflows:

- When the Tolerance Differences parameter is set to Errors, the statement line charges amount defaults to the Charges field. The remaining amount difference between the statement line amount and the transaction amount defaults to the Errors field.

- When the Tolerance Differences parameter is set to Charges or is not defined, the amount difference between the statement line amount and the transaction amount defaults to the Charges field.

For Receivables receipts or remittance batches:

- The amount differences between the statement line amount and the transaction amount defaults to the Charges field.

To manually reconcile a previously-entered bank statement:

1. Import or manually enter the statement information.

   Note: If you don't use Oracle Receivables Automatic Lockbox, and your bank statement includes direct deposits or bank transfers, you must create the related receipts manually in Receivables before you can reconcile them in Cash Management. For more information on Automatic Lockbox, see your *Oracle Receivables User's Guide.*

2. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.

3. Enter the query criteria for the statement you want to reconcile, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.

4. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.

   Note: You can open custom folders that display statement information in a custom format if you or your organization has defined any. Refer to the *Oracle Applications User's Guide* for more information on modifying and saving folders.

5. Select the statement you want to reconcile, and choose Review. Cash Management displays the Bank Statement window, with the header information for the account you queried, including Bank Name, Bank Branch, statement Date, bank Currency, Document Number, and Statement Number. You can update any of the header information except for the bank information and the Currency. If you use automatic document sequence numbers, you cannot change the Document Number either.

   The GL date defaults to the bank statement date. You can update it, or override it on the individual payment or receipt transaction.

6. Choose Lines to see the Bank Statement Lines window.

7. Select the statement line that you want to reconcile.

8. Choose Available to search for detail or batch transactions that are available for reconciliation.

9. Enter your search criteria in the Find Transactions window.

10. Select the available detail and batch transactions that apply to the current bank statement line.

11. (Optional) Choose the Recalculate button.

12. Reconcile the available detail or batch transactions.

13. Reconcile other statement lines.

14. (Optional) Create miscellaneous transactions for bank statement transactions with no matching Payables, Receivables, or General Ledger activity.

    Note: Miscellaneous payments are actually handled as *negative* receipts by Cash Management. Therefore, to create miscellaneous payments you must have Receivables installed and set up.

15. (Optional) Create payments or receipts for bank statement transactions with no matching Payables or Receivables activity.

16. Reverse any NSF or rejected bank transactions.

17. Optionally, when you have reconciled all the bank statement lines, mark your bank statement as complete.

18. Save your work.

19. You can review the results of reconciliation in the following reports:

- Bank Statement Detail Report
- Bank Statement Summary Report
- Bank Statement Document Number Report

20. Transfer the accounting transactions you created during reconciliation for Payables, Receivables, and Cash Management to your General Ledger.
21. Review the GL Reconciliation Report.

Related Topics

Creating Reconciled Bank Statement Lines, page 5-24

Finding Available Detail and Batch Transactions for Reconciliation, page 5-26

Reconciling Available Transactions and Batches, page 5-29

Changing the Reconciliation Status, page 5-38

Using Attachments, page 5-40

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions, page 5-40

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Marking a Bank Statement as Complete, page 5-59

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Overview of Setting Up, page 2-1

About Value Dates, page 5-14

Customizing the Presentation of Data in a Folder, *Oracle Applications User Guide*

Creating Reconciled Bank Statement Lines

Cash Management lets you create new bank statement lines when reconciling available transactions. This is useful if you want to reconcile without entering statement line information first.

> **Note:** For imported statements, this feature is only available if the Allow Adding Lines to Imported Bank Statements option has been set in the System Parameters window.

Prerequisites

- Define your banks.
- Set up Receivables activities and payment methods for miscellaneous transactions.

To create a new bank statement line from reconciled transactions:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Enter the query criteria for the statement you want to reconcile, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.
3. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.

   Note: You can open custom folders that display statement information in a custom format if you or your organization has defined any. Refer to the *Oracle Applications User's Guide* for more information on modifying and saving folders.

4. Select the statement you want to reconcile, and choose Review. Optionally, choose New to enter a new bank statement.
5. If you are entering a new bank statement, enter the bank statement header information. If you select an existing bank statement, Cash Management displays the corresponding bank information.
6. Choose Available to search for detail or batch transactions that are available for reconciliation.
7. Enter your search criteria in the Find Transactions window, or leave the criteria blank to search for all available transactions.
8. Choose Find.
9. Select the detail or batch transactions that apply to the bank statement line you want to create.
10. Choose reconcile. Cash Management creates a new bank statement line with an Amount and Type that match the reconciled transaction(s) for that line.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Finding Available Detail and Batch Transactions for Reconciliation, page 5-26

Reconciling Available Transactions and Batches, page 5-29

Using Attachments, page 5-40

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions, page 5-40

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management, page 2-1

Customizing the Presentation of Data in a Folder, *Oracle Applications User Guide*.

Finding Available Detail and Batch Transactions for Reconciliation

Use the Find Transactions window to locate detail or batch transactions that are available for reconciliation. If you have General Ledger installed, you can also search for journal entries.

For foreign currency bank accounts, only transactions in the bank account currency are available for reconciliation.

> **Note:** From the Find Transactions window, you can use the Clear button to erase the current search criteria, or Cancel to exit the window.

To find available detail transactions:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Select a bank statement, then choose Review. Optionally, choose New and enter a new bank statement header.
3. Choose Available from the Bank Statement window, or from the Bank Statement Lines window. The Find Transactions window appears.
4. Choose Detail from the Detail/Batch/Open region, then select one or more types to find detail transactions that match your criteria. You may select to view Payroll or Payroll EFT, AR Receipt, AP Payment, Cash Management Cashflow, Miscellaneous transactions, Journal, and Statement Line. The Statement Line option is applicable only to statement lines with Miscellaneous Payment or Miscellaneous Receipt transaction types that can match against statement lines.
5. (Optional) Refine or focus your search further by selecting one of the following

tabbed regions:

- **Transaction:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter ranges of transaction Numbers, Dates, Amounts, Maturity Dates, Batch Names, Remittance Numbers, and Cashflow Numbers to find only transactions within those ranges. You can also choose to find only those transactions with a specific Organization, Status, or Currency Code.

- **Agent:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter a Customer Name and Customer Number to use when finding Receivables transactions. You can also enter a Supplier Name and Supplier Number to use when finding Payables transactions. You can also select a Counterparty Bank Account when searching for Cash Management cashflows associated with Bank Account Transfers.

- **Receipt:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter a Reference Type, Reference Number, Receipt Class, Payment Method, or Deposit Dates to use when finding miscellaneous transactions. Certain fields only appear if you select Receipts or Miscellaneous in step 4 above.

- **Journal:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter a Period Name, Journal Entry Name, Document Number, or Line Number to use when finding journal entries.

- **Ordering:** The sort criteria you select determines how the resulting transactions are displayed in the Available Transactions window:

  - Use the Primary poplist to select your primary sort category and the Secondary poplist to select your secondary sort category. The sort categories are transaction Type, transaction (Trx) Number, Date, and Amount.

  - Use the primary Order poplist to select a sort order for the primary sort category. Use the secondary Order poplist to select a sort order for the secondary category. The options are Ascending or Descending.

6. Choose Find to find all transactions that match your search criteria, or choose Find and Mark to find and automatically mark any matching transactions for reconciliation.

To find available batches:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.

2. Select a bank statement, then choose Review. Optionally, choose New and enter a new bank statement header.

3. Choose Available from the Bank Statement window, or from the Bank Statement Lines window. The Find Transactions window appears.

4. Choose Batch from the Detail/Batch/Open region, then select Remittance and/or Payment to find batches that match your criteria.

5. (Optional) Refine or focus your search further by selecting the Transaction tabbed region. You can enter transaction Dates, Amounts, Batch Names, Remittance Numbers, or the Currency Code to search for. You can also enter sort criteria, which determines how the resulting transactions are displayed in the Available Transactions window.

   Note: You cannot enter search criteria for the Agent, Receipt, or Journal tabbed regions.

6. Choose Find to find all batches that match your search criteria, or choose Find and Mark to find and automatically mark, for reconciliation, the transactions within any matching batches.

To find available Treasury settlements or external transactions in the Reconciliation Open Interface:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.

2. Select a bank statement, then choose Review. Optionally, choose New and enter a new bank statement header.

3. Choose Available from the Bank Statement window, or from the Bank Statement Lines window. The Find Transactions window appears.

4. Choose Open Interface from the Detail/Batch/Open region, then select Receipts and/or Payments to find open interface transactions that match your criteria.

   The Open Interface option appears only if you have checked the Use Reconciliation Open Interface check box in the System Parameters window.

5. (Optional) Refine or focus your search further by selecting the Transaction tabbed region. You can enter transaction Dates, Amounts, Batch Names, Remittance Numbers, or the Currency Code to search for. You can also enter sort criteria, which determines how the resulting transactions are displayed in the Available Transactions window.

   Note: You cannot enter search criteria for the Miscellaneous or Journal tabbed regions.

6. Choose Find to find all open interface transactions that match your search criteria,

or choose Find and Mark to find and automatically mark matching transactions for reconciliation.

Related Topics

Reconciling Available Transactions and Batches, page 5-29

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Creating Reconciled Bank Statement Lines, page 5-24

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Changing the Reconciliation Status, page 5-38

Using Attachments, page 5-40

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions, page 5-40

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Reconciling Corrections and Adjustments to Bank Errors, page 5-51

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Reconciling Available Transactions and Batches

After you locate detail or batch transactions that are available for reconciliation, you must mark the specific items you want to reconcile.

To reconcile an available detail transaction:

1. Find the available detail transaction you want to reconcile.

   See: Finding Available Detail and Batch Transactions for Reconciliation, page 5-26.

2. Review the transaction information shown on the Available Transactions window:
   - In the Transaction tabbed region, review the transactions and journal entries shown. You can review:
     - Original Currency and Amount
     - Bank Account Currency Amount and Amount Cleared
     - GL Date
   - In the Exchange tabbed region, review the exchange rate information about the

transactions.

- In the Reference tabbed region, review additional descriptive information about the transactions and journal entries.

3. Mark the transaction or journal entry you want to reconcile by checking the box to the left of the item's information.

4. (Optional) Choose the Recalculate button.

   Note: If you navigated to the Find Transactions window from the Bank Statement window, and did not select a statement line, you will not see the Recalculate button.

5. Choose Reconcile to reconcile the selected items against the current statement line.

   Note: If you navigated to the Find Transactions window from the Bank Statement window, and did not select a statement line, choosing Reconcile creates a new, reconciled bank statement line.

   Cash Management shows the Amount Reconciled and the Amount Remaining to be reconciled for the current bank statement line.

6. Choose Previous or Next to move to another statement line without returning to the Bank Statement Lines window. Cash Management updates the Amount Reconciled and the Amount Remaining as you change statement lines.

7. When you are finished, navigate to the Bank Statement Lines window to review the bank statement lines with the reconciliation information.

   After reconciliation, the amount reconciled for the bank statement line should be the same as the entered amount, and the line Amount Reconciled Status will be Reconciled.

Available Transactions Window Reference

Account: Bank account associated with the batch.

Type: The type of transaction, such as a payment or receipt.

Number: The transaction number.

Status: The status of the transaction.

Maturity Date: The maturity or due date of the transaction.

Transaction Region

Original - Curr: The transaction currency.

Original Curr - Amount: The amount of the transaction, in the entered currency.

Account Currency - Amount: The amount of the transaction, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Amount Cleared: The amount cleared, in the bank account currency.

Cleared Date: The date the transaction cleared the bank.

GL Date: The date that the transaction posts to the General Ledger. The default is the statement date.

Date: The transaction date.

Exchange Region

Date: The date associated with the exchange rate that was used.

Type: The exchange rate type (as defined in Oracle General Ledger) used for this transaction. If the exchange rate type is User, then you can update the exchange rate.

Rate: The exchange rate specified by the bank for this transaction. If the bank account currency and the transaction currency are related fixed-rate currencies (such as euro and a National Currency Unit), then the system will display EMU Fixed, and you cannot update this value. You can enter a value here only if the rate type is User.

Account Currency - Charges: The amount of any bank charges associated with the transaction, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Errors: The amount of any bank errors associated with the transaction, in the bank account currency.

Reference Region

Batch Name: The name of the batch for the transaction.

Agent Name: The customer or supplier associated with the transaction.

Cashflow/Deposit Number: The cashflow, bank deposit or remittance number.

Type: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference type (receipt, payment, remittance batch, or payment batch).

Number: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference number.

Buttons

Recalculate. Recalculates the Charges, Errors and Amount Cleared fields. Cash Management defaults the amount differences between the statement line amount and the transaction amount based on the system parameters setup.

Reconcile. Reconciles the transactions.

Reconciling an Available Remittance or Payment Batch

1. Find the available remittance or payment batch you want to reconcile.

   See Finding Available Detail and Batch Transactions for Reconciliation, page 5-26.

   > **Note:** For remittance batches, excludes reversed receipts from the batch total, and these receipts are not reconciled when you reconcile the batch.

2. Review the batch information.

   - In the Transaction tabbed region, review information about the Batch Name, Original Currency and Total, bank Account Currency batch Total and Amount Cleared, and GL Date.
   - In the Exchange tabbed region, review exchange rate information about the batch.

3. Mark the batch you want to reconcile by checking the box to the left of the batch information.

4. (Optional) Choose the Recalculate button.

   > **Note:** If you navigated to the Find Transactions window from the Bank Statement window, and did not select a statement line, you will not see the Recalculate button.

5. Choose Reconcile to reconcile the selected batches against the current statement line.

   > **Note:** If you navigated to the Find Transactions window from the Bank Statement window, and did not select a statement line, choosing Reconcile creates a new, reconciled bank statement line.

   Cash Management shows the Amount Reconciled and the Amount Remaining to be reconciled for the current bank statement line.

6. Choose Previous or Next to move to another statement line without returning to the Bank Statement Lines window. Cash Management updates the Amount Reconciled and the Amount Remaining as you change statement lines.

7. When you are finished, navigate to the Bank Statement Lines window to review the

bank statement lines with the reconciliation information.

After reconciliation, the amount reconciled for the bank statement line should be the same as the entered amount, and the line Amount Reconciled Status is updated to Reconciled.

> **Note:** Cash Management handles differences in batch amounts as follows:
>
> **Receivables:** A miscellaneous receipt is created for the batch amount difference and booked using the account defined in the Receivable Activity field of the System Parameters window. You will be prompted to enter a payment method.
>
> **Payables:** The batch amount difference is included with the first payment in a batch.

Available Batches Window Reference

Account: The bank account associated with the payment/remittance batch.

Batch Name: The name of the payment/remittance batch.

Transaction Region

Original - Curr: The transaction currency.

Original - Total: The total amount, in the original currency of the transaction.

Account Currency - Total: The total amount, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Amount Cleared: The amount cleared, in the currency of the bank account.

Cleared Date: The date that the transaction cleared the bank. The default is the statement line date / statement date.

GL Date: The date that the transaction posts to the General Ledger. The default is the statement date.

Exchange Region

Date: The date associated with the exchange rate that was used.

Type: The exchange rate type (as defined in Oracle General Ledger) used for this transaction.

Rate: The exchange rate specified by the bank for this transaction. If the bank account currency and the transaction currency are related fixed-rate currencies (such as euro and a National Currency Unit), then the system will display EMU Fixed.

Account Currency - Charges: The amount of any bank charges associated with the

transaction, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Errors: The amount of any bank errors associated with the transaction, in the bank account currency.

Type: The type of transactions in the batch, either payments or remittances.

Date: The date of the payment/remittance batch.

Cashflow/Deposit Number: The cashflow number, bank deposit, or remittance number.

Buttons

Recalculate. Recalculates the Charges, Errors and Amount Cleared fields. Cash Management defaults the amount differences between the statement line amount and the transaction amount based on the system parameters setup.

Reconcile. Reconciles the transactions.

Related Topics

Finding Available Detail and Batch Transactions for Reconciliation, page 5-26

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Creating Reconciled Bank Statement Lines, page 5-24

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Changing the Reconciliation Status, page 5-38

Using Attachments, page 5-40

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions, page 5-40

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions

After reconciling transactions, you can review your work in the Reconciled Transactions window. For each transaction you see information about the transaction Type (receipt, payment or miscellaneous), Number, Status, Date, and Maturity Date.

To review reconciled transactions for a bank statement:

1. Navigate to the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window.

Note: You can open custom folders that display statement information in a custom format if you or your organization has defined any. Refer to the *Oracle Applications User's Guide* for more information on modifying and saving folders.

2. Select a bank statement, then choose Review.
3. Choose Reconciled.

   You see the Reconciled Transactions window with the reconciled transactions for the first statement line.
4. In the Transaction tabbed region, review the Original Currency and Amount, the bank Account Currency Amount and Amount cleared, and the GL Date.
5. In the Exchange tabbed region, review the Exchange Date, Type, and Rate. The window also shows the bank Account Currency Charges and Errors amounts.
6. In the Reference tabbed region, review additional descriptive information, including the remittance or payment Batch Name, Agent Name (customer or supplier), Deposit Number (receipts), Cashflow Number, and, for miscellaneous transactions, the Reference Type (receipt, payment, remittance batch, payment batch) and Number.
7. Choose Previous or Next to review reconciled transactions for other statement lines.

To review reconciled transactions for a specific line:

1. Navigate to the Reconcile Bank Statements window.
2. Select a bank statement, then choose Review.
3. Choose Lines.
4. Select the statement line that you want to review.
5. Choose Reconciled.

   You see the Reconciled Transactions window with the reconciled transactions for the selected statement line.
6. Choose Previous or Next to review reconciled transactions for other statement lines.

Reconciliation Status, Receipt Status, and Payment Status

Cash Management maintains a Reconciled or Unreconciled status for each bank statement line. This status is displayed in Cash Management windows and reports,

such as the Bank Statement Lines window. This status does not indicate the status of the system transaction.

In addition to the status of the bank statement line, Cash Management also displays the status of the system transaction. The status of a transaction is assigned by the source application.

- **Receipt Status:** When you use the Reconcile Receipts feature to clear receipts in Receivables, the system displays the current status of your receipts. The statuses include Approved, Cleared, Confirmed, Remitted, Reversed, or Risk Eliminated. If you clear a receipt in Cash Management, the status is updated to Cleared.

- **Payables Payment Status:** Payables payments can have any of the following statuses: Cleared, Cleared but Unaccounted, Issued, Negotiable, Overflow, Reconciled, Set Up, Spoiled, Stop Initiated, Unconfirmed Set Up, Voided, Reconciled but Unaccounted.

  For complete descriptions of these statuses see documentation about Status field in Payables on the Status field, *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

  You can reconcile a Payables payment only if its status is either Negotiable or Voided. When you reconcile a payment in Cash Management, the status is changed to Reconciled.

  You can reconcile future dated payments only if they are mature. To reconcile a future dated payment, you must update the payment status in Payables from Issued to Negotiable. You can change the payment status in one of the following ways:

  - Manually update the status in the Status field of the Payments window

  - In Payables, you can submit the Update Matured Future Payment Status program.

- **Payroll Payment Status:** Payroll payments have the following three statuses:

  - **Complete.** Payments are ready for reconciliation.

  - **Void.** Checks that have been voided will be available for reconciliation only if the Show Voided Payments option in the System parameters window is checked.

  - **Reconciled.** Reconciled with Cash Management.

- **Treasury Settlement Status:** Treasury settlements have the following two statuses:

  - **Available.** Settlements are available for reconciliation.

  - **Reconciled.** Settlements are reconciled.

- **External Transaction Status:** External transactions in the Reconciliation Open Interface have the following two statuses:
  - **Open Interface Float Status.** Transactions are available for reconciliation.
  - **Open Interface Clear Status.** Transactions are cleared or reconciled.

Reconciled Transactions Window Reference

Account: The account number.

Type: The type of transaction.

Number: The transaction number.

Status: The status of the transaction.

Maturity Date: The maturity date for future-dated transactions.

Transaction Region

Original - Curr: The transaction currency.

Original - Amount: The transaction amount, in the transaction currency.

Account Currency - Amount: The transaction amount, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Amount Cleared: The amount cleared, in the bank account currency.

Cleared Date: The date the transaction cleared the bank.

GL Date: The date that the transaction is posted to the General Ledger. The default is the bank statement date.

Date: The transaction date.

Exchange Region

Exchange Date: The date associated with the exchange rate that was used.

Type: The exchange rate type (as defined in Oracle General Ledger) that was used for the transaction.

Rate: The exchange rate specified by the bank for this transaction.

Account Currency - Charges: The amount of any bank charges associated with the transaction.

Account Currency - Errors: The amount of any bank errors associated with the transaction.

Reference Region

Batch Name: The remittance or payment batch name.

Agent Name: The customer or supplier name.

Cashflow/Deposit Number: The cashflow, bank deposit, or remittance number.

Reference Type: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference type (receipt, payment, remittance batch, or payment batch).

Number: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference number.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Changing the Reconciliation Status, page 5-38

Using Attachments, page 5-40

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions, page 5-40

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Reviewing Reconciliation Errors, page 5-15

Customizing the Presentation of Data in a Folder, *Oracle Applications User Guide*

Changing the Reconciliation Status

You can unreconcile any transaction that you have previously reconciled. You can unreconcile a specific transaction that applies to a bank statement line, or you can unreconcile all transactions that you have reconciled against a statement.

When you unreconcile transactions, Cash Management changes the Reconciled Status of the statement line. The unreconciled transactions are once again available for reconciliation.

Prerequisites

- Import or manually enter a bank statement.
- Reconcile transactions or batches against a statement line.

To unreconcile transactions for statement lines:

1. Navigate to the Reconcile Bank Statements window.
2. Select a bank statement, then choose Review.
3. Choose Lines.

4. Select the statement line whose transactions you want to unreconcile, then choose Reconciled.

5. Select the transactions you want to unreconcile, by checking the box to the left of each transaction.

6. Choose Unreconcile.

   When unreconciling EFT payment statement lines, all transactions reconciled to a statement line need to be unreconciled. You cannot partially unreconcile a Payroll EFT payment statement line.

To unreconcile transactions for a statement:

1. Navigate to the Reconcile Bank Statements window.

2. Select a bank statement, then choose Review.

3. Choose Reconcile.

4. Select the transactions you want to unreconcile.

5. Choose Unreconcile.

   When unreconciling EFT payment statement lines, all transactions reconciled to a statement line need to be unreconciled. You cannot partially unreconcile a Payroll EFT payment statement line.

To unreconcile all transactions for a bank statement:

1. Navigate to the Reconcile Bank Statements window.

2. Select Unreconcile All from the Tools menu.

3. Choose the Submit button in the window that opens.

To submit the Unreconcile Bank Statement program:

Submit the Unreconcile Bank Statement Program in the Submit Request window. The program has three parameters: Bank Account, Statement Number, and Line Number. To view the results of the Unreconcile Bank Statement program, navigate to the Bank Statement Lines window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Related Topics

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Using Attachments

You can attach text, images, or OLE objects, such as spreadsheets and word-processing documents, to your bank statements and statement lines. This feature is useful for illustrating or clarifying information about your bank statements and the related reconciliations.

You can attach, delete, modify, or review attachments for:

Bank Statements: from the Bank Statement window. From the View Bank Statements window you can only review bank statement attachments.

Bank Statement Lines: from the Bank Statement Lines window. From the View Statement Lines window, you can only review bank statement line attachments.

> **Note:** There is a system profile option, Indicate Attachments, which must be set to Yes to view the attachments indicator.

Related Topics

Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions

You can create Payables payments or Receivables receipts while you are manually reconciling a bank statement in Cash Management. This feature makes it easy to add new payments or receipts that were not entered previously in Payables or Receivables, but which have cleared the bank. You can then reconcile the transactions immediately after you create them.

Prerequisites

- Install Payables if you want to create payments.
- Install Receivables if you want to create receipts.
- Your login responsibility must be authorized to create payments in Payables or receipts in Receivables.

To create payments or receipts:

1. Navigate to the Bank Statement Lines window.
2. Select the statement line for which you want to create a payment or receipt.
3. Choose Create.
4. From the list of values, choose:
   - **AP Payments:** to create payments. The Payables Payments window will appear. Create a payment as described in Oracle Payables Online Help.
   - **AR Receipts:** to create receipts. The Receivables Receipts window will appear. Complete the window as described in Oracle Receivables Online Help.
5. Reconcile the transaction you have just created.

Related Topics

Payments (*Oracle Payables User's Guide*)

Receipts (*Oracle Receivables User's Guide*)

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Finding Available Transactions, Batches, and Journal Entries for Reconciliation, page 5-26

Reconciling Available Transactions, Batches, and Journal Entries, page 5-29

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions

Create miscellaneous transactions to reflect banking activity, such as bank charges.

When you create a miscellaneous payment, it is actually recorded as a negative receipt. When you reconcile that miscellaneous payment, which is actually a negative receipt, it is reconciled to a payment bank statement line with a positive amount.

Prerequisites

- Define receivables activities and payment methods for miscellaneous transactions.

  Note: When you define a receivables activity with the type Miscellaneous Cash, you must also assign either an account or a

Distribution Set to use for the miscellaneous transaction accounting entries.

- In the Receivables Activities window in Receivables, enter values for Asset tax Code and Liability Tax Code, if required.
- Set the Tax: Allow Override Of Tax Code profile option. This, with your accounting method, controls whether you can override the default for the Tax Code field.
- Perform any additional setup required by Receivables to handle miscellaneous receipts, including defining receipt sources and distribution sets.
- Set up Sequential Numbering.

To create a miscellaneous transaction for a previously-entered line:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Enter the query criteria, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.
3. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.

   Note: You can modify the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window to customize your query capabilities on statements you have entered. Refer to the *Oracle Applications User's Guide* for more information on modifying and saving folders.

4. Select the statement you want to update, then choose Review.
5. Choose Lines.
6. Select the bank statement line to which the miscellaneous transaction applies.
7. Choose Create.
8. Choose Miscellaneous for the transaction you want to create. The Miscellaneous window appears.
9. Choose the Receivables Activity that describes the transaction you are creating.
10. Enter the Receipt Number and Date, Currency, and payment Method. The default value for Activity is specified in the System Parameters window. The default value for the date is the bank statement date. The default currency is the bank account

statement currency. The default for the receipt number is the bank statement line transaction number. If the bank statement line transaction number isn't available, then the default for the receipt number will be a combination of the statement number and the line number.

11. Enter the transaction Amount. The amount defaults to the statement line's remaining amount.

    Note: For a receipt, enter a positive amount. For a payment enter a negative amount. If your receipt includes tax, enter the pretax amount.

12. Enter the GL Date. The default date is the bank statement date.

13. The value for Tax Code defaults from the Receivable Activities window. Your accounting method and the AR:Allow Tax Code Override profile option control whether or not you can update the defaulted tax code.

14. Choose Reference from the poplist and enter the reference Type and Deposit Date. You can also enter a reference Number.

15. Choose Comment from the tabbed region to enter optional Paid From information and Comment text.

    The miscellaneous transaction's Actual Value Date is populated from the bank statement line Value Date. You can override this date.

    Note: If you post this transaction to General Ledger, the Comment is the default journal line description.

16. If the statement line is a foreign currency transaction, choose Exchange from the poplist to enter the Exchange Date, Type, and Rate. The Bank Currency Amount is calculated from the rate and amount.

17. Choose Create to create the miscellaneous transaction. Cash Management will ask you if you want the receipt to be automatically reconciled against the current statement line. Select Yes to do so.

    Note: If you select No, you will need to reconcile the new transaction to a bank statement line later. See Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21.

Miscellaneous Receipts Window Reference

Account: The name of the account associated with the receipt.

Bank Name: The name of the bank.

Currency: The currency of the bank account.

Statement Date: The date on the bank statement.

Activity: The Oracle Receivables activity that describes the transaction that you are creating. The default is specified on the System Parameters window.

Receipt Number: The receipt number.

Transaction Tabbed Region

Date: The date of the receipt. The default is the bank statement line date.

Curr: The currency of the receipt. The default is the bank account currency.

Method: The payment method.

Amount: The amount of the receipt. The default is the remaining amount of the statement line. For a receipt, enter a positive amount. For a payment, enter a negative amount. If your receipt includes tax, enter the pretax amount.

GL Date: The date that the receipt posts to General Ledger. The default is the bank statement date.

Tax Code: The value for Tax Code defaults from the Receivable Activities window. Your accounting method and the AR:Allow Tax Code Override profile option control whether or not you can update the defaulted tax code.

Exchange Tabbed Region

Date: The date associated with the exchange rate that was used.

Type: The exchange rate type (as defined in Oracle general Ledger) that was used for the transaction.

Rate: The exchange rate specified by the bank for this transaction.

Bank Currency Amount: The amount of the receipt in the currency of the bank account.

Reference Tabbed Region

Type: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference type (receipt, payment, remittance batch, or payment batch).

Number: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference number.

Document Number: The document number used for sequential numbering.

Deposit Date: User-defined date.

Comment Tabbed Region

Value Date: The value date.

Paid From: The source of miscellaneous transactions.

Comments: Enter any comments for your reference.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Finding Available Transactions and Batches for Reconciliation, page 5-26

Reconciling Available Transactions and Batches, page 5-29

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions, page 5-40

Customizing the Presentation of Data in a Folder, *Oracle Applications User Guide*

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management, page 2-1

System Parameters, page 2-17

Creating Cashflows from Bank Files

You may also create cash management cashflows to reflect banking activity and transactions not previously entered in your system.

For more information, see Bank Statement Cashflow Creation.

Recording Exceptions

A bank statement can contain information about NSF (non-sufficient funds) and rejected receipts, stopped payments, direct deposits or debits, and transactions created outside Oracle Applications. The bank statement may also contain errors that cannot be reconciled against any transactions.

To record NSF or rejected receipts when using AutoReconciliation:

When you run the AutoReconciliation program, you define the NSF Handling method:

- **No Action:** NSF or rejected receipts will be handled manually (see below).
- **Reverse:** AutoReconciliation unmatches and unclears the receipt, and reopens the invoice.

- **Debit Memo Reverse**: Creates a debit memo that replaces the item closed by the original receipt.

To handle NSF or rejected receipts manually:

Note: Receipts that have been reversed in Receivables with a Reversal Category of Reverse Payment are not considered transactions available for reconciliation. Receipts reversed with this Reversal Category are due to User Error and should not be available for reconciliation.

1. Reverse the receipt manually. See: Entering Reversals, page 5-48.
2. Reconcile the reversed receipt to the NSF or rejected receipt statement line.

   Note: If you have two statement lines for an NSF or rejected receipt (one for the original receipt and one for the reversal), you can reconcile the original receipt and the reversal in the order that you prefer.

To record a stopped payment:

1. Void the payment in Payables or Oracle Payroll.
2. Reconcile the "stopped" payment statement line to the voided payment.

To record a direct debit from a supplier:

If the bank statement contains information about a direct debit that you have not entered:

1. Create a payment in Payables for the appropriate invoices.
2. Match the payment against the bank statement line.

To record a direct deposit or wire transfer:

If you enter your bank statements into Cash Management manually, enter the receipts for direct deposits and wire transfers in Receivables manually. After saving the receipt, you can then match it against the related Cash Management statement line.

If you import your bank statement information to Cash Management from an electronic bank file, you can use the same bank file with the Receivables AutoLockbox program to automatically create receipts for direct deposits and wire transfers. See your *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* for more information about using AutoLockbox.

To record a bank error:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Enter the query criteria, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.
3. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.
4. Select a statement and choose Review.
5. Choose Lines.
6. Select the bank error line.
7. Choose Mark.
8. Select Error to mark the line as a bank error.

   You do not need to reconcile lines marked as Error, and you can continue to reconcile payments or receipts for the remaining lines. To reconcile error lines to correcting statement lines, see Reconciling Corrections and Adjustments to Bank Errors, page 5-51.

To record transactions from external documents:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Enter the query criteria, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.
3. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.
4. Select a statement and choose Review.
5. Choose Lines.
6. Select the external document line.
7. Choose Mark.
8. Select External to mark the line as originating outside Oracle Applications. A line marked as External is considered reconciled. To reconcile lines with external sources, see Reconciliation Open Interface, page 2-44.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Creating Payments and Receipts Transactions, page 5-40

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Reconciling Corrections and Adjustments to Bank Errors, page 5-51

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Cash Management Reports, page 11-17

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management, page 2-1

Bank Statements, page 1-4

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Reconciliation Open Interface, page 2-44

Using AutoLockbox, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Entering Reversals

In Cash Management you can reverse receipt transactions to account for NSF and rejected receipts. There are two ways to reverse receipts. You can create a Standard reversal or you can create a debit memo reversal for the full amount of the receipt.

For detailed information on receipt reversals see: Reversing Receipts, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

To reverse a receipt:

1. Navigate to the Bank Statement window.
2. Choose Reversals. The Find Reversals window appears.
3. Select Receipt from the Transaction Type region.
4. Query a receipt or leave the window blank to query all receipts. The Find Reversals window contains many options for querying a receipt. You can enter values for receipt Number, Amount, Currency, and Date. You can also search for receipts based on the Payment Method, Status, Account Number, and Account Currency Amount. Finally, you can also enter Agent information to further narrow your search for a specific customer Name and Number.

Tip: Many of the query fields also have associated lists from which you can select a value. Choose the List of Values button from the Oracle Applications toolbar to see the list.

5. Choose Find. The Reversals window appears.

6. Review the transaction information shown in the window.
   - In the Transaction tabbed region, see information about the transaction Original Currency and Amount, the amount in the bank Account Currency, as well at the Amount Cleared in the bank account currency. The bank Account Currency Amount is the receipt or payment amount in the bank account currency (the accounted amount for ledger currency bank accounts, and the entered amount for foreign currency bank accounts).
   - In the Reference tabbed region, see additional descriptive information about the transactions.
   - In the Bank tabbed region, see the original bank statement information for the transaction you are reversing, including the Bank Account Number, Bank Currency, Bank Name, and Statement Number.

7. Mark the receipt to be reversed, by checking the box to the left of the receipt information.

8. In the Comment tabbed region, you can:
   - Select the Reversal Category
   - Select the Reason for reversal
   - Optionally, enter any Comments

9. Choose Reverse Receipt to generate the reversing transaction.

10. Reconcile the reversed receipt to the NSF or rejected receipt statement line.

To create a debit memo reversal:

1. Navigate to the Reversals window.

2. In the Debit Memo tabbed region, select the check box to the left of the receipt you want to reverse.

3. Select the Debit Memo check box.

4. Choose the transaction type from the list of values. Cash Management automatically enters the account number after you select the transaction type.

5. If you are using manual document numbering, enter a unique Document Number for this reversal. Otherwise, the system assigns a number when you choose the Reverse Receipt button.

6. Choose the Reverse Receipt button.

Reversals Window Reference

Type: The type of transaction.

Number. The transaction number.

Maturity Date: The maturity date for future-dated transactions.

Status: The status of the receipt.

Transaction Region

Original - Currency: The transaction currency.

Original - Amount: The transaction amount, in the transaction currency.

Account Currency - Amount: The transaction amount, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Amount Cleared: The amount cleared, in the bank account currency.

Transaction Date. The transaction date.

Value Date. The date when the cash activity is recognized in the bank account.

GL Date: The date that the receipt was posted to General Ledger. The default is the bank statement date.

Date: The transaction date.

Reference Region

Batch Name: The name of the batch associated with the transaction.

Agent Name: The name of the customer or supplier associated with the transaction.

Deposit Number: The bank deposit or remittance number.

Payment Method: The method of payment.

Comment Region

Category: The reversal category.

Reason: The reason for the reversal.

Comments: Comments.

Bank Region

Account Number: The number of the bank account that is associated with the transaction.

Currency: The currency of the bank account that is associated with the transaction.

Name: The bank branch name.

Statement Number: The statement number.

Debit Memo

Type: The type is always receipt: You cannot reverse miscellaneous receipts.

Number: Receipt number

Debit Memo Reversal: Select when you want to create a debit memo reversal.

Type: Debit transaction type for this reversal. You can only enter a debit memo transaction type whose Tax Calculation is set to No.

Account: Account associated with debit memo transaction type.

Document Number: Document number assigned when you choose Reverse, unless you are using manual numbering. If you are using manual numbering, then enter a unique number. Otherwise, the system assigns a number.

Related Topics

Manually Clearing and Unclearing Receipts and Payments, page 5-54

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Reconciling Corrections and Adjustments to Bank Errors

Banks sometimes make mistakes by depositing or withdrawing incorrect amounts to bank accounts. These bank errors show up on bank statements, along with the corrections and adjustments to those errors. The errors, corrections, and adjustments need to be reconciled correctly to give you an audit trail of reconciliation steps, and to effectively support the Oracle Payables' Positive Pay feature by allowing reconciliation of the error and correction statement lines.

Banks resolve errors using two methods: Reversal and Adjustment. Typically, the bank

enters error corrections and adjustments as miscellaneous transactions, and often, they use the same bank transaction codes you set up for miscellaneous receipts or payments to identify the statement lines that are generated for error corrections. These two cases are described in this section, using the following example:

A check was generated for $100.00, but the bank recorded this payment as $10.00 by mistake. On your bank statement, you will see an entry of $10.00 payment.

The following table contains an example of a bank error:

Trx Number	Line Number	Amount	Remarks
27	10	$10.00	Error (should be $100.00)

Reversal Method: The bank reverses the whole error transaction amount so that the error entry and the reversal entry net out to zero. Then, the bank makes another transaction entry for the correct transaction amount. In this example, a reversal entry of $10.00- is created to offset the original error entry, and a new correction entry is created of $100.00.

The following table contains an example of the reversal method:

Trx Number	Line Number	Amount	Remarks
27	10	$10.00	Error
27	20	$10.00-	Reversal Entry
27	30	$100.00	New Correction Entry

With the reversal method, the error and correction statement lines are match to one another. The correct transaction entry (line 30 above) is then matched to the actual transaction.

Adjustment Method: The bank simply creates a new transaction entry to make up for the difference between the original transaction amount and the error entry. In this example, the bank generates a new adjustment entry of $90.00, which is the difference between the original error amount of $10.00 and the correct amount of $100.00.

The following table contains an example of the adjustment method:

Trx Number	Line Number	Amount	Remarks
27	10	$10.00	Error
27	20	$90.00	Adjustment Entry

Regardless of which method the bank and you choose to use, and of whether you reconcile automatically or manually, Cash Management allows you to match these statement lines correctly and to provide the information on how the statement lines are reconciled to give you a good audit trail.

AutoReconciliation Matching

The AutoReconciliation program can match to a payment, receipt, miscellaneous payment, or miscellaneous receipt line. The program handles both reversal and adjustment methods in the following ways:

> **Note:** If you don't have the transaction number, then Cash Management will use the invoice and the agent bank account number to match.

- **Reversal Method:** Tries to match the reversal entry to a statement line that contains the same transaction number and opposite transaction type. For example, if the reversal entry is a miscellaneous receipt, then the program matches to a payment or miscellaneous payment. If the amounts net out to zero, then the program assumes there is a match and reconciles the statement lines.

- **Adjustment Method:** Tries to find both a statement line and a transaction to match to the adjustment entry. The statement line must contain the same transaction number as the adjustment line. However, the statement line can be a payment, receipt, miscellaneous payment, or miscellaneous receipt, as long as the amount netted out is within the tolerance of the original transaction.

If the error statement line is already reconciled to a transaction due to the amount difference between the transaction and statement line falling within the tolerance amount, you must first unreconcile the error statement line before the AutoReconciliation program will reconcile it with the correction statement line.

Manual Reconciliation Matching

If you are reconciling bank statements manually, the Reconcile Bank Statements window retrieves all available statement lines and transactions that match your selection criteria. Then you can decide how you want to reconcile the correction entry.

In the reversal method example above, you reconcile line 20 with line 10. In the

adjustment method example, you reconcile line 20 with the original transaction and line 10.

If you have already reconciled the error statement line to a transaction, you must first unreconcile the error statement line before attempting to reconcile it with the correction entry.

Sometimes, a bank uses one correction entry to correct multiple error statement lines. You can manually reconcile between multiple statement lines.

The following table contains an example of the reversal method:

Trx Number	Line Number	Transaction Type	Amount	Remarks
27	10	Payment	$100.00	Error
27	20	Misc. Receipt	$10.00	First Correction Entry (Error)
27	30	Misc. Receipt	$90.00	Second Correction Entry

In this example, line 30 uses the reversal method to correct errors made in lines 10 and 20. It may be that line 20 was supposed to correct line 10, but it turns out to be another error. In this case, you should go to either line 20 or line 30 and reconcile the other two statement lines to the miscellaneous receipt line selected.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Reconciliation Tolerances, page 5-8

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Overview of Setting Up, page 2-1

Bank Transaction Codes, page 2-24

Manually Clearing and Unclearing

You can choose to manually clear payments, receipts, miscellaneous transactions, open interface transactions, and cash management cashflows associated with Bank Account Transfers without first reconciling them. You can also undo the cleared status of a cleared payment, receipt, or open interface transaction.

Note: You cannot clear the status of a payment from Oracle Payroll, a journal entry in Oracle General Ledger, or a settlement from Oracle Treasury.

To manually clear detail transactions:

1. Navigate to the Find Transactions window.
2. Choose Detail from the Detail/Open Interface region.
3. Select one or more of the following types of detail transactions that are available for clearing:
   - AR Receipts
   - AP Payments
   - Cash Management Cashflow
   - Miscellaneous
4. Select a bank account.
5. (Optional) Enter any additional search criteria for finding available transactions.
6. Choose Find. The Clear Transactions window appears.
7. Review the available transactions.
8. (Optional) Choose the Default Dates button to select a date of your choice to be used as a default date for the Cleared Date, Value Date, and GL Date.
9. Mark each transaction that you want to clear by checking the box to the left of the transaction.
10. (Optional) Update the Amount Cleared, Cleared Date, Value Date, and GL Date. Enter any additional information, such as charges.
11. Choose the Clear Transaction button to clear the selected transactions.

To manually clear open interface transactions:

1. Navigate to the Find Transactions window.
2. Choose Open Interface from the Detail/Open Interface region.

3. Select one or more of the following types of open interface transactions that are available for clearing:
   - Receipts
   - Payments
4. Select a bank account.
5. (Optional) Enter any additional search criteria for finding available transactions.
6. Choose Find. The Clear Transactions window appears.
7. Review the available transactions.
8. (Optional) Choose the Default Dates button to select a date of your choice to be used as a default date for the Cleared Date, Value Date, and GL Date.
9. Mark each transaction that you want to clear by checking the box to the left of the transaction.
10. (Optional) Update the Amount Cleared, Cleared Date, Value Date, and GL Date. Enter any additional information, such as charges.
11. Choose the Clear Transaction button to clear the selected transactions.

Clear Transactions Window Reference

Account Name: The name of the bank account.

Account Number: The bank account number.

Currency Code: The currency of the bank account.

Bank Name: The name of the bank.

Branch Name: The name of the bank branch.

Total Count: The total count of transactions selected for clearing.

Total Amount Cleared: The total amount of the transactions selected for clearing.

Type: The type of the transaction, such as payment or receipt.

Number: The transaction number.

Status: The status of the transaction.

Maturity Date: The maturity date for future-dated transactions.

Transaction Region

Original - Currency: The transaction currency.

Original - Amount: The transaction amount, in the transaction currency.

Account Currency - Amount: The transaction amount, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Amount Cleared: The amount cleared, in the bank account currency.

Cleared Date: The date the transaction cleared the bank.

Value Date: The date when the cash activity date is recognized in the bank account. This date is important for interest calculations on the bank account. The statement line value date can be provided by the bank or entered manually. This date is used to populate the Actual Value Date in Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables.

GL Date: The date that the payment or receipt posts to the general ledger. If you do not choose the Default Dates button, the default is the system date, if the Payables/Receivables period is open. If the period is closed and in the future, the date defaults to the first date of the latest open period. If the period is closed and not in the future, it defaults to the last date of the latest open period.

Date: The date used to determine the currency exchange rate.

Exchange Region

Type: The exchange rate type (as defined in Oracle General Ledger) used for this transaction.

Rate: The exchange rate specified by the bank for this transaction.

Account Currency - Charges: The amount of any bank charges associated with the transaction.

Account Currency - Errors: The amount of any bank errors associated with the transaction.

Reference Region

Batch Name: The name of the batch.

Agent Name: The customer or supplier associated with the transaction.

Cashflow/Deposit Number: The cashflow, bank deposit, or remittance number.

Type: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference type (receipt, payment, remittance batch, or payment batch).

Number: For miscellaneous transactions only, the reference number.

Default Dates Window Reference

Cleared Date: The date that the transaction clears the bank. The default is the system date.

Value Date: The date when the cash activity is recognized in the bank account. The default is the system date.

GL Date: The date that the payment or receipt posts to the general ledger. The default is the system date, if the Payables/Receivables period is open. If the period is closed and in the future, the date defaults to the first date of the latest open period. If the period is closed and not in the future, it defaults to the last date of the latest open period.

Unclearing Payments and Receipts

To undo clearing on a payment, receipt, cashflow or open interface transaction:

1. Navigate to the Find Transactions window.
2. Select Detail or Open Interface from the Detail/Open Interface region.
3. Select AR Receipt, AP Payment, or Cash Management Cashflow depending on the transaction whose cleared status you want to undo.
4. (Optional) Enter any search criteria for receipt or payment Organization, Number, Amount, Currency, and Date. You can also search for receipts and payments based on the Payment Method, Account Number, Batch Name, Status, and Account Currency Amount. Additionally, for detail transactions, you can enter Agent Name or Number to further narrow your search for a specific customer or supplier, and for cash management cashflows you can enter the Agent Bank Account. .
5. Choose Find. The Unclear Transactions window appears, displaying a list of all transactions that match your search criteria.
6. Review the transaction information.
7. Mark each transaction you want to unclear by checking the box to the left of the transaction.
8. Choose the Unclear Transaction button to unclear the selected transactions.

Unclear Transactions Window Reference

Type: The transaction type.

Number: The transaction number.

Status: The status of the transaction.

Maturity Date: The maturity date for future-dated transactions.

Transaction Region

Original - Currency: The transaction currency.

Original - Amount: The transaction amount, in the transaction currency.

Account Currency - Amount: The transaction amount, in the bank account currency.

Account Currency - Amount Cleared: The amount cleared, in the bank account currency.

Cleared Date: The date the transaction cleared the bank.

Value Date: The date when the cash activity is recognized in the bank account.

GL Date: The date that the payment or receipt posts to the general ledger. The default is the system date, if the Payables/Receivables period is open. If the period is closed and in the future, the date defaults to the first date of the latest open period. If the period is closed and not in the future, it defaults to the last date of the latest open period.

Date: The transaction date.

Reference Tabbed Region

Batch Name: The name of the batch.

Agent Name: The name of the customer or supplier associated with the transaction.

Cashflow/Deposit Number: The cashflow, bank deposit, or remittance number.

Payment Method: The payment method.

Bank Tabbed Region

Account Number: The number of the bank account.

Curr: The currency of the bank account.

Name: The bank branch name.

Statement Number: The statement number.

Related Topics

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Marking a Bank Statement as Complete

You can *freeze* a bank statement in Cash Management by marking it as complete. Marking a bank statement as complete disables certain Cash Management features and prevents you from making any changes to the statement or statement lines until you specifically unmark the completed bank statement.

You can view a statement from the View Bank Statements window to see that the statement is complete.

> **Tip:** You might want to freeze a bank statement after completing the reconciliation process. However, you can mark or unmark the statement as complete at any time.

To mark a bank statement as complete:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window.
2. Enter the query criteria for the statement you want to mark as complete, or leave the criteria blank to query all existing statements.
3. Choose Find to see the Reconcile Bank Statements folder window.
4. Select the statement you want to complete, then choose Review.
5. In the Bank Statement window, check the Complete check box.

To unmark a completed bank statement:

1. Navigate to the Bank Statement window, as above.
2. Uncheck the Complete check box.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Viewing Bank Statements, page 11-2

Viewing Available Transactions, page 11-5

Transferring Bank Reconciliation Transactions to Your General Ledger

You need to transfer the accounting transactions you created during reconciliation for Payables and Receivables to your general ledger interface tables. You cannot transfer these transactions directly from Cash Management. Instead, transfer them from Payables and/or Receivables, depending on the transaction type. For example, use Receivables to transfer any miscellaneous receipts entries generated during your Cash Management reconciliation. Then, follow your normal posting procedure.

Note: When you reconcile bank statement lines to journal entries in General Ledger, no reconciliation accounting entries are created. Transferring to General Ledger is only required for entries created in Payables and Receivables.

Note: Cash Management does not provide reconciliation accounting information to Payroll.

Oracle General Ledger

If you use General Ledger, you need to submit the Journal Import program after you transfer your reconciliation accounting transactions from Payables or Receivables. This creates journal entries based on the reconciliation transactions. Once you run Journal Import, you need to post your journals in General Ledger.

Related Topics

Oracle Payables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-12

Oracle Receivables Reconciliation Accounting, page 1-18

Cash Management Reports, page 11-17

Setting Up Oracle Cash Management, page 2-1

Posting Journals Batches, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*

How Using Cash Management Affects Your Closing Process

If you use Cash Management with your other Oracle applications, you should consider changing your closing processes to ensure that:

- Any reconciliation transactions created by Cash Management are properly entered.
- Account balances are updated.
- Reports include accurate information.

Specifically, we recommend the steps below.

If you use Oracle General Ledger:

1. Reconcile all your bank statements.
2. Transfer all transactions from Payables and Receivables to your General Ledger interface tables.

3. Run Journal Import in General Ledger.

4. Post journals in General Ledger.

5. Run the GL Reconciliation Report from Cash Management for each bank account. This report compares the statement balance you specify to the General Ledger ending balances.

6. Review the report for errors.

7. If there are errors in the report, correct them in Cash Management, as needed. Repeat the above steps until there are no more errors.

If you do not use Oracle General Ledger:

1. Reconcile all your bank statements.

2. Transfer all transactions from Payables and Receivables to your general ledger interface tables.

3. Post journals in your general ledger.

4. Complete your closing process as you would normally.

Related Topics

GL Reconciliation Report, page 11-27

Posting, *Oracle Payables User Guide*

Unposted Invoice Sweep Program*Oracle Payables User Guide*

Running GL Interface, *Oracle Receivables User Guide*

Archiving and Purging Imported Bank Statements

After you import a bank statement into Oracle Cash Management, you can purge its information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. After you reconcile the bank statement, you can purge its information from the Bank Statement tables. To save a copy of your bank statement, you can archive the information before you purge it. You can also archive or purge intra-day bank statement information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables and the Intra-Day Bank Statement tables.

You can run the Archive/Purge Bank Statements program to archive and purge. When the program completes, it automatically prints the Archive/Purge Bank Statements Report to display the number of headers and lines that were archived or purged.

Purging

The purge process deletes all statement header and line information from the open interface tables or the bank statement tables, or both-nothing is retained. When you purge a bank statement, you must also purge any system transactions reconciled to the bank statement.

We recommend that you periodically archive and purge your bank statement interface and bank statement tables. If you do not periodically purge your bank statement interface and bank statement tables, the retained information will continue to occupy valuable disk space.

> **Warning:** If you use Cash Management to reconcile journal entries in General Ledger, you should run the Cash Management Purge program before you purge journals in General Ledger. See: Archiving and Purging, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Archiving

With archiving, you can save copies of your bank statement information.

- You cannot archive without also purging.
- When you archive, Cash Management copies all header and statement line information from either the open interface tables or the bank statement tables into special archive tables the system maintains.
- To save your archived information to a file you must use the ORACLE RDBMS Export utility. Contact your Database Administrator or System Administrator for further information.
- To restore information from a saved archive file, you must first use the ORACLE RDBMS Import utility to populate the special archive tables. Then, you must run a custom SQL*Loader script to transfer the information from the archive tables to the bank statement or open interface tables. Contact your Database Administrator or System Administrator for further information.

Automatic Archive and Purge

If you set the Archive and Purge options in the System Parameters window, you can automatically archive or purge bank statement information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables after the bank statements have been successfully imported into Oracle Cash Management. You can also automatically archive or purge imported intra-day bank statement information from the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. To archive or purge information from the Bank Statement tables or Intra-Day Bank

Statement tables, however, you must run the Archive/Purge Bank Statements program. See: System Parameters, page 2-17.

Prerequisites

- Load your bank statement file into the bank statement interface tables.
- Import the bank statement information into Oracle Cash Management.

To archive and/or purge imported bank statements:

1. Navigate to the Submit Request window.
2. Select the List of Values button to see a list of available programs and reports.
3. Select Archive/Purge Bank Statements program. The Parameters window appears.
4. Select the Archive/Purge Objects. You can choose Statement tables, Interface tables, or Both.
5. Select the Archive/Purge Option. You can choose Archive/Purge or Purge.
6. Select the Archive Option that you want the program to perform:
   - **Delete:** delete existing data in interface before saving new archive data
   - **Append:** append archive data to any existing archive data
7. Select the Statement Type that you want to archive or purge. You can choose Previous-Day, Intra-Day, or both.
8. Choose the Bank Branch Name whose statements tables will be archived and/or purged.
9. Optionally, choose a Bank Account Number. If you do not choose a bank account number, all statements for the bank branch name are processed.
10. Choose a Statement Date. All statements with this date or an earlier date will be archived and/or purged.
11. Choose OK to save your work. The Submit Request window appears again.
12. Complete the Print Options and Run Options regions of the window, then choose Submit to begin running the program.
13. Review the Archive/Purge Bank Statements Execution Report. If there were errors, investigate and correct them, then rerun the Archive/Purge Bank Statements program.

To archive and/or purge imported bank statements automatically:

1. Set the Archive and Purge options on the System Parameters window.
2. Import the bank statement information into Oracle Cash Management.

Related Topics

System Parameters, page 2-17

Importing Bank Statements, page 4-11

Reconciling Bank Statements Automatically, page 5-1

Overview of Setting Up, page 2-1

About Bank Statement Open Interface, page 4-1

Archiving and Purging, *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*

ORACLE RDBMS Utilities User's Guide

6

Cash Forecasting

This chapter tells you how to use Cash Forecasting. It explains how to create cash forecast templates, generate cash forecasts from those templates, and make changes to those templates and forecasts.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Cash Forecasting
- Creating Cash Forecast Templates
- Generating Cash Forecasts from Templates
- Modifying Cash Forecast Templates and Cash Forecasts
- Exporting Cash Forecasts to Your Spreadsheet Application

Cash Forecasting

Cash forecasting is a planning tool that helps you anticipate the flow of cash in and out of your business, allowing you to project your cash needs and evaluate your company's liquidity position.

Refer to the following sections in this chapter for details on how to accomplish various cash forecasting tasks:

- Creating Cash Forecast Templates, page 6-2
- Generating Cash Forecasts from Templates, page 6-20
- Viewing Cash Forecast Results, page 6-26
- Modifying Cash Forecast Templates and Cash Forecasts, page 6-39
- Exporting Cash Forecasts to your Spreadsheet Application, page 6-44

Related Topics

About Cash Forecasting, page 1-24

Creating Cash Forecast Templates

A template contains cash forecast specifications. You can specify the number and type of rows and columns to create custom forecast templates. Templates determine the presentation of sources (rows) and forecast periods (columns) for your cash forecasts. Templates also include the following types of general information:

- Name and description
- Forecast period types, either GL periods or days

Each row contains a source type, such as Supplier Invoices, and selection criteria, for example:

- Ledger
- Pay group
- Bank account

You can specify how to organize cash forecast information, including which sources supply forecast data (rows), and for which forecast periods (columns) you are generating data. For more information on source type specifications, refer to Forecast Template Rows Page Reference, page 6-8

Once a template definition is complete, you can submit a request to produce timely cash forecasts. This process gathers current source information from the selected Oracle Applications.

External Cashflow Open Interface and Distributed Database Integration

The External Cashflow Open Interface allows you to utilize external sources of cash inflow and outflow data for the Cash Forecasting feature, providing you an enterprise-wide cash forecasting solution on a distributed database environment.

You define your templates to include the Open Interface Inflow and Open Interface Outflow source types. You can then generate a cash forecast and Cash Management automatically retrieves information available from the external forecast sources you have defined.

To create a cash forecast template:

1. Navigate to the Forecast Templates Search and Results page.

2. Click the Create Template button.

3. In the Header Details page, enter a unique name for your template.

4. Select a forecast period type of Days or GL Periods in the Forecast By field.

5. (Optional) Enter a description for your template.

6. Choose Include or Exclude in the Overdue Transactions field to determine whether to include or exclude open transactions that have a cash activity date before the forecast start date. Overdue transactions are collected into one forecast period, displayed as the Overdue column in the Cash Forecast Results page and the Cash Forecast Report.

7. If you chose to include overdue transactions, you must enter a value in the Cutoff Period field.The cutoff period determines how far back to include overdue transactions.

   Note: Transaction volume increases with an increase in the cutoff period. If you choose a cutoff period that is very long and you are including many historical transactions, then the forecasts may take longer to generate.

8. Choose a transaction calendar in the Business Calendar field. If you do not choose a calendar in this field, then cash activity dates used in forecasting can be non-business days.

9. (Optional) To generate a forecast for a project, enter a starting and ending project number. Cash Management generates a forecast for each project in the range.

10. Click the Next button to navigate to the Row Details page.

11. To enter Rows, select the source type for the rows you want to add and click Go.

12. In the Create Forecast Template Row page, you must enter the following:

    - Enter a Row Number to specify the sequence of the source types. Values must be unique integers between 1 and 999. The Row Number indicates the sequence of the rows (source types) in the forecast.

    - Enter relevant selection criteria for the source type chosen in the Forecast Template Rows Detail page. See: Forecast Template Rows Page Reference, page 6-8, for information on the applicable and required fields for each source type.

    - To continue adding rows, select the source type for the rows you want to add and click Go.

13. Once you have finished adding rows, click Apply. The Row Details page appears, and the rows you have added are displayed.

14. Click the Next button to navigate to the Column Details page.

15. If you are setting up forecast columns by days, you can choose to set up the forecast columns manually or automatically.

16. If you choose to set up your columns manually, enter a Column Number to specify the sequence of the columns (forecast periods). Values must be integers between 1 and 999. The Column Number indicates the sequence of the columns in the forecast.

    Note: You can define up to 80 columns in a forecast template.

17. Enter the From and To specifications as periods or days, depending on what you entered in the Forecast by Field in the Headers Details page. The values must be integers between 1 and 999. The From value must be less than or equal to the To value.

    Note: These numbers define the forecast periods by indicating the specific date or period ranges for each column. If a template is defined by GL periods, each column represents one or more GL periods. When submitting a forecast, you specify a start period for a template defined by GL periods, and you specify a start date for templates defined by Days. See: Submission Parameters, page 6-22

18. To create forecast columns automatically, select the Automatic option and click Go. This option is not available for Forecast by GL Periods.

19. Enter a value in the Column Sequence field to indicate the order in which this column should be displayed in the cash forecast. Select a value in the Summary Level field from the options of Daily or Weekly to indicate the length of each forecast period. Enter a value in the Duration field. This value must be a positive integer. Select a value in the Duration Type field from the options of Days and Weeks. The combination of the values entered in the Duration field, along with the option selected in the Duration Type field, determines the length of your forecast horizon. For example, a column sequence of 10, summary level of Daily, Duration of 5, and Duration Type of Days will create 5 daily buckets in your forecast.

Related Topics

Forecast Template Rows Page Reference, page 6-8

Generating Cash Forecasts from Templates, page 6-20

External Cashflow Open Interface, page 2-57

Defining Transaction Calendars (*Oracle General Ledger User Guide*)

Cash Forecasting Source Transaction Dates

When Cash Management collects the source data for a forecast, it includes source transactions whose cash activity date falls within the days or period ranges you defined. Cash Management searches for a valid date in the sequence indicated, using the first date it finds. Cash Management adds the lead time to dates, except for GL Budgets and GL Encumbrances.

The following table explains which date is used as the expected cash activity date.

Type	Expected Cash Activity Date or Time
Supplier Payments (Future)	1. Value Date (Actual then Anticipated), 2. Maturity Date, or 3. Payment Date
Expense Reports	1. Period Ending Date
Customer Receipts (Future)	1. Value Date (Actual then Anticipated), 2. Maturity Date, or 3. Latest Receipt Transaction Date
Supplier Invoices	Discount Deadline if Discount field is Maximum or Minimum; or Due Date if Discount field is None
Supplier Payments (Historical)	Cleared Date or Value Date (your choice), rolled forward by amount specified on cash forecast template
Customer Invoices	Due Date or Invoice Date plus Average Payment Days
Customer Receipts (Historical)	Cleared Date or Value Date (your choice), rolled forward by amount specified on cash forecast template
GL Budgets	Forecast period type must be GL Period; corresponding periods included
GL Encumbrances	Forecast period type must be GL Period; corresponding periods included

Type	Expected Cash Activity Date or Time
Payroll Expenses (Historical)	Payment Date, rolled forward by amount specified on cash forecast template
Project Billing Events	Event Completion Date
Project Inflow Budgets	Calculated based on Start Date and End Date of budget period
Project Outflow Budgets	Calculated based on Start Date and End Date of budget period
Project Transactions	Expenditure Item Date
Purchase Orders	Releases: 1. Shipment Promised Date or Shipment Promised Date plus Payment Terms 2. Shipment Need By Date or Shipment Need By Date plus Payment Terms 3. Release Due Date or Release Due Date plus Payment Terms 4. Release Created Date or Release Created Date plus Payment Terms Standard POs: 1. Shipment Promised Date or Shipment Promised Date plus Payment Terms 2. Shipment Need By Date or Shipment Need By Date plus Payment Terms 3. Shipment Created Date or Shipment Created Date plus Payment Terms
Purchase Requisitions	1. Requisition Line Need By Date, or 2. Requisition Line Created Date
Sales Opportunities	1. Line Decision Date, 2. Header Decision Date
Sales Orders	Ordered Date, Requested Date, Ordered Date plus Payment Terms, or Requested Date plus Payment Terms (1. line level, 2. header level)
Treasury Inflow	Settlement Date
Treasury Outflow	Settlement Date

Forecasting Overdue Transactions

You have the flexibility to include or exclude overdue transactions for all appropriate source transaction types in your cash forecasts. Including overdue transactions gives you an accurate representation of potential cash inflows and outflows. Overdue transactions are open transactions with a cash activity date before the forecast start date.

Overdue transactions are collected into one forecast period, displayed as the Overdue column in the Cash Forecast Results page and the Cash Forecast Report.

Overdue transactions apply to the source types described below. You can specify on each forecast template whether to include overdue transactions. If you choose to do so, you must also specify the Cutoff Period, which determines how far back in time to include overdue transactions.

The following table contains cash forecasting overdue transaction sources:

Type	Definition
Supplier Payments (Future)	Payments scheduled to have been cleared before the forecast start date or period, but that are still uncleared.
Expense Reports	Uninvoiced expense reports with a cash activity date before the forecast start date or period.
Customer Receipts (Future)	Receipts scheduled to have been cleared before the forecast start date or period, but that are still uncleared.
Supplier Invoices	Invoices that were scheduled to be paid before the forecast start date or period, but are still unpaid.
Customer Invoices	Invoices that were scheduled to have been paid before the forecast start date or period, but are still not paid.
Purchase Orders	Uninvoiced purchase orders with a cash activity date before the forecast start date or period.
Purchase Requisitions	Unordered requisitions with a cash activity date before the forecast start date or period.

Type	Definition
Sales Orders	Uninvoiced sales orders with a cash activity date before the forecast start date or period.
Open Interface	User-defined.
Sales Opportunities	Sales that have not yet been ordered with a cash activity date before the forecast start date or period.

Forecast Template Rows Page Reference

Forecast Template Rows Page - Inflow Source Type Characteristics

The following table contains the legend for the Cash Inflow Source Types table.

	Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics	
(blank) = Not applicable	API = Supplier Invoices	PAB = Project Billing Events
D = Display only	APP = Supplier Payments	PAI = Project Inflow Budgets
R = Required	APX = Expense Reports	PAO = Project Outflow Budgets
O = Optional	ARI = Customer Invoices	PAT = Project Transactions
H = Required if Method is Historical	ARR = Customer Receipts	PAY = Payroll Expenses
F = Required is Method is Future	ASF = Sales Opportunities	POP = Purchase Orders
N = Required if Use Average Payment Days is No	GLB = GL Budgets	POR = Purchase Requisitions
Y = Required if Use Average Payment Days is Yes	GLE = GL Encumbrances	XTRI = Treasury Inflow
	OEO = Sales Orders	XTRO = Treasury Outflow
	UDI = User-defined Inflow	OII = Open Interface Inflow

Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics		
	UDO = User-defined Outflow	OIO = Open Interface Outflow

The following table displays characteristics, such as required or optional, of the applicable fields for each source type you can enter in the Forecast Template Rows page.

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Row Number	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Source Type	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
Description	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Company								O		
Operating Unit	O	O	O		O	O				
Ledger	O	O	O	R	O	O		O		
Date Type		H			R					
Bank Account		O						O		
Method		R								
Roll Forward Type		H								

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Roll Forward Period		H								
Receipt Method		O								
Customer Profile Class	O				O					
Include Dispute?	R									
Budget Name				R						
GL Account				R						
Use Average Payment Days?	R									
Period	Y									
Lead Time	N	F	R		R	R	R			R
Use Payment Terms?					R					
Order Type					O					

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Sales Stage			O							
Channel			O							
Win Probability			O							
Status			O		O					
Transaction Type								O		
Include Indicative Exposure								R		
Budget Type							R			
Budget Version							R			
External Source Type										R
Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield										O

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Descriptive Flexfield	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

Forecast Template Rows Page - Outflow Source Type Characteristics

The following table contains the legend for the Cash Outflow Source Types table.

	Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics	
(blank) = Not applicable	API = Supplier Invoices	PAB = Project Billing Events
D = Display only	APP = Supplier Payments	PAI = Project Inflow Budgets
R = Required	APX = Expense Reports	PAO = Project Outflow Budgets
O = Optional	ARI = Customer Invoices	PAT = Project Transactions
H = Required if Method is Historical	ARR = Customer Receipts	PAY = Payroll Expenses
F = Required if Method is Future	ASF = Sales Opportunities	POP = Purchase Orders
N = Required if Use Average Payment Days is No	GLB = GL Budgets	POR = Purchase Requisitions
Y = Required if Use Average Payment Days is Yes	GLE = GL Encumbrances	XTRI = Treasury Inflow
	OEO = Sales Orders	XTRO = Treasury Outflow
	UDI = User-defined Inflow	OII = Open Interface Inflow
	UDO = User-defined Outflow	OIO = Open Interface Outflow

The following table displays characteristics, such as required or optional, of the applicable fields for each source type you can enter in the Forecast Template Rows page.

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Row Number	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Source Type	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
Description	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Company											O		
Business Group								O					
Operating Unit	O	O	O				O		O	O			
Ledger	O	O	O	R	R		O		O	O	O		
Payroll Name								O					
Discount	R												
Pay Group	O								O				
Payment Priority	O								O				
Supplier Type	O								O				
Payment Method		O						O					
Bank Account		O						O			O		

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Method		R						R					
Date Type		H						R					
Use Payment Terms		R						R					
Roll Forward Type		H						R					
Roll Forward Period		H						R					
Budget Name				R									
Include Transactions On Hold?	R		R										
GL Account				R	R								
Encumbrance Type					R								
Include Indicative Exposure?											R		
Lead Time	R	F	R			R	R		R	R			
Status									O	O			

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Transaction Type							O						
Budget Type						R							
Budget Version						R							
Include Temporary Labor?									R	R			
External Source Type													R
Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield													O
Descriptive Flexfield	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

Forecast Template Rows Page Details

Use this section along with the Inflow Source Type and Outflow Source Type tables on the previous pages as references when you create forecast templates. You can create multiple forecast templates with a wide variety and combination of source types. The fields described below allow you to control the search for data by entering source type information, or by leaving a field blank.

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria. You can choose to display or hide this field in the Cash Forecast Results page when you are updating or viewing a cash forecast.

Business Group/Company/Operating Unit. (Optional)An organization that you want to forecast on for the chosen source type. You can have multiple instances of a source type in your forecast, each for a different organization, or one instance to represent all organizations. Leave this field blank to collect source data for all organizations.

When the source type is Payroll Expenses, the field is actually the Business Group, and the list of values displays appropriate Business Groups for Oracle Payroll. When the source type is Treasury Inflow or Treasury Outflow, the field is Company. For all other source types, this field is the Operating Unit.

Ledger. The name of the ledger is required for GL Budgets, and GL Encumbrances. If you selected an organization in the previous field, the list of values for the Ledger field is restricted to the ledger for that organization.

> **Note:** If you are creating a forecast by GL periods across multiple organizations or ledgers, all organizations' ledgers must use the same accounting calendar. You select the accounting calendar when you submit a forecast by GL Period.

Payroll Name. (Optional) Indicates the name of the payroll to include in the cash forecast. Leave this field blank to forecast cash flow from all payrolls.

Discount. Indicates whether to include discounts, and how to calculate the expected cash activity date for Supplier Invoices. Choose from the following:

- **Maximum.** Always take the maximum discount available, subtract the discount from the gross invoice amount, and use the discount deadline as the expected cash activity date.
- **Minimum.** Always take the minimum discount available, subtract the discount from the gross invoice amount, and use the discount deadline as the expected cash activity date.
- **None.** Pay the entire invoice amount by the due date, and use the due date as the expected cash activity date.

Pay Group. (Optional) A user-defined Payables lookup that allows grouping of suppliers for payment. You can limit Supplier Invoices and Purchase Orders to those belonging to a certain pay group.

Payment Priority. (Optional)A number, between 1 (high) and 99 (low). Only supplier invoices or purchase orders with a payment priority the same as or smaller than the number you enter in this field are included in the cash forecast. For example, if you enter 15, Cash Management includes all invoices or purchase orders with a payment priority between 1 and 15.

Supplier Type. (Optional) A user-defined Payables lookup that allows supplier classification for Supplier Invoices and Purchase Orders.

Payment Method. (Optional) The method of payment for the source type. The list of

values depends on the source type:

- *For Supplier Payments:*payment methods predefined in Oracle Payables for how suppliers' invoices can be paid. Choices include: Check, Electronic, Wire, Future Dated, Manual Future Dated, and Clearing.

- *For Payroll Name:* predefined and user-defined payment methods in Oracle Payroll for how employees' payroll can be paid. Predefined choices include: Cash, Check, and NACHA (National Automated Clearing House Association).

- *For Customer Receipts:* The user-defined Receivables choice to account for receipt entries and applications.

Bank Account. (Optional)The bank account whose transactions you want to include in the cash forecast. The list of values is controlled by Cash Management Security. See: Cash Management Security.

Method. Specifies cash-flow transactions as forward- or backward-looking for Supplier Payments, Customer Receipts, and Payroll Expenses. For Payroll Expenses, this field defaults to Historical since Payroll Expenses forecasts are based solely on historical payments.

- **Future.** Include uncleared transactions.

- **Historical.** Include cleared transactions based on the cleared date or value date. You choose either Cleared Date or Value Date from the Date Type column on the Forecast Template Rows window.

Roll Forward Type and **Roll Forward Period.** (Required only when you choose Historical in the Method field) The combination of these fields determines the number of days, months, or accounting periods to roll forward to calculate the expected cash activity date for Supplier Payments, Customer Receipts, and Payroll Expenses. Roll Forward Type choices include: Day, Month, and Period.

For example, the Roll Forward Type of *Month* with the Roll Forward Period of 2 rolls forward all past transactions for 2 months. So, the transaction date of July 19, 1997 yields an expected cash activity date of September 19, 1997.

Profile Class. (Optional) The Order Management and Receivables customer category based on credit information, payment terms, currency limits, and correspondence types. You can use it as forecast selection criteria for Customer Invoices and Sales Orders.

Include Dispute? (Optional) A check box to indicate inclusion of disputed amounts for Customer Invoices. Items or amounts may be marked as 'in dispute' when a customer disagrees about the outstanding balance for an item.

Budget Name. The name of a budget for GL Budgets. A budget represents a collection of estimated amounts for a range of accounting periods.

GL Account. The appropriate General Ledger account for GL Budgets and GL Encumbrances.

Encumbrance Type. An encumbrance category, for GL Encumbrances, allowing you to track anticipated expenditures according to your purchase approval process and to more accurately control planned expenditures.

Include Transactions On Hold? (Optional) Indicates if you want to include transactions (invoices, expense reports, etc.) that are on hold.

Use Average Payment Days? (Optional) Indicates whether you want to forecast Customer Invoices based on the customer's payment pattern. If you select this option, the expected cash activity date is the invoice date plus the average number of days the customer takes to pay their bills according to the customer's payment history.

Period. (Optional) The period on which you want to base your Average Payment Days calculation. The period is in months and the default is twelve months. You can enter a value in this field only if you choose the Use Average Payment Days option.

Lead Time. The number of days that need to be added to the transaction date to calculate the projected cash activity date. The value must be a positive whole number, or zero. For Customer Invoices, this parameter is optional if you choose the Use Average Payment Days option.

Use Payment Terms? (Optional) Indicates whether you want to use payment terms to calculate the expected cash activity date for Sales Orders and Purchase Orders. If you select this option, the cash activity date for Purchase Orders is the promised date or need by date plus the due days specified in the payment terms. The cash activity date for Sales Orders is the ordered date or requested date plus the due days specified in the payment terms. However, if the payment terms contain a fixed due date, the due date is used as the cash activity date.

Order Type. (Optional) A classification for Sales Orders. In Order Management, this controls an order's workflow activity, order number sequence, credit check point, and transaction type.

Sales Stage. The sales stage code for Sales Opportunities.

Channel. The lead channel code for Sales Opportunities.

Win Probability. The win probability, as a percentage, for Sales Opportunities. For example, if you enter 10, you select all sales opportunities with 10% or more of win probabilities.

Status. (Optional) Indicates the status of transactions to include in the cash forecast.

Date Type. The expected cash activity date to use when calculating forecast amounts.

Transaction Type. The type of transaction.

Include Indicative Exposures. For Treasury Inflow and Outflow, if you select Yes, you can include transactions in the forecast as follows:

- **Yes.** Indicative. Include all transactions including those that may or may not occur.
- **No.** Firm: Include only transactions that definitely have occurred or will occur.

Budget Type. Required for Project Inflow Budgets and Project Outflow Budgets. The type of budget.

Budget Version. Required for Project Inflow Budgets and Project Outflow Budgets. The version of the budget type that you selected. You can have many versions of the same budget for a project and budget type, but Cash Management only considers baselined budgets that are identified as the current budget or original budget.

Include Temporary Labor?. Indicate whether to include the line type of temporary labor for the Purchase Order and Purchase Requisition sources.

External Source Type. Indicates the user-defined external forecast source type for Open Interface Inflow or Open Interface Outflow. The list of values is from the Context field of the Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield you created during setup of the External Cashflow Open Interface.

Forecast Selection Criteria. The descriptive flexfield that indicates the external forecast selection criteria based on the External Source Type you entered in the previous field for Open Interface Inflow or Open Interface Outflow sources. The list of values is from the segments you defined for the Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield.

Related Topics

Discounts (*Oracle Payables User Guide*)

Payment Region of the Suppliers and Supplier Sites Window (*Oracle Payables User Guide*)

Defining Bank Accounts (*Oracle Payables User Guide*)

Payment Methods (*Oracle Receivables User Guide*)

Defining Customer Profile Classes (*Oracle Receivables User Guide*)

Placing an Item in Dispute (*Oracle Receivables User Guide*)

Defining Accounts (*Oracle General Ledger User Guide*)

Defining Budgets (*Oracle General Ledger User Guide*)

Defining Encumbrance Types (*Oracle General Ledger User Guide*)

Defining a Payroll (*Oracle Payroll User Guide*)

Defining Payment Methods for the Enterprise (*Oracle Payroll User Guide*)

Pay Processing for Payrolls and Individuals (*Oracle Payroll User Guide*)

Labor Costs in Oracle HRMS (*Oracle Payroll User Guide)*

Representing the Employer: The Business Group (*Oracle Payroll User Guide*)

Overview of Setting Up, page 2-1

External Cashflow Open Interface, page 2-57

Generating Cash Forecasts from Templates

You can define reusable cash forecast templates for use in generating cash forecasts. A cash forecast template is a matrix, similar to a spreadsheet, with each row defining the source of the cashflow, and each column defining the forecast period in GL periods or in days. When you submit a forecast, you generate exactly the forecast that you need by entering submission parameters, such as start date and forecast currency.

When you submit a cash forecast, Cash Management collects the necessary source data and summarizes the information as cash forecast amounts, based on the forecast period specifications. The forecast data is then available for update, inquiry or reporting purposes, or for export to any spreadsheet application.

Cash Management determines projected cash activity dates based on your specifications. For example, if the source type is Supplier Invoices, the expected cash activity date is based on either the discount date or the due date depending on your selection in the template. Refer to the Cash Forecasting Source Transaction Dates table, page 6-5.

If you have created a forecast template that includes a user-defined source type, Cash Management creates a row that contains zeroes when you generate a cash forecast. If you want to enter amounts manually in the forecast amount cells for user-defined source types, click on the zero in the forecast cell and add transactions in the Source Transactions Details page.

You might generate a new cash forecast because you have created a new template, or because you want to recalculate a forecast with different submission parameters.

You can generate forecasts in the following ways:

- Generate a new cash forecast from a template, with forecast amounts calculated automatically.
    - Query the template in the Forecast Templates Search and Results page, and select the Run Forecast icon
    - Query a previously run forecast in the Forecast Search and Results page, and select the Run Forecast icon
    - Using the Submit Request window
- Quickly create a manually enteredcash forecast, with the rows and columns defined by a template.

Generating Cash Forecasts for a Project

You can generate a forecast for a specific project or for a range of projects. If you generate a forecast for a range of projects, Cash Management produces a separate

forecast for each project.

To specify projects for your forecast that are different from those on the template, you must complete the starting and ending project numbers on the Submit Forecast window.

If you submit a forecast for a project based on a template that includes some sources types that are related to Projects and others that are not related to Projects, Cash Management produces a forecast that reflects information from only the source types related to Projects.

External Cashflow Open Interface and Distributed Database Integration

The External Cashflow Open Interface allows you to utilize external sources of data as cash inflow and outflow data for the Cash Forecasting feature, providing you an enterprise-wide cash forecasting solution on a distributed database environment.

You can generate a cash forecast and the External Cashflow Open Interface automatically retrieves information available from the external forecast sources you have defined.

Prerequisites for All Methods of Generating Cash Forecasts

- Set up the External Cashflow Open Interface if you plan to include external sources in your cash forecasts.
- Define at least one cash forecast template.

Generating a Cash Forecast with Amounts Calculated Automatically

To create a cash forecast from the Forecast Templates Search and Results page:

1. Navigate to the Forecast Templates Search and Results page.
2. Query an existing forecast template and select the Run Forecast icon that corresponds to the template.
3. Enter the appropriate parameters and click Submit to generate a new cash forecast.
4. When you click Submit, you receive a confirmation message in the Forecast Templates Search and Results page. You can then select the View Forecast icon that corresponds to the template to navigate to the Forecast Search and Results page where you can monitor the status of your request.

To create a cash forecast from the Forecast Search and Results page:

1. Navigate to the Forecast Search and Results page.

2. Query an existing forecast from the Forecast Search and Results page and select the Run Forecast icon.

3. Enter the appropriate parameters and click Submit to generate a new cash forecast.

4. When you click Submit, you receive a confirmation message in the Forecast Search and Results page. You can then click the Refresh Processing Status button to monitor the status of your request.

To create a cash forecast from the Submit Request window:

1. Submit a request for Cash Forecasting by Days or Cash Forecasting by GL Periods in the Submit Request window.

2. Select any print or run options prior to submission.

> **Tip:** Consider using report sets if you routinely generate a given set of cash forecasts.

> **Important:** If you are generating a cash forecast for a project, you can generate a forecast for a specific project or for a range of projects by entering a starting and ending project number.
>
> Cash Management automatically generates the Cash Forecast Execution Report, which indicates if the Submit Forecast program produced any errors. You can also print this report later using the Submit Request window. Cash Management also generates the Cash Forecast report if the Submit Forecast program produced no errors.

Related Topics

Generating a Cash Forecast with Amounts Generated Automatically, page 6-21

Creating a Manually Entered Cash Forecast, page 6-26

External Cash Flow Open Interface, page 2-57

Cash Forecasting Reports, page 11-20

Submission Parameters, page 6-22

Submission Parameters

Enter values for the following parameters when you generate forecasts using either the Submit Request window, the Run Forecast icon in the Forecast Templates Search and Results page, or the Run Forecast icon in the Forecasts Search and Results page.

Forecast By. The forecast period type used to run the cash forecast. The values for this field automatically default based on the forecast template you select and is not updatable.

- **GL Periods.** Run a forecast with GL Periods as the forecast period type.
- **Days.** Run a forecast with Days as the forecast period type.

> **Note:** When you define a forecast template, you specify the forecast period type as GL Periods or Days.

Template Name. The forecast template used to create a new forecast.

Forecast Name. The unique forecast name for this cash forecast. If you do not enter a forecast name, Cash Management automatically generates a unique name for you by attaching the system date and time to the template name.

Factor. Indicates the way amounts are displayed in the forecast.

Calendar Name. The name of the GL accounting calendar, used when submitting a forecast by GL Period. In addition, if you submit a forecast by Days, and you select the GL Cash Position or the Both Bank Account and GL Cash Position option in the View Opening Balance By field, then you need to enter a Calendar Name.

> **Important:** All GL sources for a forecast by GL periods must use ledgers with the same accounting calendar. If you are creating a forecast across *multiple organizations*, all organizations' ledgers must use the same accounting calendar.

Start Period and **Start Date.** The accounting period to begin the forecast, or the day to begin the forecast. Cash Management restricts you to using Start Period when submitting a forecast by GL Period, and Start Date when submitting a forecast by Days.

> **Note:** The Start Date or Period should be as of today or in the future. If you enter a start date in the past, or a start period in the past (or that is in progress), the forecast only includes transactions as of today. For example, if an invoice is paid today, but you enter a forecast start date of two days ago to try to include it as an open invoice, Cash Management still considers it paid and therefore does not include the invoice (as open) in the forecast.

Start Project Number. The beginning number for the range of projects that you want to include in the forecast. Cash Management creates a forecast for every project number in the range that you specify. The default is the project number defined in the template.

End Project Number. The ending number for the range of projects that you want to include in the forecast. Cash Management creates a forecast for every project number in the range that you specify. The default is the project number defined in the template.

Forecast Currency. The currency in which the forecast amounts are to be displayed.

Source Currency Type. The currency type for the sources in the cash forecast:

- **All.** Include all source transactions, regardless of currency, and translate them to the Forecast Currency.
- **Entered.** Include only source transactions with the same Source Currency as the transaction currency.
- **Ledger.** Include only source transactions with the Source Currency as the ledger currency. (This choice is useful for multiple ledgers environments.)

Source Currency. The currency for the source transactions. The transactions included in your forecast calculations are determined by the combination of your entries for this field and the Source Currency Type field, as explained in the following table. If the Source Currency Type is All, you do not enter a Source Currency.

> **Note:** For any document without a source currency (such as a requisition or purchase order), Cash Management assumes that the ledger currency is the currency of the transaction.

The following table contains the transactions included for each Source Currency Type:

Source Currency Type	Which Transactions Are Included
All	All transactions, all ledgers, all operating units
Entered	All transactions entered in the Source Currency for all ledgers
Ledger	Selects all ledgers where the ledger currency for that ledger equals the Source Currency specified, and then includes all transactions of all currencies from those ledgers

Exchange Date and **Exchange Type.** The exchange rate date, and the exchange rate type, which is defined in Oracle General Ledger. These fields are required if the Forecast Currency and the Source Currency are not the same.

> **Important:** Cash Management automatically converts transaction currency amounts to the forecast currency according to the daily rates for the specified exchange rate type and date.
>
> However, if daily rate information for the exchange date and type does not exist in the Oracle General Ledger daily rates table, the forecast will

be inaccurate because Cash Management ignores transactions amounts that it cannot convert to the forecast currency.

Exchange Rate. The user-defined currency exchange rate when the Exchange Rate Type is User. The User rate only applies when the Source Currency Type is Entered, as no one rate will apply to converting various currencies to the forecast currency. This field is required if the Forecast Currency and the Source Currency are not the same.

Amount Threshold. The minimum value of individual transactions to be included in the forecast, allowing you to omit insignificant transaction amounts from the forecast calculations. Cash Management compares this amount to transaction amounts if the Source Currency Type is Entered, and ledger amounts of transaction if the Source Currency Type is Ledger. The program then only selects transactions that are greater than this amount threshold.

If you leave this field blank, then the program selects all valid transactions that meet the selection criteria. This field is not applicable when the Source Currency Type is All.

Row Number From/To. A list of values provides you with a choice to run a partial forecast for sequential rows of the template you entered.

Request by Row. Select the Yes option to submit a separate concurrent request for each row, so that the rows for the forecast are generated concurrently. (This method is useful for testing or for very large forecasts, that is, forecasts with a large amount of data.)

Opening Balance Options

The parameters in this section refer to the opening balance that you can choose to display in your cash forecast.

View Opening Balance By. Select how to view the opening balance for your cash forecast from the following options:

- **None.** Do not display an opening balance.
- **GL Cash Position.** Display opening balances by GL cash accounts.
- **Bank Account.** Display opening balances by bank accounts.
- **Both Bank Account and GL Cash Position.** Display opening balances by bank accounts and GL cash accounts.

Bank Account Balance Type. If you choose either the Bank Account or Both Bank Account and GL Cash Position option in the View Opening Balance By field, you must choose what type of bank account balance should be used. The options include: Available, Value Dated, and Ledger Balance

Float Type. If you choose either the Bank Account or Both Bank Account and GL Cash Position option in the View Opening Balance By field, then you must select a value in this field to adjust your opening bank account balance. Options include : Add One Day

Float, Add Two Day Float, None, Subtract One Day Float, and Subtract Two Day Float.

Include Subsidiary's Bank Account Balance. If you choose either the Bank Account or the Both Bank Account and GL Cash Position option in the View Opening Balance By field, and you have subsidiary bank accounts set up in Oracle Treasury, you can choose to include the bank account balances of the subsidiary bank accounts in your cash forecast.

Creating a Manually Entered Cash Forecast

You can create a new cash forecast using an existing template without running the forecast program, with no values calculated. You can then manually fill in forecast amounts in the new forecast.

1. Navigate to the Forecast Search and Results page by selecting Cash Forecasting from the menu.

2. Select either Days or GL Periods in the Forecast By field, and click Create Forecast Manually.

3. In the Create Forecast Manually page, enter the Template Name, Forecast Currency, and Factor. If the forecast is by Days, you must enter a Start Date and if it is by GL Period, you must enter a Start Period. Optionally enter a Forecast Name. Click Continue.

4. In the Create Forecast page, you can:

   - Enter forecast amounts in the cells and click the Recalculate Summary Cash flows button to update summary cash flows.

   - Manually add rows and columns to the existing forecast template by clicking on the Add Row or Column button

   - Exclude rows from summary calculations by disabling the Include checkbox in front of the row and clicking the Recalculate Summary Cash Flows button

   - Export the forecast to an external application by selecting the Export button.

     Important: When you add columns and rows on a forecast template, the changes affect manually created forecasts based on that template as well as those automatically generated.

Cash Forecast Results

Cash Forecast Results Page Reference

Forecast Name. The unique forecast name for this cash forecast.

Template Name. The forecast template used to create the forecast**.**

Forecast Currency. The currency in which the forecast amounts are displayed.

Factor. Indicates the way amounts are displayed:

- **Units.** Displays amounts as calculated.
- **1**. Displays amounts as multiples of one.
- **10.** Displays amounts as multiple of ten.
- **100.** Displays amounts as multiples of a hundred.
- **1000.** Displays forecast amounts as multiples of a thousand.
- **10,000.** Displays forecast amounts as multiples of ten thousand.
- **100,000.** Displays forecast amounts as multiples of a hundred thousand.
- **1,000,000.** Displays forecast amounts as multiples of a million.
- **10,000,000.** Displays forecast amounts as multiples of ten million.
- **100,000,000.** Displays forecast amounts as multiples of a hundred million.
- **1,000,000,000.** Displays forecast amounts as multiples of a billion.

Display. You have the option to view the Source and Description, Description Only and Source Only.

View By. You have the option of viewing forecast results by transaction source, by bank account or GL cash position bank account, depending on selection made when submitting the forecast.

Viewing Cash Forecast Results

You can view your cash forecast results by transaction source, bank account or GL cash position. When you select the forecast name in the Results table, the Forecast Results by Transaction Source page appears. In the View By option, you choose how you want to view the results and click the Go button.

Forecast Results By Transaction Source

This page displays the forecast results by transaction source. The table below the results displays the summary amounts for the cash inflow, the cash outflow and the net cashflow for each forecast period. For transaction sources associated with bank accounts, the forecast results displayed on this page represent only those transactions that are associated with bank accounts to which the current user has Bank Account Access security enabled. See: Bank Account Access Security within the UMX wizard.

In the Forecast Results by Transaction Source page you can do the following:

- Manually add rows and columns to the existing forecast and forecast template by clicking the Add Row or Column button.
- Export the forecast results to an external application by selecting the Export button.
- View the forecast results in Oracle Discoverer by clicking on the View in Discoverer button.
- Exclude rows from summary calculations by disabling the Include checkbox in front of the row and selecting the Recalculate Summary Cashflows button
- View a printer friendly format of the forecast results by selecting the Printable Page button
- Click on the forecast amount in the cells to see the details of the source transactions. The Source Transaction Details page appears where all the transactions that make up the forecast amount are displayed. You can do the following in this page:
  - Query for specific transactions by Cash Activity Date or Transaction Amount.
  - Sort transactions in the Results table by various parameters.
  - Exclude transactions from the forecast results and update the summary amounts.
  - Add transactions manually and update the summary amounts.

  See: Source Transaction Details Page Reference, page 6-30

Forecast Results by Bank Account

This page displays the forecast results by bank account. If your forecast contains projected cashflows such as invoices, sales orders, purchase orders, sales opportunities, etc. and you choose the View By Bank Account option, Cash Management groups these sources together and displays them in the Others row If you have not modified your External Cashflow Open Interface view to include bank_account_id, Cash Management also displays the open interface transactions in the Others row.

In the Forecast Results by Bank Account page you can do the following:

- Click on the bank account name in the table to see the forecast details of individual bank accounts. From the Details page, you can click on the forecast amounts to view the source transaction details.
- Select the Printable Page button to get a printer friendly version of the forecast results by bank account.

See: Calculation of Opening and Closing Bank Account Balances and GL Cash Position

in Cash Forecasting, page 6-29

Forecast Results by GL Cash Position

This page displays the forecast results by GL cash accounts. If your forecast contains projected cashflows such as invoices, sales, orders, purchase orders, sales opportunities, etc., and you choose the View by GL Cash Position option, Cash Management groups these sources together and displays them in the Others row. Cash Management also includes open interface transactions in the Others row if you have not modified your external cashflow open interface view to include bank_account_id.

In the Forecast Results by GL Cash Position page, you can do the following:

- Click on the GL Cash Account in the table to see the forecast details of individual GL cash accounts. From the Details page, you can click on the forecast amounts to view the source transaction details.

- Select the Printable Page button to get a printer friendly version of the forecast results by bank account or GL cash position.

Calculation of Opening and Closing Bank Account Balances and GL Cash Position in Cash Forecasting

Bank Account Balances

The opening bank account balance displayed in the cash forecast results is the closing bank account balance of the day prior to the first day or period of the cash forecast for that bank account.

The balance type and the float type to be used in calculating the opening balance is determined by the selections made while submitting the cash forecast.

If the previous day's closing balance is not available, then the latest available bank account balances are displayed instead. In this case, the cash forecast results by bank account also display a prior day cashflows column that includes transactions between the latest available balance date and the first day/period of the cash forecast so that the closing balance can be projected accurately. The closing balance for bank accounts is calculated as Opening Balance + Prior Day Cash Flows + Net Cash Flow.

> **Warning:** If you choose to include overdue transactions in your cash forecast and your bank account balances are not up to date, transactions that are included as Overdue could overlap with transactions that are included as Prior Day Cashflow causing potential double-counting of transactions in the forecast results.

GL Cash Position

The opening balance for GL cash accounts for a forecast by days is calculated as the sum of the balance available for the forecast start period within which the forecast start date lies and the net of GL accounting journal entries between period start date and the forecast start date. The opening balance for GL cash accounts for a forecast by GL periods is the balance available for the first day of the forecast start period.

Source Transaction Details Page Reference

Source Transaction Details Page: Cash Inflow

The following table contains the legend for the Cash Inflow Source Transaction Details table.

	Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics	
(blank) = Not applicable	ARI = Customer Invoices	PAI = Project Inflow Budgets
S = Summary Section	ARR = Customer Receipts	XTRI = Treasury Inflow
D = Detail Section	ASF = Sales Forecasts	UDI = User-Defined Inflow
	GLB = GL Budgets	OII = Open Interface Inflow
	OEO = Sales Orders	
	PAB = Project Billing Events	

The following table lists the fields that are displayed in the Summary and Detail section for each cash inflow source type in the Source Transaction Details page.

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Cash Activity Date	S	S	S	S	S	S		S	S	S
Forecast Amount	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Transaction Currency	S	S	S		S	S		S	S	
Transaction Amount	S	S	S		S	S		S	S	
Transaction Number	S									
Profile Class	D				D					
Dispute Amount	D									
Organization	D	D	D		D	D	D			
Receipt Number		S								
Bank Account Currency		S						S		
Bank Account Amount		S						S		
Status		D	D		D					
Receipt Method		D								

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Bank Account Name		D						D		
Bank Account Number		D						D		
Lead Number			S							
Channel			D							
Win Probability			D							
Balance Currency				S						
Ledger				D						
Sales Order Number					S					
Line Number					D	D				
Order Type					D					
Deal Number								S		
Deal Type								S		

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Counter party								S		
Amount Type								S		
Deal Subtype								D		
Transaction Number						D		D		
Company								D		
Resource Name							S			
Period Name							S			
Period Start Date							S			
Period End Date							S			
Project Currency							S			
Revenue							S			
Task Name							D			

	ARI	ARR	ASF	GLB	OEO	PAB	PAI	XTRI	UDI	OII
Event Number						S				
Invoice Line Type						D				
Billed Flag						D				

Source Transaction Details Page: Outflow

The following table contains the legend for the Cash Outflow Source Transaction Details table.

	Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics	
(blank) = Not applicable	APX = Expense Reports	POP = Purchase Orders
S = Summary Section	GLB = GL Budgets	POR = Purchase Requisitions
D = Detail Section	GLE = GL Encumbrances	XTRO = Treasury Outflow
	PAO = Project Outflow Budgets	UDO = User-Defined Outflow
API = Supplier Invoices	PAT = Project Transactions	OIO = Open Interface Outflow
APP = Supplier Payments	PAY = Payroll Expenses	

The following table lists the fields that are displayed in the Summary and Detail section for each source type in the Source Transaction Details page.

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Cash Activity Date	S	S	S	S	S		S	S	S	S	S	S	S
Forecast Amount	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S
Transaction Currency	S	S	S	S	S		S	S	S	S	S	S	S
Transaction Amount	S	S	S				S	S	S	S	S	S	
Invoice Number	S		S										
Payment Priority	D	D							D				
Supplier Type	D	D							D				
Pay Group	D	D							D				
On Hold?	D		D										
Organization	D	D	D			D	D		D	D			
Payment Number		S											

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Bank Account Currency		S						S			S		
Bank Account Amount		S						S			S		
Status		D							D	D			
Payment Method		D						D					
Bank Account Name		D						D			D		
Bank Account Number		D						D			D		
Balance Currency				S	S								
Source			D										
Payroll Name								S					
Business Group								D					

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Purchase Order Number									S				
Line Number									D	D			
Requisition Number										S			
Deal Number											S		
Deal Type											S		
Counterparty											S		
Amount Type											S		
Deal Subtype											D		
Transaction Number											D		
Company											D		
Resource Name						S							

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Period Name						S							
Period Start Date						S							
Period End Date						S							
Assignment Start Date									D	D			
Assignment End Date									D	D			
Project Currency						S							
Cost						S							
Burdened Cost						D							
Task Name						D							
Expenditure Status													
Expenditure Type							D						

	API	APP	APX	GLB	GLE	PAO	PAT	PAY	POP	POR	XTRO	UDO	OIO
Expenditure Item Date							D						
Quantity							D						

Modifying Cash Forecast Templates and Cash Forecasts

You can modify cash forecast templates and forecasts, with some limitations. The following table addresses what you can change on cash forecast templates and cash forecasts and when:

	Change Descriptive Information	Add Rows and Columns	Delete Rows and Columns	Change Forecast Amounts
New Templates	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A
Templates Used to Generate Forecasts	No	No	No	N/A

	Change Descriptive Information	Add Rows and Columns	Delete Rows and Columns	Change Forecast Amounts
Forecasts	No	Yes, with an option to modify original template and all existing forecasts based on that template; or to create new template.	No	Yes, modify values directly in fields by drilling down to the Source Transaction Details page and either adding a new transaction or excluding existing transactions. Forecast summary amounts cannot be modified, but are automatically updated to reflect forecast amount changes.

Modifying Templates

To query existing cash forecast templates:

1. Navigate to the Forecast Templates Search and Results page.
2. (Optional) Enter a partial or full Template Name.
3. (Optional) Select a forecast period type in the Forecast By field.
4. Click Go. Cash Management displays all cash forecast templates that match your search criteria.
5. Click on the Template Name in the Forecast Template Results table to view template details.

To modify a cash forecast template:

1. Query an existing cash forecast template (see above).

2. If no cash forecasts exist based on the template, you can modify any of the information for the cash forecast template by selecting the Update icon corresponding to your template.

Modifying Forecast Amounts on an Existing Cash Forecast

To query existing cash forecasts:

1. Navigate to the Cash Forecasts Search and Results page.
2. (Optional) Enter a partial or full Template Name, or a partial or full Forecast Name. Optionally enter a forecast period type in the Forecast By field.
3. Click Go and Cash Management displays all cash forecasts that match your search criteria.
4. In the Forecast Results table, you can view the following information: Forecast Name, Template Name, Forecast By, Start Date/Start Period, Processing Status, and Date Run.

   Note: You can click on the Template Name to view the details of the template used to generate this forecast.

5. Click on the Forecast Name to review the forecast results.

To modify forecast amounts on an existing cash forecast:

1. Query an existing cash forecast (see above).
2. Click on the Forecast Name. The Cash Forecast Results page appears.
3. Click on the amount in the forecast cell that you want to modify. The Source Transaction Details page appears.
4. You can choose to exclude transactions by disabling the Include checkbox that corresponds to the transaction. Or, you can add a new transaction by entering the transaction details in the Transaction section and clicking the Add button.
5. Click the Apply button to save the changes and return to the Forecast Results page.

To add a column to an existing cash forecast:

1. Query an existing cash forecast.
2. Click on the Forecast Name. The Cash Forecast Results page appears

3. Choose the Add Row or Column button. The Add Rows and Columns page appears.

4. Enter a unique Column Number and GL Period From and To/Days From and To values.

   Values must be integers between 1 and 999. The Column Number indicates the sequence of the columns in the forecast.

5. Enable the Create a New Template option if you do not want the new columns to be added to all existing forecasts that are based on the original template for the forecast. Enabling the Create a New Template option creates a new template with the same rows and columns as this forecast, including the columns you are adding. Cash Management updates the summary amounts in the cash forecast to reflect your changes.

6. If you enabled the Create a New Template option in the previous step, enter a Template Name for a new template. Alternatively enable the Update Existing Template option to update the existing Forecast template.

7. Click the Apply button to save the column information and the modified template.

   Note: If you have created a new forecast template, further changes that you make from this point are made on the new template. You can make further changes to the new template now, or query it later.

To add a row to an existing cash forecast:

1. Query an existing cash forecast.

2. Click on the Forecast Name. The Cash Forecast Results page appears

3. Choose the Add Row or Column button. The Add Rows and Columns page appears.

4. Enter a Row Number. Values must be integers between 1 and 999. The Row Number indicates the sequence of the rows in the forecast.

5. Choose a Source of either User-defined Inflow or User-defined Outflow. This creates a new row, filled with zeros, in the forecast for you to manually enter a definition and forecast amounts.

   Note: If you want to add standard sources that are not yet a part of your template, use the Forecast Templates window. See: Modifying

6. Check the Create New Forecast Template check box if you do not want your new rows to be added to all forecasts using the original template for your forecast. Checking this box creates a new template with the same rows and columns as this forecast, plus the rows you are adding.

7. If you checked Create a New Template in the previous step, enter a Template Name for a new template.

8. Choose Add to save the row and the new or modified template.

> **Note:** If you have created a new forecast template, further changes that you make from this point are made on the new template. You can make further changes to the new template now, or query it later.

> **Important:** You can add rows and columns in a template, but your action will affect all cash forecasts previously generated using that template. Adding rows and columns to a previously-defined template generates forecast amounts of zero for the new cells in existing forecasts.

Add Rows or Columns Page Reference

Row Number. Indicates the sequence of rows in the forecast. Enter a unique integer between 1 and 999 for the row you are adding.

Source. Indicates if the source is User-Defined Inflow or User-Defined Outflow. Cash Management creates a new row that contains zeros so you can manually enter forecast amounts.

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Column Number. Indicates the sequence of columns in the forecast. Enter a unique integer between 1 and 999 for the column you are adding.

GL Periods / Days From. Use this field, along with the GL Periods/Days To field, to indicate the time range for this forecasting period.

GL Periods / Days To. Use this field, along with the GL Periods/Days From field, to indicate the time range for this forecasting period.

Create A New Template. Select this option to create a new template that contains the

same rows and columns as this forecast, plus the row or column you are adding.

Update Existing Forecast Template. Select this option to add the new row or column to the existing template and all the forecasts based on this template.

Template Name. Enter the name of the new forecast template.

Purging Cash Forecasts

You can purge previously generated cash forecasts when you submit the Purge Cash Forecasts program using the Submit Request window. Cash Management automatically generates the Purge Cash Forecasts report when you submit the Purge Cash Forecasts program. The Purge Cash Forecasts report lists the forecasts that have been purged.

Submission Parameters

Purge Option. Choose forecasts by days, GL periods, or both.

Forecast Template. Optionally choose the forecast template associated with the forecasts you want to purge.

Forecast Date From/Forecast Date To. Optionally choose a value for each of these parameters. All forecasts within this date range will be purged.

Exporting Cash Forecasts to Your Spreadsheet Application

You can transfer cash forecast results to your spreadsheet application. Excel can be very useful to manipulate information for analysis and graphical representation.

Use the Export button in the Cash Forecast Results page to export cash forecasts from Cash Management to Microsoft Excel.

> **Note:** This option is available only on the Windows platform, and only if Excel is installed.

To export cash forecasts to Excel:

1. Navigate to the Forecast Search and Results page.
2. Query the cash forecast you want to export.
3. Click on the Forecast Name. The Forecast Results page appears.
4. Click the Export button. The Export Forecast Results page appears.
5. You can choose to export the Cashflow Detail and/or the Cashflow Summary by clicking on the corresponding buttons.

6. The Save dialogue box appears.

7. Enter the file name and select the file type to export the results.

> **Note:** Saving in your spreadsheet application does not save an updated spreadsheet in your Oracle database. You can make any modifications to your cash forecast results in your spreadsheet application

Related Topics

Cash Forecast Report, page 11-21

Viewing Cash Forecasts in Discoverer

You can view cash forecast results in a Discoverer Workbook. Discoverer enables you to manipulate information for analysis and graphical representation.

To view cash forecast results in a Discoverer Workbook, click the View in Discoverer button in the Cash Forecast Results page. This option is only available if you have Oracle Discoverer installed.

Cash Management provides one predefined workbook, which contains the following worksheets:

Cash Forecast by Forecast Currency Worksheet

This worksheet displays the forecast amounts grouped by transaction source type in the forecast currency.

Cash Forecast by Transaction Currency Worksheet

This worksheet displays the cash forecast amounts grouped by transaction source type in the forecast currency and the transaction currency.

Cash Forecast by Bank Account Currency Worksheet

This worksheet displays cash forecast results grouped by transaction source type and bank account for a particular currency.

Cash Forecast by Bank Account Balance Worksheet

This worksheet displays the bank account opening and closing balances, net cash flows, and subsidiary bank account opening balances for different bank accounts grouped by legal entity.

Supplier Invoices Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of supplier invoices that pertain to a particular forecast.

Supplier Payments Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of supplier payments that pertain to a particular forecast.

Expense Reports Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of expense reports that pertain to a particular forecast.

Customer Invoices Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of customer invoices that pertain to a particular forecast.

Customer Receipts Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of customer receipts that pertain to a particular forecast.

Sales Forecasts Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of sales forecasts that pertain to a particular forecast.

GL Budgets Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of GL budgets that pertain to a particular forecast.

GL Encumbrances Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of GL Encumbrances that pertain to a particular forecast.

Sales Orders Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of sales orders that pertain to a particular forecast.

Open Interface Sources Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of open interface source transactions that pertain to a particular forecast.

Project Billing Events Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of project billing events that pertain to a particular forecast.

Project Budgets Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of project budgets that pertain to a particular forecast.

Project Transactions Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of project transactions that pertain to a particular forecast.

Payroll Expenses Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of payroll expenses that pertain to a particular forecast.

Purchase Orders Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of purchase orders that pertain to a particular forecast.

Purchase Requisitions Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of purchase requisitions that pertain to a particular forecast.

Treasury Transactions Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of treasury transactions that pertain to a particular forecast.

For more details on analyzing and customizing this workbook refer to the *Oracle Web Discoverer User's Guide.*

7

Cash Positioning

This chapter tells you how to use Cash Positioning. It explains how to create cash position worksheets, generate daily cash positions from these worksheets, and view the cash position results.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Cash Positioningcash positioningpositioning
- Creating Cash Position Worksheets
- Generating Cash Positions From Worksheets
- Viewing Cash Position Resultscash position resultsviewing cash position results
- Exporting Cash Position Results to Your Spreadsheet Application

Cash Positioning

Cash positioning is a planning tool that helps you view your daily cash position by currency or bank account. Cash positioning allows you to project your cash needs, and evaluate your company's liquidity position. The daily cash positions are based on actual cash flows from various Oracle Applications. You can generate a daily cash position for a single currency, multiple currencies, a single bank account, multiple bank accounts, a single Legal Entity, or multiple Legal Entities..

Refer to the following sections in this chapter for details on how to accomplish various cash positioning tasks:

- Creating Cash Position Worksheets, page 7-2
- Generating Cash Positions from Worksheets, page 7-14
- Viewing Cash Position Results, page 7-24
- Exporting Cash Positions to Your Spreadsheet Application, page 7-36

- Viewing Cash Positions in Discoverer, page 7-36

Creating Cash Position Worksheets

A worksheet contains cash position specifications. Worksheets determine the presentation of sources (rows) and bank accounts (columns) for your cash position. Worksheets also include the following types of general information:

- Worksheet name
- Number of columns displayed

Cash Management provides the following two seeded worksheets:

Default Cash Position Worksheet. This worksheet includes the default values for the Bank Account Balance section, Intra-Day Activities section and all transaction sources except for the User-Defined and Open Interface sources.

Default Treasury Cash Position Worksheet. This worksheet includes the default values for the Bank Account Balance section, Intra-Day Activities section, Treasury Inflow and Treasury Outflow sources.

You can specify the sources you want to include in the cash position to create custom cash position worksheets. You can include transaction source defaults or you can choose to manually set the parameters for the transaction source. For more information on source type specifications, refer to Cash Position Worksheet Page Reference, page 7-7

Once you have selected your cash position specifications, you can save your worksheet, and use it to generate your daily cash positions. This process gathers current source information from the selected Oracle Applications.

External Cashflow Open Interface and Distributed Database Integration

The External Cashflow Open Interface allows you to utilize external sources of cash inflow and outflow data for the Cash Positioning feature, providing you an enterprise-wide cash positioning solution on a distributed database environment.

You define your worksheets to include the Open Interface Inflow and Open Interface Outflow source types. You can then generate a cash position and Cash Management automatically retrieves information available from the external sources you have defined.

To create a cash position worksheet:

1. Navigate to the Cash Position Worksheet Search and Results page.
2. Click the Create Worksheet button.

3. In the Create Cash Position Worksheet page, enter a unique name for your worksheet.

4. Enter the number of columns that you want Cash Management to display in each page of your cash position results. The default is 20.

5. Select whether to use real-time prior day cash flow and overdue transactions balances or to use calculated balances by selecting No or Yes in the Use Calculated Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions Balances field. For more information refer to Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions Program, page 7-6

6. The Bank Account Balance section is required and is automatically included with the default values. To specify parameters of your choice for this section, click on the Set Manually button and select the appropriate values for each field.

7. If you have set up cash pools, you can choose to include them in your cash position. To specify parameters of your choice for this section, click on the Set Manually button and select the appropriate values for each field.

8. Select whether to Include or Exclude Intra Day activities in your cash position. If you choose to include Intra Day activities, you can select to either include or exclude them from the closing balance calculation.

   You can select from the following options:

   - **No.** Do not include intra-day activities in cash position.

   - **Only Display.** Display Intra-day activities in the cash position without affecting the closing balance. This is the default value.

   - **Display and include in closing balance.** Display intra-day activities in the cash position and add the amount to the net cash flow to calculate the closing balance.

9. Enable the Include This Section in the Cash Position check box for each inflow and outflow source type you want to include in the cash position. This option includes the selected sources with the default values. This option is not available for the Open Interface and the User-Defined source types.

10. Optionally click on the Set Manually button to select the parameters you want to apply to your selected source types if you do not want to use the defaults. You must select appropriate values for the applicable parameters for each source type you choose to include in the worksheet. You can also choose to include multiple rows from the same source type with different parameters by clicking on the Add Another Row button. It is recommended that you provide a unique description for each row you include to make the cash position meaningful. For the list of

applicable parameters for each source type see: Cash Position Worksheet Page Reference, page 7-7

11. Click the Apply button to save the worksheet.

Note: A validation is performed for each row for the following and error messages will be displayed in case of a violation:

- The transaction type and transaction code combination is validated for the bank account entered, unless no bank account exists.
- The bank and bank account combination is validated unless no bank account exists.
- The transaction code and bank account combination is validated unless no bank account exists.

Cash Positioning Source Transaction Dates

When Cash Management collects the source data for a cash position, it includes source transactions whose cash activity date is the As Of Date for the cash position. Cash Management searches for a valid date in the sequence indicated, using the first date it finds.

The following table explains which date is used as the expected cash activity date.

Type	Expected Cash Activity Date or Time
Supplier Payments	1. Value Date (Actual then Anticipated), 2. Maturity Date, or 3. Payment Date
Payroll Expenses	1. Payment Date
Customer Receipts	1. Value Date (Actual then Anticipated), 2. Maturity Date, or 3. Latest Receipt Transaction Date
Treasury Inflow	1. Settlement Date
Treasury Outflow	2. Settlement Date
Intra-Day Activities	1. Value Date 2. Statement Date

Type	Expected Cash Activity Date or Time
Cash Management Inflow	1. Actual Value Date 2. Cashflow Date
Cash Management Outflow	1. Actual Value Date 2. Cashflow Date

Overdue Transactions In Cash Positioning

You have the flexibility to include or exclude overdue transactions for all appropriate source transaction types in your cash positions. Including overdue transactions gives you an accurate representation of potential cash inflows and outflows. Overdue transactions are open transactions with a cash activity date before the cash position As of Date.

Overdue transactions are collected and displayed on the Overdue Transactions line of the Cash Position Results page. Overdue transactions apply to the source types described below. You can specify on each worksheet whether to include overdue transactions for the applicable source types. If you choose to do so, you must also specify the Cutoff Period, which determines how far back in time to include overdue transactions.

The following table contains cash forecasting overdue transaction sources:

Type	Definition
Supplier Payments	Payments scheduled to have been cleared before the position date, but that are still uncleared.
Customer Receipts	Receipts scheduled to have been cleared before the position date, but that are still uncleared.
Treasury Inflow	Treasury transactions scheduled to have been cleared before the position date, but that are still uncleared.
Treasury Outflow	Treasury transactions scheduled to have been cleared before the position date, but that are still uncleared.

Type	Definition
Cash Management Inflow	Cash Management transactions scheduled to have been cleared before the position date, but that are still uncleared
Cash Management Outflow	Cash Management transactions scheduled to have been cleared before the position date, but that are still uncleared.

Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions Program

To expedite the generation of a cash position, you can run the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program before you submit you cash position. If you specify the option to use calculated prior day cash flows and overdue transactions for the cash position results, the Cash Positioning program will use the pre-calculated prior day and overdue transactions balances. To create these pre-calculated prior day cash flow and overdue transactions balances, you must run the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program prior to generating your cash position. You can run the program manually or you can have the program run automatically according to the schedule you define. In addition to calculating prior day and overdue transactions balances, the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program will purge old summary data.

Submitting the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions Program

To run the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program according to a schedule:

1. Navigate to the Submit Requests window.
2. Select the Submit a New Request button.
3. Select Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program.
4. Leave all the parameters blank.
5. Click the Schedule button. Either apply a saved schedule by clicking on the Apply a Saved Schedule button or select Periodically and assign a start time. Schedule it to run every day/nightly. If you are creating a new schedule, you might want to save it. You may need to check the Increment Date Parameters Each Run checkbox if you are scheduling multiple nightly tasks for multiple as of dates.

To Run the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program manually:

You can submit Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions

concurrent program manually to calculate summary prior day cash flow and overdue transaction balances.

1. Navigate to the Submit Requests window.
2. Click the Submit a New Request button.
3. Select to run the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program.
4. Enter the Worksheet Name and the As of Date.

Cash Position Worksheet Page Reference

Cash Position Worksheet Page - Inflow Source Type Characteristics

The following table contains the legend for the Cash Inflow Source Types table.

	Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics	
R = Required	ARR = Customer Receipts	OII = Open Interface Inflow
O = Optional	XTRI = Treasury Inflow	CEI = Cash Management Inflow
Y = Required if Include Overdue Transactions is Yes	UDI = User-Defined Inflow	

The following table displays characteristics, such as required or optional, of the applicable fields for each source type you can enter in the Cash Position Worksheet page.

	ARR	**XTRI**	**UDI**	**OII**	**CEI**
Description	O	O	O	O	O
Bank Account			R		
Transaction Type		O			

	ARR	XTRI	UDI	OII	CEI
Include Indicative Exposures?		R			
External Source Type				R	
Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield				O	
Receipt Method	O				O
Transaction Subtype					
Include Cleared Transactions?	R	R			R
Include Overdue Transactions?	R	R			R
Cut Off Days	Y	Y			Y
Amount			R		

Cash Position Worksheet Rows Page - Outflow Source Type Characteristics

The following table contains the legend for the Cash Outflow Source Types table.

	Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics	
R = Required	APP = Supplier Payments	UDO = User-Defined Outflow

	Legend for Inflow/Outflow Source Type Characteristics	
O = Optional	PAY = Payroll Expenses	OIO = Open Interface Outflow
Y = Required if Include Overdue Transactions is Yes	XTRO = Treasury Outflow	CEO = Cash Management Outflow

The following table displays characteristics, such as required or optional, of the applicable fields for each source type you can enter in the Cash Position Worksheet page.

	APP	PAY	XTRO	UDO	OIO	CEO
Description	O	O	O	O	O	O
Business Group		O				
Payroll Name		O				
Bank Account				R		
Include Indicative Exposures?			R			
Transaction Type			O			
External Source Type					R	
Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive Flexfield					O	

	APP	PAY	XTRO	UDO	OIO	CEO
Receipt Method	O	O				
Transaction Subtype						O
Include Cleared Transactions?	R		R			R
Include Overdue Transactions?	R		R			R
Cut Off Days	Y		Y			Y
Amount				R		

Worksheet Details

Worksheet Name. A unique name for your cash position worksheet.

Number of Columns Displayed in Results. The number of columns that should be displayed in each page of your cash position results. The default is 20.

Use Calculated Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions Balances. Indicates if you want to use calculated or real-time prior day cash flow and and overdue transactions balances. The default is No.

Bank Account Balance

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Legal Entity. (Optional) A legal entity that you want to generate the cash position for. You can select a legal entity or leave this field blank to collect source data for all legal entities. You can have multiple rows of a bank account balance in your worksheet. Each row can be for a different legal entity, or you can have one row represent all legal entities.

Bank. (Optional) The bank whose transactions you want to include in the cash position .

You can select a bank name or leave this field blank to include all banks.

Bank Account. (Optional) The bank account whose transactions you want to include in the cash position. You can select a bank account or leave the Bank Account field blank to include all bank accounts. The list of values is controlled by Cash Management Security. See: Cash Management Security.

> **Important:** If you selected a bank name in the Bank field and/or a legal entity, you should include bank accounts that belong to the selected bank and legal entity.

Balance Type. (Required) Select a value in this field to indicate the type of balance to be used for the opening balance of the bank accounts included in the cash pool. Options include: Available Balance, Value Dated Balance, and Ledger Balance.

Float Type. (Required) Select a value in this field to adjust your opening bank account balance. Options include: Add One Day Float, Add Two Day Float, None, Subtract One Day Float, and Subtract Two Day Float.

Cash Pools

Cash Pool Name. The name of the cash pool.

Balance Type. (Required) The type of balance to be used for the opening balance for the bank accounts included in the cash pool. Options include: Available Balance, Value Dated Balance, and Ledger Balance.

Float Type. (Required) Select a value in this field to adjust the opening balance of the bank accounts included in the cash pool. Options include: Add One Day Float, Add Two Day Float, None, and Subtract Two Day Float.

Intra-Day Activities

Include intra-day activities in the Cash Position. Choose to include or exclude intra-day activities from the cash position results. Choices include No, Display but do not include in closing balance, and Display and include in closing balance.

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Transaction Type. The type of transactions that you want to include in your cash position for the intra-day activities source. Choices include: All, Misc. Payment, Misc. Receipt, Not Sufficient Funds, Payment, Receipt, Rejected, Statement, and Stopped.

Customer Receipts

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Payment Method. (Optional) The user-defined Receivables choice to account for receipt entries and applications.

Include Cleared Transactions? (Optional) Indicates if you want to include transactions that have been cleared on the As of Date.

Include Overdue Transactions? (Optional) Indicates if you want to include or exclude open transactions that have a cash activity date before the cash position As of Date.

Cut Off Days. If you choose to include overdue transactions, you must enter a value in the Cut Off Days field. The cut off days determines how far back to include overdue transactions.

> **Important:** Transaction volume increases with an increase in the cutoff period. If you choose a cutoff period that is very long, and you are including many historical transactions, then the position may take longer to generate.

Treasury Inflow and Outflow

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Transaction Type. The type of transactions that you want to include in your cash position for the Treasury Inflow and Outflow sources. The list of values displays the transaction types that are seeded in Oracle Treasury.

Include Indicative Exposures. For Treasury Inflow and Outflow, if you select Yes, you can include transactions in the cash position as follows:

- **Yes.** Indicative. Include all transactions including those that may or may not occur.
- **No.** Firm. Include only transactions that definitely have occurred or will occur.

Include Cleared Transactions? (Optional) Indicates if you want to include transactions that have been cleared on the As of Date.

Include Overdue Transactions? (Optional) Indicates if you want to include or exclude open transactions that have a cash activity date before the cash position As of Date.

Cut Off Days. If you chose to include overdue transactions, you must enter a value in the Cut Off Days field. The value you enter in the Cut Off Days field determines how far back to include overdue transactions.

> **Important:** Transaction volume increases with an increase in the cutoff period. If you choose a cutoff period that is very long and you are including many historical transactions, then the position may take longer to generate.

Open Interface Inflow and Outflow

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

External Source Type. (Required) Indicates the user-defined external source type for Open Interface Inflow or Open Interface Outflow. The list of values is from the Context field of the Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive flexfield you created during setup of the External Cashflow Open Interface.

Forecast Selection Criteria. (Required) The descriptive flexfield that indicates the external forecast selection criteria based on the external source type you entered in the previous field for Open Interface Inflow or Open Interface Outflow sources. The list of values is from the segments you defined for the Forecast Selection Criteria Descriptive flexfield.

User-Defined Inflow and Outflow

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Amount. (Required)The amount of the user-defined inflow and outflow.

Bank Account. (Required) The bank account to which the user-defined inflow and outflow amounts belong. This should be a bank account that you have previously selected for inclusion in your cash position in the Bank Account Balance section.

Supplier Payments

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Payment Method. (Optional) Payment methods predefined in Oracle Payables for how suppliers' invoices can be paid. Choices include: Check, Electronic, Wire, Future Dated, Manual Future Dated, and Clearing.

Include Cleared Transactions? (Optional) Indicates if you want to include transactions that have been cleared on the As of Date.

Include Overdue Transactions? (Optional) Indicates if you want to include or exclude open transactions that have a cash activity date before the cash position As of Date.

Cut Off Days. If you chose to include overdue transactions, you must enter a value in the Cut Off Days field. The value you enter in the Cut Off Days field determines how far back to include overdue transactions.

Important: Transaction volume increases with an increase in the cutoff

period. If you choose a cutoff period that is very long and you are including many historical transactions, then the position may take longer to generate.

Payroll Expenses

Description. (Optional) A description of the source type. The information you enter here may be useful when you have multiple rows with the same source type, but different criteria.

Payroll Name. (Optional) Indicates the name of the payroll to include in the cash position. Leave this field blank to include cash flows from all payrolls.

Payment Method. (Optional) Predefined and user-defined payment methods in Oracle Payroll for how employees' payroll can be paid. Predefined choices include: Cash, Check, And NACHA (National Automated C;earing House Association).

Generating Cash Positions From Worksheets

A cash position worksheet contains rows that define transaction sources and columns that display either currencies or bank accounts included in the cash position. You can define reusable worksheets for generating cash positions.

When you submit a cash position, Cash Management collects the necessary source data and summarizes the information as cash position amounts, based on the cash position worksheet specifications. The cash position data is then available for update, inquiry, viewing in a Discoverer Workbook, or for export to a spreadsheet application.

You can generate a new cash position because you have created a new worksheet, or because you want to recalculate a cash position with different submission parameters.

To generate a cash position from a new worksheet:

1. After you create a new worksheet, click Apply. See: Creating a Cash Position Worksheet, page 7-2
2. Click Generate Cash Position in the Confirmation page.
3. In the Generate Cash Position page select appropriate values for the submission parameters. See: Generate Cash Position Page Reference, page 7-15
4. Select Continue to generate the cash position.

To generate a cash position from an already existing worksheet:

1. Query an existing worksheet in the Cash Position Worksheet Search and Results

page.

2. Select the Generate Cash Position icon corresponding to the worksheet you want to use.

3. In the Generate Cash Position page, select appropriate values for the submission parameters. See:Generate Cash Position Page Reference, page 7-15

4. Select Continue to generate the cash position.

Generate Cash Position Page Reference

As of Date. The date for which you want to generate the cash position. The default value is the system date.

Factor. Indicates the way amounts are displayed in the cash position.

Currency. The currency for the source transactions for which you want to generate a cash position. Leave this field blank to include all currencies in your cash position.

View By. Indicates how to display the cash position results. Choices include Bank Account, Currency, and Cash Pool.

Include Subsidiary's Bank Account Balance. If you have subsidiary bank accounts set up in Oracle Treasury, you can choose to include the bank account balances of the subsidiary bank accounts in your cash position. Subsidiary bank account balances are summarized by currency and added to the opening balance of the appropriate currency in the Cash Position Results by Currency page. The subsidiary bank account balances are displayed in a separate section below the cash position results when you view the cash position results by bank account.

Calculation Of Opening and Closing Bank Account Balances in Cash Positioning

The opening bank account balance displayed in the cash position results is the previous day's closing bank account balance for that bank account.

The balance type and the float type used in calculating the opening balance is determined by the selections made in the cash position worksheet.

If the previous day's closing balance is not available, then the latest available bank account balances are displayed instead. In this case, the cash position results also display a Prior Day Cashflows row that includes transactions between the latest available balance date and the Cash Position As of Date.

The closing balance is calculated as Opening Balance + Prior Day Cash Flows + Net Cash Flow.

For cash pools included in the cash position, the opening balance is the sum of the previous day's balances or the last available balance for all the bank accounts included in the cash pool.

You can also define target balances for bank accounts. These target balances are displayed in the cash position and help you determine the surplus or deficit balance for bank accounts that you include in your cash position. For more information on target balances defined in the Company Profiles window in Oracle Treasury, please refer to the *Oracle Treasury User Guide*.

Balance Gapping in Cash Positioning

A balance gap arises when you have gaps in your cash flows between the current system date and your defined until date. This gap can occur under the following circumstances:

- You begin with a negative balance and need to borrow money. The balance gap occurs because you don't know when you will receive sufficient funds to pay off part or all of the loan.

- You have a positive balance, and you invest the money. The balance gap occurs because you don't know when you will need part or all of that money to cover future obligations.

Knowing when a balance gap occurs is crucial to effectively handle the funds you loaned or invested. You can use the View Balance Gapping window/page, to manage your balance gaps.

To reduce your balance gapping results, enter amount ranges that meet your cashflow requirements. The balance gapping results incorporate real time data from Oracle Treasury.

To view balance gapping information:

1. In the Cash Position Results page, choose the View Balance Gapping button. The View Balance Gapping page appears.

2. Select a currency for which you want to view the balance gaps.

3. Select a previously run cash forecast in the Forecast Name field. The forecast selected here will be used to populate the net cash flow data from Oracle Payables, Oracle Receivables and Oracle Payroll. Cashflows from Oracle Treasury will be obtained directly. This field is optional for Oracle Treasury users (if you only want to include cashflows from Oracle Treasury), but it is required for non-Treasury Users.

4. In the Start Date and End Date fields, enter the dates between which you want to view your balance gaps.

5. (Optional) Select a legal entity for which you want to view your balance gaps. To view balance gaps for all legal entities, leave this field blank.

6. (Optional) Select a bank account for which you want to view your balance gaps. To view balance gaps for all bank accounts, leave this field blank.

7. In the Balance From and To fields, enter an amount range for the balance gap that you want to view. To view all balance gaps, leave these fields blank.

   Tip: If you borrowed money to cover a negative balance, enter a number equal to or greater than zero in the Balances From field. By entering a larger number, you accept a larger balance gap. If you had a positive balance and invested the money, enter a number equal to or less than zero in the To field. By entering a larger negative number, you accept a larger balance gap.

8. Choose the Refresh Gapping Data button to generate balance gapping.

9. You can view the details of the gapping results in a Discoverer Workbook by selecting the View in Discoverer Workbook button. See: Viewing Cash Positions in Discoverer, page 7-36

Available Liquidity

If you are a Oracle Treasury User, the cash position results also include an Available Liquidity section that displays your current position by currency in Short Term Money, Discounted Securities and Fixed Income Securities.

You can click on the amounts displayed for each deal type to drill down to the details of the underlying deals.

For more information on deal types, please refer to the *Oracle Treasury User Guide*. In the Short Term Money Details page, you can view the details of the short term money deals and access the Short Term Money window in Oracle Treasury by clicking on the Manage Short Term Money button. In the Fixed Income Securities Details page, you can view the details of the fixed income securities deals and access the Fixed Income Securities window or the Fixed Income Securities for Resale/Repurchase window in Oracle Treasury by clicking on the Create Fixed Income Securities Deal or Resell Fixed Income Securities Deal button respectively. In the Discounted Securities Details page, you can view the details of the discounted securities deals and access the Discounted Securities window or the Discounted Securities Resales window in Oracle Treasury by clicking on the Create Discounted Securities Deal or Resell Discounted Securities Deal button respectively.

Generating a Cash Leveling Proposal

If your cash position includes cash pools, you can select to generate a cash leveling proposal from the Cash Position Results Page, in the Bank Account View Page or Cash Pool View Page. The Cash Leveling Proposal is calculated online based on the Sub Account target balances and transfer amount calculation rules.

For notional cash pools and physical cash pools with bank initiated sweeps, you can use the cash leveling proposal to approximate the projected closing balance of the concentration account so that the investment or funding decisions could be made from the concentration account based on the projection. By clicking the Apply button, the composition results are displayed.

For physical cash pools that do not have bank initiated sweeps, you have the option to generate Intercompany Funding Transactions and/or Inter-Account transfers from the cash leveling proposal. These transfers can then be included in the payment file and sent to the bank through Oracle Treasury.

You can select transfers for which you want to generate transfers in Oracle Treasury and click the Apply button. This will display a Warning page, where you will be provided with the options of submitting the Generate Cash Leveling Transfers concurrent request to generate inter-account and intercompany fund transfers in Oracle Treasury. For more information, see Cash Leveling in Chapter 2 of the Oracle Treasury User Guide.

Subsidiary bank accounts that are part of the cash pool are included in the cash leveling proposal. However, since the projected closing balance is not calculated for subsidiary bank accounts, the opening balance is used in calculations instead. You can update the transfer amount calculated and click the Recalculate New Closing Balance button to recalculate the closing balances.

The Transfer Amount will be calculated as follows:

- For notional cash pools, the Transfer Amount is equal to the difference between zero and the Closing Balances (as calculated on the Cash Position for the Sub Accounts).

  For example, if the projected closing balance for a Sub Account in a Notional Cash Pool is -150,000.00, then the transfer amount between the Sub Account and the Concentration Account will be 150,000.00. The New Closing Balance for the Sub Account will be zero. The New Closing Balance of the Concentration Account will be the Closing Balance (as calculated on the Cash Position for this account) plus the Transfer Amount with the opposite sign, which in this case is equal to -150,000.00.

- For physical cash pools, the Transfer Amount is equal to the difference between the Closing Balances (as calculated on the Cash Position for the Sub Accounts) and the nearest target balance (if the projected balance is outside of the target range), adjusted for the Rounding Factor, Rounding Rule, and Minimum Receipt/Payment Amount.

  In case where there are two concentration accounts, the calculation of the Transfer Amount is the same as in the case where there is only one concentration account. The only difference is in the destination of the transfer amount. The payments from the Sub Account will go to the Investment Concentration Account and the receipts to the Sub Account will originate from the Funding Concentration Account.

  For sub accounts belonging to the subsidiaries, since there is not Projected Closing

Balance calculated, the opening balance (as displayed on Cash Position) will be used instead.

Example 1

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = -150,005.15
- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00
- Minimum Target Balance = 50,000.00
- Maximum Target Balance = 100,000.00
- Minimum Payment Amount = 100
- Minimum Receipt Amount = 1000
- Rounding Factor = 10
- Rounding Rule = Nearest
- Transfer Amount: The difference between 50,000 and -150,005.15 is 200,005.15. Rounded to the factor of 10 and using the "Nearest" rounding rule this amount is transformed to 200,010.00. This amount is greater than the Minimum Payment/Receipt Amounts. Therefore, the Transfer Amount = 200,010.00. New Closing Balance for this Sub Account is -150,005.15 + 200,010.00 = 50,004.85.
- The New Closing Balance of the Concentration Account will be the Closing Balance (as calculated on the Cash Position for this account) plus the Transfer Amount with the opposite sign: 10,000 - 200,010.00 = -190,010.00.

Example 2

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = 150,155.15
- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00
- Minimum Target Balance = 50,000.00
- Maximum Target Balance = 100,000.00
- Minimum Payment Amount = 100
- Minimum Receipt Amount = 1000
- Rounding Factor = 100
- Rounding Rule = Round Down

- Transfer Amount: The difference between 100,000 and 150,155.15 is -50,155.15. Rounded to the factor of 100 and using the "Round Down" rounding rule this amount is transformed to -50,100.00. This amount is greater than the Minimum Payment/Receipt Amounts. Therefore, the Transfer Amount = -50,100.00. New Closing Balance for this Sub Account is 150,155.15 - 50,100.00 = 100,055.15.

- The New Closing Balance of the Concentration Account will be the Closing Balance (as calculated on the Cash Position for this account) plus the Transfer Amount with the opposite sign: 10,000 + 50,100.00 = 60,100.00.

Example 3

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = 60,000.00

- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00

- Minimum Target Balance = 50,000.00

- Maximum Target Balance = 100,000.00

- Minimum Payment Amount = 100

- Minimum Receipt Amount = 1000

- Rounding Factor = 100

- Rounding Rule = Round Down

- Transfer Amount: The projected closing balance (60,000.00) falls within the target balance range (50,000 - 100,000), therefore, no transfer is required and the Transfer Amount will be set to zero.

Example 4

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = 49,995.00

- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00

- Minimum Target Balance = 50,000.00

- Maximum Target Balance = 100,000.00

- Minimum Payment Amount = 100

- Minimum Receipt Amount = 1000

- Rounding Factor = 100

- Rounding Rule = Round Down

- Transfer Amount: The difference between 50,000 and 49,995 is 5. Rounded to the factor of 100 and using the "Round Down" rounding rule this amount is transformed to 0. This amount is less than the Minimum Payment/Receipt Amounts. Therefore, no transfer is required and the Transfer Amount will be set to zero.

Example 5

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = 49,995.00
- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00
- Minimum Target Balance = 50,000.00
- Maximum Target Balance = 100,000.00
- Minimum Payment Amount = 100
- Minimum Receipt Amount = 1000
- Rounding Factor = Unit
- Rounding Rule = Nearest
- Transfer Amount: The difference between 50,000 and 49,995 is 5. Rounded to the factor of Unit and using the "Nearest" rounding rule this amount is transformed to 5. This is a receipt to the Sub Account and it is less than the Minimum Receipt Amount. Therefore, no transfer is required and the Transfer Amount will be set to zero.

Example 6

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = 100,005.16
- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00
- Minimum Target Balance = 50,000.00
- Maximum Target Balance = 100,000.00
- Minimum Payment Amount = 100
- Minimum Receipt Amount = 1000
- Rounding Factor = Unit
- Rounding Rule = Nearest
- Transfer Amount: The difference between 100,000 and 100,005,16 is -5.16. Rounded

to the factor of Unit and using the "Nearest" rounding rule this amount is transformed to -5.16. This is a payment from the Sub Account and it is less than the Minimum Payment Amount. Therefore, no transfer is required and the Transfer Amount will be set to zero.

Example 7

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = 100,005.16
- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00
- Minimum Target Balance = 0
- Maximum Target Balance = 0
- Minimum Payment Amount = null
- Minimum Receipt Amount = null
- Rounding Factor = Unit
- Rounding Rule = Nearest
- Transfer Amount: The difference between 0 and 100,005,16 is -100,005.16. Rounded to the factor of Unit and using the "Nearest" rounding rule this amount is transformed to -100,005.16. This is a payment from the Sub Account and there are no minimum requirements for the payment amount. Therefore, the Transfer Amount = -100,005.16. New Closing Balance for this Sub Account is = 100,005.16 - 100,005.16 = 0.
- The New Closing Balance of the Concentration Account will be the Closing Balance (as calculated on the Cash Position for this account) plus the Transfer Amount with the opposite sign: 10,000 + 100,005.16 = 110,005.16.

Example 8

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = 100,005.16
- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00
- Projected Closing Balance for the Funding Concentration Account = 5,000.00
- Minimum Target Balance = 0
- Maximum Target Balance = 0
- Minimum Payment Amount = null
- Minimum Receipt Amount = null

- Rounding Factor = Unit
- Rounding Rule = Nearest
- Transfer Amount: The difference between 0 and 100,005,16 is -100,005.16. Rounded to the factor of Unit and using the "Nearest" rounding rule this amount is transformed to -100,005.16. This is a payment from the Sub Account (therefore, it will go to the Investment Concentration Account) and there are no minimum requirements for the payment amount. Therefore, the Transfer Amount = -100,005.16. New Closing Balance for this Sub Account is = 100,005.16 - 100,005.16 = 0.
- The New Closing Balance of the Investment Concentration Account will be the Closing Balance (as calculated on the Cash Position for this account) plus the Transfer Amount with the opposite sign: 10,000 + 100,005.16 = 110,005.16. This transfer will not affect the New Closing Balance of the Funding Concentration Account, which will still be equal to 5,000.00.

Example 9

- Projected Closing Balance for a Sub Account in a Physical Cash Pool = -400.00
- Projected Closing Balance for the Concentration Account = 10,000.00
- Projected Closing Balance for the Funding Concentration Account = 5,000.00
- Minimum Target Balance = 0
- Maximum Target Balance = 0
- Minimum Payment Amount = null
- Minimum Receipt Amount = null
- Rounding Factor = Unit
- Rounding Rule = Nearest
- Transfer Amount: The difference between 0 and -400 is 400. Rounded to the factor of Unit and using the "Nearest" rounding rule this amount is transformed to 400. This is a receipt to the Sub Account (therefore, it will originate from the Funding Concentration Account) and there are no minimum requirements for the receipt amount. Therefore, the Transfer Amount = 400. New Closing Balance for this Sub Account is -400 + 400 = 0.
- The New Closing Balance of the Funding Concentration Account will be the Closing Balance (as calculated on the Cash Position for this account) plus the Transfer Amount with the opposite sign: 5,000 - 400 = 4,600.00. This transfer will not

affect the New Closing Balance of the Investment Concentration Account, which will still be equal to 10,000.

Viewing Cash Position Results

When you generate a cash position, your cash position results are displayed by currency, by bank account, or by cash pools, depending on your selection in the View By field in the Generate Cash Position page. You can switch among the three views by selecting the appropriate value in the View By field and clicking on the Refresh Data button. Cash Management displays the cash position results in a spreadsheet format with the rows representing the cash flows and the balances and the columns representing either bank accounts, currencies, or cash pools.

The cash position results displayed on this page represent only those transactions that are associated with bank accounts to which the current user has Bank Account Access security enabled. See: Bank Account Access Security within the UMX wizard.

Cash Position Results: Currency View Page

In the Cash Position Results: Currency View page, the results of your cash position are displayed by currency with each column representing a currency included in your position. If you chose to include subsidiary bank account balances in your cash position, they are added to the opening balance for the currency which corresponds to the subsidiary bank account's currency. This page also displays the available liquidity for Oracle Treasury users.

In the Cash Position Results: Currency View page, you can do the following:

- View the opening balance, cash flows, net cash flow, projected closing balance, target balance, and the difference between the projected closing balance and the target balance by currency.

- Modify your cash position results by modifying the values for any of the following parameters: As of Date, Currency, Legal Entity, Currency Range, View By, and Include Subsidiary's Bank Account Balance, and clicking on the Refresh Data button.

- Drill down to the details of the source transactions by clicking on an amount. This brings up the Source Transaction Details page that displays all the transactions that make up the cash position amount. See: Source Transaction Details Page Reference, page 7-28

- Drill down to the details of the intra-day activities by clicking on the intra-day activities amount. This brings up the Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Details page which displays all the intra-day transactions as well as all the transactions included in your cash position from various sources that make up the net cash flow amount. See: Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Detail Page

Reference, page 7-32

- Generate balance gapping by clicking on the View Balance Gapping button. See: Balance Gapping in Cash Positioning, page 7-16

- Export the cash position results to an external application like Excel by clicking the Export button. See: Exporting Cash Position Results to Your Spreadsheet Application, page 7-36

- Access the Bank Account Transfers page in Oracle Cash Management by selecting the Initiate Bank Account Transfer button.

- Access the Inter-Account Transfers window in Oracle Treasury by selecting the Initiate Funds Transfer button. This option is only available to Oracle Treasury users.

- View the details of the cash position in a Discoverer workbook by selecting the View in Discoverer Workbook button. This option is available only if Oracle Discoverer is installed.

- Drill down to the details of the transactions corresponding to the deal types of short term money, discounted securities and fixed income securities in the Available Liquidity section by clicking on the amount. This section is displayed only for Oracle Treasury users. See: *Oracle Treasury User Guide,* andAvailable Liquidity Details, page 7-36

Cash Position Results: Bank Account View Page

In the Cash Position Results: Bank Account page, the results of your cash position are displayed by bank account with each column representing a bank account included in your position. If you chose to include subsidiary bank account balances in your cash position, they are summarized by currency and displayed in a separate section below the cash position results.

In the Cash Position Results: Bank Account View page, you can do the following:

- View the opening balance, cash flows, net cash flow, projected closing balance, target balance , and the difference between the projected closing balance and the target balance by bank account.

- Modify your cash position results by modifying the values for any of the following parameters: As of Date, Currency, Legal Entity, Bank Account Range, View By, and Include Subsidiary's Bank Account Balance, and clicking on the Refresh Data button.

- Drill down to the details of the source transactions by clicking on an amount. This brings up the Source Transaction Details page that displays all the transactions that

make up the cash position amount.

- Drill down to the details of the intra-day activities by clicking on the intra-day activities amount. This brings up the Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Details page which displays the intra-day transactions as well as all the transactions included in your cash position from various sources that make up the net cash flow amount.

- Generate balance gapping by clicking on the View Balance Gapping button.

- Export the cash position results to an external application like Excel by clicking the Export button.

- Access the Bank Account Transfers page in Oracle Cash Management by selecting the Initiate Bank Account Transfer button.

- Access the Inter-Account Transfers window in Oracle Treasury by selecting the Initiate Funds Transfer button. This option is only available to Oracle Treasury users.

- Save projected balances to the Balances table by selecting the Save Projected Balances button.

- View the details of the cash position in a Discoverer workbook by selecting the View in Discoverer Workbook button. This option is available only if Oracle Discoverer is installed. See: Viewing Cash Positions in Discoverer, page 7-36

- Drill down to the details of the transaction corresponding to the deal types of short term money, discounted securities and fixed income securities in the Available Liquidity section by clicking on an amount. This section is only displayed for Oracle Treasury users. See: *Oracle Treasury User Guide* and Available Liquidity Details, page 7-33

Cash Position Results: Cash Pool View Page

In the Cash Position Results: Cash Pool page, the results of your cash position are displayed by cash pool with each column representing the cash pools or individual bank accounts included in your position. If you chose to include subsidiary bank account balances in your cash position, they are summarized by currency and displayed in a separate section below the cash position results.

In the Cash Position Results: Cash Pool page, you can do the following:

- View the opening balance, cash flows, net cash flow, projected closing balance, target balance, and the difference between the projected closing balance and the target balance by cash pool.

- Modify your cash position results by modifying the values for any of the following parameters: As of Date, Currency, Company, Cash Pool Range, View By, and Include Subsidiary's Bank Account Balance, and clicking on the Refresh Data button.

- Drill down to the details of the source transactions by clicking on an amount. This brings up the Source Transaction Details page that displays all the transactions that make up the cash position amount.

- Generate balance gapping by clicking on the View Balance Gapping button.

- Export the cash position results to an external application like Excel by clicking the Export button.

- Access the Bank Account Transfers page in Oracle Cash Management by selecting the Initiate Bank Account Transfer button.

- Access the Inter-Account Transfers window in Oracle Treasury by selecting the Initiate Funds Transfer button. This option is only available to Oracle Treasury users.

- Drill down to the details of the transaction corresponding to the deal types of short term money, discounted securities and fixed income securities in the Available Liquidity section by clicking on an amount. This section is only displayed for Oracle Treasury users. See: *Oracle Treasury User Guide* and Available Liquidity Details, page 7-33

- Generate a cash leveling proposal.

Cash Position Results Page: Currency View, Bank Account View, and Cash Pool View Reference

As of Date. Indicates the date for which the cash position is generated.

Factor. Indicates the way amounts are displayed in the forecast.

Currency. The currency for which the cash position results are displayed. The value here defaults from the value selected for the currency field in the Generate Cash Position page. If no value was selected for this field in the Generate Cash Position page, then this field will be blank.

Legal Entity. The legal entity for which the cash position results are displayed.

Currency Range. If the number of columns in your cash position results by currency exceeds the number of columns you specified in the cash position worksheet, the results are displayed in multiple pages. You can navigate between the pages by selecting a value in this field and clicking the Refresh Data button.

Bank Account Range. If the number of columns in your cash position results by bank

account exceeds the number of columns you specified in the cash position worksheet, the results are displayed in multiple pages. You can navigate between the pages by selecting a value in this field and clicking the Refresh Data button.

View By. Indicates whether the cash position results are displayed by currency, by bank account, or by cash pool. You can select the appropriate option in this field and click on the Refresh Data button to view the cash position results by the selected option.

Source Transaction Details Page Reference

The following table contains the legend for the Source Transaction Details Column Reference table.

	Legend for Cash Positioning Source Transaction Details Column Reference: Inflows	
S = Summary section	ARR = Customer Receipts	CEI = Cash Management Inflow
D = Detail section	XTRI = Treasury Inflow	

The following table contains the source transaction details column reference for cash inflow.

Column	ARR	XTRI	CEI
Cash Activity Date	S	S	S
Transaction Currency	S	S	S
Transaction Amount	S	S	S
Organization	D		
Receipt Number	S		
Bank Account Currency	S	S	S
Bank Account Amount	S	S	S

Column	ARR	XTRI	CEI
Status	D		D
Deal Number		S	
Deal Type		S	
Counterparty		S	
Amount Type		S	
Deal Subtype		D	
Transaction Number		S	
Cashflow Number			S
Bank Account Name			D
Bank Account Number			D
Description			D
Counterparty Name			D
Counterparty Bank Account			D
Transaction Subtype			D
Legal Entity		D	D
Receipt Method	D		
Product Type		D	
Portfolio Code		D	

The following table contains the legend for the Source Transaction Details Column Reference table.

	Legend for Cash Positioning Source Transaction Details Column Reference: Outflows	
S = Summary section	APP = Supplier Payments	XTRO = Treasury Outflow
D = Detail section	PAY = Payroll Expenses	CEO = Cash Management Outflow

The following table contains the cash positioning source transaction details column reference for cash outflow.

Column	APP	PAY	XTRO	CEO
Cash Activity Date	S	S	S	S
Transaction Currency	S	S	S	S
Transaction Amount	S	S	S	S
Payment Priority	D			
Supplier Type	D			
Pay Group	D			
Organization	D			
Payment Number	S			
Bank Account Currency	S	S	S	S
Bank Account Amount	S	S	S	S
Status	D			D

Column	APP	PAY	XTRO	CEO
Payment Method	D	D		
Payroll Name		S		
Business Group		D		
Deal Number			S	
Deal Type			S	
Counterparty			S	
Amount Type			S	
Deal Subtype			D	
Transaction Number			S	
Cashflow Number				S
Bank Account Name				D
Bank Account Number				D
Description				D
Counterparty Name				D
Counterparty Bank Account				D
Transaction Subtype				D
Legal Entity			D	D

Column	APP	PAY	XTRO	CEO
Product Type			D	
Portfolio Code			D	

Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Detail Page Reference

Legend for Cash Positioning Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Details

- S = Summary section
- D = Detail Section
- IDA = Intra-Day Activities
- NCF = Net Cash Flow

The following table contains the intra-day activities and net cash flow details column reference.

Column	IDA	NCF
Cash Activity Date	S	S
Transaction Currency	S	S
Transaction Amount	S	S
Transaction Number	S	S
Organization		D
Bank Account Currency	S	S
Bank Account Amount	S	S
Status		D
Line Number	S	
Payment Method		D

Column	IDA	NCF
Transaction Type	S	S
Exchange Rate Type	D	
Exchange Rate	D	
Agent	D	
Agent Bank Account	D	
Invoice Number	D	
Value Date	D	
Description	D	

Available Liquidity Section Details

The following table contains the legend for the Short Term Money, Fixed Income Securities, and the Discounted Securities Details pages table.

	Legend for Short Term Money, Fixed Income Securities, and the Discounted Securities Details Pages Table	
S = Summary section	STM = Short Term Money	FIS = Fixed Income Securities
D = Detail section	DS = Discounted Securities	

The following table contains the Short Term Money, Fixed Income Securities, and the Discounted Securities Details pages.

Column	STM	DS	FIS
Deal Number	S	S	S

Column	STM	DS	FIS
Portfolio	S	S	S
Deal Subtype	S	S	S
Product Type	S	S	S
Rate	S	S	S
Maturity Date	S	S	S
Balance	S	S	S
Transaction Number	D	D	D
Face Value	D	D	D
Rate Basis	D	D	D
Start Date	D	D	D
Deal Date	D	D	D
Counterparty	D	D	D

Modifying Cash Position Worksheets and Cash Position Results

You can, with some limitations, modify cash position worksheets and cash position results.

Modifying Cash Position Worksheets

To query existing cash position worksheets:

1. Navigate to the Cash Position Search and Results page.
2. (Optional) Enter a partial or full Worksheet Name.
3. Click Go. Cash Management displays all worksheets that match your search criteria.
4. Click on the worksheet name in the Cash Position Worksheet Results table to view

the details.

To modify a cash position worksheet:

1. Query an existing cash position worksheet (see above).
2. You can modify any of the information for the cash position worksheet by selecting the Update icon corresponding to your worksheet.

Modifying Amounts on a Cash Position

To modify amounts on a cash position:

1. Query an existing cash position worksheet (see above).
2. Click on the Generate Cash Position icon. The Generate Cash Position page appears.
3. Select appropriate values for the parameters and click on the Continue button to generate the cash position.
4. Click on the amount corresponding to a transaction source for the bank account or currency in the cash position results that you want to modify. The Source Transaction Details page appears.
5. You can choose to exclude transactions by disabling the Include checkbox that corresponds to the transaction.

To generate exposures in Oracle Treasury:

1. Query an existing cash position worksheet (see above).
2. Click on the Generate Cash Position icon. The Generate Cash Position page appears.
3. Select appropriate values for the parameters and click on the Continue button to generate the cash position.
4. Click on the amount corresponding to the currency or bank account for which you want to generate exposures in the Intra-Day Activities row. The Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Details page appears.
5. You can choose to generate exposures in Oracle Treasury by selecting one or more intra-day transactions and clicking on the Generate Exposures button.
6. The Generate Exposures page appears, where you can enter details for the selected exposure transactions and click Apply to generate exposures and return to the Intra-Day Activities and Net Cash Flow Details page

Important: This feature is available only to Oracle Treasury users.

Exporting Cash Position Results to Your Spreadsheet Application

You can transfer cash position results to you spreadsheet application. Excel can be used to manipulate information for analysis and graphical representation. Use the Export button in the Cash Position Results page to export cash positions from Cash Management to Microsoft Excel. This option is available only on the Windows platform, and only if Excel is installed.

To export cash position results to Excel:

1. Navigate to the Cash Position Worksheets Search and Results page.
2. Generate a cash position See: Generating a Cash Position, page 7-14
3. In the Cash Position Results page, click on the Export button. The Save dialogue box appears.
4. Enter the file name and select the file type to export the results.
5. Click Save.
6. You can make modifications to your cash position results in your spreadsheet application.

   Note: Saving in your spreadsheet application does not save an updated spreadsheet in your Oracle database.

Viewing Cash Positions in Discoverer

You can view cash position results in a Discoverer Workbook. Oracle Discoverer enables you to manipulate information for analysis and graphical representation. To view cash position results in Oracle Discoverer, click the View in Discoverer button in the Cash Position Results page. This option is only available if you have Oracle Discoverer installed.

Cash Management provides one predefined workbook, which contains the following worksheets:

- Cash Position with Surplus/Deficit
- Cash Position with Closing Balance

- Cash Position with Surplus/Deficit using Calculated Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions
- Cash Position with Closing Balance using Calculated Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions
- Gapping Details Worksheet
- Supplier Payments Worksheet
- Customer Receipts Worksheet
- Payroll Expenses Worksheet
- Treasury Transactions Worksheet
- Intra-Day Activities Worksheet

Cash Position with Surplus/Deficit

This worksheet displays the cash position results along with the surplus and deficit. The prior day cash flow and overdue transactions rows are both calculated in real time.

Cash Position with Closing Balance

This worksheet displays the cash position results along with the closing balance. The prior day cash flow and overdue transactions rows are both calculated in real time.

Cash Position with Surplus/Deficit using Calculated Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions

This worksheet displays the cash position results along with surplus or deficit. The prior day cash flow and overdue transactions rows are both calculated using the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program.

Cash Position with Closing Balance Using Calculated Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions

This worksheet displays the cash position results along with the closing balance. The prior day cash flow and overdue transactions are both calculated using the Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions program.

Gapping Details Worksheet

This worksheet displays the details of the balance gapping results grouped by bank account.

Supplier Payments Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of supplier payments that pertain to a particular cash

position.

Customer Receipts Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of customer receipts that pertain to a particular cash position.

Payroll Expenses Worksheet

This worksheet displays details for payroll expenses that pertain to a particular cash position.

Treasury Transactions Worksheet

This worksheet displays details of treasury transactions that pertain to a particular cash position.

Intra-Day Activities

This worksheet displays details of the intra-day transactions reported by the bank that pertain to a particular cash position.

8

Bank Account Balances and Interest Calculations

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Bank Account Balances
- Maintaining Balances By Account
- Maintaining Balances For Multiple Accounts
- Balance Reporting
- Interest Rate Schedule

Bank Account Balances

Bank account balance maintenance and reporting is supported for all internal bank accounts in the system that are defined in Oracle Cash Management. For each bank account, you can keep track of multiple bank account balance types including: ledger, available, value dated, 1-day float, 2-day float, projected month-to-date average, and year-to-date average. Reporting tools are available to view all this centrally stored balance history for trend analysis as well as to compare actual versus projected balances. Additionally, the system enables you to verify interest amounts charged or credited by banks based on balance history and user-defined interest rate schedules

Input Bank Account Balances Data Manually

You can enter any bank account balance values manually and you can enter the balances for one bank account for multiple dates or multiple bank accounts for one date.

Load Bank Account Balances From Bank Statements

The Bank Statement Loader program recognizes the following balances reported on the bank statement and populates any new balance values accordingly:

- Ledger Balance
- Available Balance
- Interest Calculated Balance
- 1 Day Float and 2 Day Float
- Average Closing Ledger MTD
- Average Closing Ledger YTD
- Average Closing Available MTD
- Average Closing Available YTD

Store Projected Bank Account Balance

Projected bank account balance can be entered manually or populated automatically during cash positioning. In order to capture the projected closing balances automatically, when viewing the cash position results by bank account, select Save Projected Balances button.

Store User Defined Balance Types

You can setup custom defined balance types and assign a name to the balance type field. The name then becomes part of the bank account balance type LOV so that it can be used in other parts of the application such as cash positioning, interest calculations, and balance reporting. Due to limitations on the bank statement loader, it does not support user-defined balance types. These new balances types can be manually input.

Maintaining Balances By Account

You can select a single bank account and manage all its balance types for multiple dates on one page. Please note that the Notional Cash Pool balance cannot be entered or updated directly as it is automatically calculated as a sum of balances of the pool participants. If the Notional Cash Pool balance is incorrect, the balances of pool participating accounts should be updated.

> **Note:** Before you can maintain balances of bank accounts that are used in Oracle Treasury, you need to assign an interest rate schedule to such accounts. Please see Interest Rate Schedules section for more details.

To maintain balances by account:

1. Navigate to the Maintain Bank Account Balances Page.
2. Enter Legal Entity, Bank Name, Currency, Account Name, or Account Number as search criteria.
3. Click Go.
4. Select the account you want to update and click the Update icon for either Historical Balances or Projected Balances.
5. Enter the appropriate date range, if the desired balance dates are not displayed automatically, and click Go.
6. Enter or update the account balance.
7. Click Apply.

Maintaining Balances For Multiple Accounts

You can select multiple bank accounts and manage all their balance types for a single date on one page.

To maintain balances for multiple accounts:

1. Navigate to the Maintain Bank Account Balances Page.
2. Enter Legal Entity, Bank Name, Currency, Account Name, or Account Number as search criteria.
3. Click Go.
4. Select the accounts you want to update and click Update as Group.
5. Enter the desired balance rate.
6. Enter or update the account balances.
7. Click Apply.

Balance Reporting

There are several ways to view and report on balances in Oracle Cash Management.

The following concurrent requests are available to produce XML Publisher reports:

- **Bank Account Balances a Single Date Report:**: Report on one or more bank account's balances for a particular date.
- **Bank Account Balances a Date Range Report:**Report on one or more bank account's balances for a range of dates.
- **Bank Account Balance Actual vs. Projected:**: Compare one or more bank account's actual balance to the projected balance for a range of dates.

Bank Account Balances Single Date Report and Bank Account Balances Date Range Report can show all the bank account balances converted into a single currency, if you specify a reporting currency and select an exchange rate type.

In addition to the XML reports, the bank account balances can be viewed online on the Report Bank Account Balances page.

To create a personalized view layout:

1. Navigate to the Report Bank Account Balance Page.
2. If you do not have any personalized views created, you will be taken to the Advanced Search page. In this case, click Save Search. If you already have at least one view created, you will be taken to the Views page. In this case, click Personalize and then Create View.
3. On the Create View page, configure a personalized bank balance view layout In the General Properties region, enter the View name, number of rows displayed per page, default view flag and View description.

   In the Column Properties region, select the columns you would like to display, arrange them in the desired order, rename if needed and add totals where appropriate. You can also specify which columns should be used for sorting the bank account balance data.

   In the Search Query to Filter Data in your Table, enter the search criteria to fetch the bank account balance data. Please note that you must select at least either a Name or Account Number.
4. Click Apply.

To view bank account balances online:

1. Navigate to the Report Bank Account Balance Page.
2. If you do not have any personalized views created, you will be taken to the Advanced Search page. In this case, enter the search criteria and click Go. The bank

account balances will be displayed using the system default layout.

If you already have at least one view created, you will be taken to the Views page. In this case, select a view name from the list and click Go. The bank account balances will be displayed using your personal layout.

Interest Rate Schedule

You can maintain interest rate schedules in Oracle Cash Management, if you have bank account balances that can earn interest rate or where the interest rate can be charged. Please note that, if you have bank accounts authorized for use in Oracle Treasury, you have to assign an interest rate schedule to such accounts before you can maintain their bank account balances.

Please also note that a separate function is available to allow the user to update only one attribute of the Interest Rate Schedule – the interest rates.

To create interest rate schedule:

1. Navigate to the Interest Rate Schedules page.
2. Click Create Schedule.
3. Enter the schedule Name, select schedule Currency, Basis, Interest Rounding and Day Count Basis. Note, you can also choose the value of the Interest Includes parameter if you choose to display it by personalizing the page. By default, the value of the Interest Includes parameter is taken as Last Day.

   Basis: This parameter defined if the same interest rate applies to the entire balance amount or of a different interest rate applies to different portions of the balance amount. The options are: Flat and Step. For example, if the selected option is Flat, the balance amount is 150,000 and you have the following rate structure.

Rate	Amount
5%	0 to 100,000
3%	greater than 100,000

   The 3% interest rate will apply to the entire 150,000 balance amount. If the selected option is Step for the same balance amount and the same rate structure, the 5% interest rate will apply to the first 100,000 of the balance amount and the 3% interest rate will apply to the remaining 50,000 of the balance amount.

   Interest Rounding: This parameter defines how the calculated interest will be rounded to the currency precision. The options are: Nearest, Round Down, Round

Up. For example, let's assume that the exact calculated interest amount is 100.1078 and the bank account currency precision allows only two decimals. If the selected option is Nearest, the interest amount will be rounded to 100.11. If the selected option is Round Down, the interest amount will be rounded to 100.10. If the selected option is Round Up, the interest amount will be rounded to 100.11.

Day Count Basis: This convention defines the number of days in a year. The options are: Actual/Actual, Actual/360, Actual/365.

Interest Includes: This parameter defines the number of days in the calculation of the interest amount on the first available balance date. The options are: First Day, Last Day, Both Days. For example, let's assume that the first ever balance date for your bank account is March 1 and the next balance date is March 2. If the selected option is First Day, the number of days in the interest calculation between March 1 and March 2 will be one and it will be assumed to be accrued on March 1. If the selected option is Last Day, the number of days in the interest calculation between March 1 and March 2 will be one and it will be assumed to be accrued on March 2. If the selected option is Both Days, the number of days in the interest calculation between March 1 and March 2 will be two and it will be assumed to be accrued partially on March 1 and partially on March 2.

4. Click Next.

5. Enter the balance ranges (from lowest to highest) to which different rates will apply. A single range may not contain both positive and negative balances. In order to cover all possible balances:

   The number you enter in the High field will be incremented by one (1) in the smallest precision of the schedule currency and serve as the Low value in the following row.

   The High field in your final range should not contain a value.

   By default, a balance range for negative and positive amounts is created automatically.

6. Click Next.

7. Enter the interest rates that will apply to the balance amount ranges you have defined in the previous step.

8. Click Next.

9. Click Assign Accounts and select bank accounts to which this interest rate schedule will apply.

10. Click Finish.

To view interest rate schedule:

1. Navigate to the Interest Rate Schedules page.
2. Optionally, enter a part of the Interest Rate Schedule name in the Search region.
3. Click Go.
4. Click the name of the Interest Rate Schedule to view the details.

To maintain interest rate schedule:

1. Navigate to the Interest Rate Schedules page.
2. Optionally, enter a part of the Interest Rate Schedule name in the Search region.
3. Click Go.
4. Select the Interest Rate Schedule name and click Update icon.
5. Modify details as necessary, including adding or removing bank accounts.
6. Click Apply.

Interest Calculation

If you have interest rate schedules assigned to your bank accounts, you can use the online calculator to verify the interest amount the bank is charging you or paying to you. Please note that you can also calculate interest for Notional Cash Pools as well as stand-alone bank accounts.

To calculate bank account interest:

1. Navigate to the Bank Account Interest page.
2. Enter search criteria and click Go.
3. Select one or more bank accounts and click Calculate Interest.
4. Enter the date range, for which you want the interest to be calculated, and click Go.
5. Enter the date range, for which you want the interest to be calculated, and click Go.
6. Click on the calculated Interest Amount to see the interest rates and balance amounts used in the calculation.

9

Cash Transactions

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Bank Account Transfers
- Creating Bank Account Transfers Manually
- Viewing, Updating, and Canceling Bank Account Transfers
- Authorizing Bank Account Transfers
- Processing Payments
- Generating Accounting Entries
- Cashflows

Bank Account Transfers

Bank account transfers represent fund transfers between internal bank accounts. You can create bank account transfers manually or automatically via Cash Leveling process (see Cash Positioning for more details) and/or Sweep Transactions Generation concurrent program. The access to bank account transfer creation for a particular legal entity is subject to bank account use security. The bank account transfers are reflected in Cash Position automatically. Payment processing for bank account transfers is managed using Oracle Payments. Journal entries are created via a centralized subledger accounting engine.

The following bank account transfers are supported from the point of view of bank account ownership:

1. Intra-Company Transfers

   Intra-company transfers represent cash transfers between two internal bank accounts that belong to the same legal entity.

2. Inter-Company Transfers

   Inter-company transfers represent cash transfers between two internal bank

accounts that belong to two different legal entities. In case of such transfers, the system can produce balanced journal entries for both legal entities.

The following bank account transfers are supported from the point of view of transfer currency:

1. Domestic

   The currency of both bank accounts and the transfer amount is the same. For example, you are transferring USD between two bank accounts that are denominated in USD.

2. International

   The currency of one bank account is the same as the currency of the transfer amount but the currency of the other bank account is different. For example, you are transferring USD from a bank account denominated in USD to the bank account denominated in EUR.

Payment Templates

Payment templates allow defining reusable sets of bank account transfer attributes and payment processing options. During bank account transfer creation you have an option to select a payment template. If you do so, all the attributes of the payment template will default into the bank account transfer.

If you are using repetitive payment codes or repetitive wire codes, you can define those as payment templates.

To Create a Payment Template:

1. Navigate to the Payment Templates page.

2. Click Create.

3. Enter payment template attributes on General Details and Payment Details tabs. Select attributes are explained below.

- **Repetitive Code:**This parameter defines whether this is repetitive payment template or not. The options are: Yes and No. If the parameter is set to Yes, then the source and destination bank accounts will be required for the template creation. Furthermore, when you are creating a bank account transfer with this template, the source and destination bank accounts will default in and will not be updateable. If the parameter is set to No, then all the template attributes will be updateable after they default in during bank account transfer creation.

- **Authorize Transfer:**This parameter defines whether the bank account transfer created using this template requires authorization before it can be processed for

payment in Oracle Payments or not. The options are: Yes and No. If you select Yes, somebody will have to manually authorize the bank account transfer before it can be paid. If you select No, the bank account transfer will be automatically authorized for payment as soon as it is created and validated.

- **Settle Transaction:**This parameter defines whether the bank account transfer created using this template requires payment processing in Oracle Payments or not. The options are: Yes and No. If you select Yes, the bank account transfer will be routed for payment processing in Oracle Payments as soon as it is manually or automatically authorized. If you select No, the bank account transfer will not be routed for payment processing in Oracle Payments. Excluding bank account transfer from the payment processing may be useful when the payment instructions have been communicated to the bank outside of the system or if you are not using Oracle Payments but still want to account for such a transaction.

- **Source Bank Account:**The bank account from which the transfer will be made.

- **Destination Bank Account:**The bank account that will receive the transfer.

- **Payment Method:**For more information on this attribute, please refer to the Oracle Payments user guide.

- **Payment Reason:**For more information on this attribute, please refer to the Oracle Payments user guide.

- **Anticipated Value Date:**This field indicates the number of clearing days between the transaction date and settlement date. If a value for anticipated value days exist in the payment method, this value will automatically default here. However, the default can be overwritten by the user.

- Click Apply.

To Update a Payment Template:

1. Navigate to the Payment Templates page.

2. Enter search parameters and click Go.

3. Select the payment template and click Update.

4. Update payment template attributes as necessary. If you want to disable the payment template and prevent the users from using it in the future, set the Status to Inactive.

5. Click Apply.

To Update a Payment Template:

1. Navigate to the Payment Templates page.

2. Click Create.

3. Enter payment template attributes on General Details and Payment Details tabs. Select attributes are explained below.

- **Repetitive Code:**This parameter defines whether this is repetitive payment template or not. The options are: Yes and No. If the parameter is set to Yes, then the source and destination bank accounts will be required for the template creation. Furthermore, when you are creating a bank account transfer with this template, the source and destination bank accounts will default in and will not be updateable. If the parameter is set to No, then all the template attributes will be updateable after they default in during bank account transfer creation.

- **Authorize Transfer:**This parameter defines whether the bank account transfer created using this template requires authorization before it can be processed for payment in Oracle Payments or not. The options are: Yes and No. If you select Yes, somebody will have to manually authorize the bank account transfer before it can be paid. If you select No, the bank account transfer will be automatically authorized for payment as soon as it is created and validated.

- **Settle Transaction:**This parameter defines whether the bank account transfer created using this template requires payment processing in Oracle Payments or not. The options are: Yes and No. If you select Yes, the bank account transfer will be routed for payment processing in Oracle Payments as soon as it is manually or automatically authorized. If you select No, the bank account transfer will not be routed for payment processing in Oracle Payments. Excluding bank account transfer from the payment processing may be useful when the payment instructions have been communicated to the bank outside of the system or if you are not using Oracle Payments but still want to account for such a transaction.

- **Source Bank Account:**The bank account from which the transfer will be made.

- **Destination Bank Account:**The bank account that will receive the transfer.

- **Payment Method:**For more information on this attribute, please refer to the Oracle Payments user guide.

- **Payment Reason:**For more information on this attribute, please refer to the Oracle Payments user guide.

- **Anticipated Value Date:**This field indicates the number of clearing days between the transaction date and settlement date. If a value for anticipated value days exist in the payment method, this value will automatically default here. However, the

default can be overwritten by the user.

- Click Apply.

To Update a Payment Template:

1. Navigate to the Payment Templates page.
2. Enter search parameters and click Go.
3. Select the payment template and click Update.
4. Update payment template attributes as necessary. If you want to disable the payment template and prevent the users from using it in the future, set the Status to Inactive.
5. Click Apply.

Creating Bank Account Transfers Manually

To Create a Bank Account Transfer

1. Navigate to the Bank Account Transfers page.
2. Click Create.
3. Enter bank account transfer properties. Please note that if you select a payment template, the bank account transfer attributes defined at the template level will default in automatically. Select attributes are explained below.
    - **Settlement Transactions through Oracle Payments:**This parameter defines whether the bank account transfer requires payment processing in Oracle Payments or not. The options are: Yes and No. If you select Yes, the bank account transfer will be routed for payment processing in Oracle Payments as soon as it is manually or automatically authorized. If you select No, the bank account transfer will not be routed for payment processing in Oracle Payments. Excluding bank account transfer from the payment processing may be useful when the payment instructions have been communicated to the bank outside of the system or if you are not using Oracle Payments but still want to account for such a transaction. .
    - **Source Bank Account:**The bank account from which the transfer will be made.
    - **Destination Bank Account:**The bank account that will receive the transfer..
    - **Payment Method:**For more information on this attribute, please refer to the

Oracle Payments user guide.

- **Payment Reason:**For more information on this attribute, please refer to the Oracle Payments user guide.

- **Anticipated Value Date:**This field indicates the anticipated date when the funds will reach the destination bank account. If you select a payment template, this field is populated as the Transfer Date plus the number of anticipated value days on the payment template. If you select a payment method, this field is populated as the Transfer Date plus the number of anticipated value days on the payment method. However, the default can be overwritten by the user.

4. Click Apply. The bank account transfer is saved with status New. If you would like to validate the bank account transfer at the same time as saving it, click Apply and Validate instead of Apply. Please note that the bank account transfer will be available for further processing (manual authorization, payment and journal creation) only after it has been validated.

Manual Authorization Required?	Settlement via Oracle Payments Required?	Bank Account Transfer Status after Successful Validation	Bank Account Transfer Status after Manual Authorization Settlement in Process Settled
Yes	Yes	Validated	Settlement in process
Yes	No	Validated	Settled
No	Yes	Settlement in process	
No	No	Settled	

To Validate a Bank Account Transfer

1. Navigate to the Bank Account Transfers page.

2. Enter search criteria and click Go.

3. Select a bank account transfer and click Validate. Please note that the Validate icon is enabled only for bank account transfers in status New or Invalid.

Viewing, Updating, and Canceling Bank Account Transfers

To View a Bank Account Transfer

1. Navigate to the Bank Account Transfers page.
2. Enter search criteria and click Go.
3. The bank account transfer status can be one of the following:

- **New:**The transfer has been created but not validated yet.
- **Validated:**The transfer has been created and validated. It is ready to be manually authorized for settlement.
- **Invalid:**The transfer has failed validation.
- **Rejected:**The transfer is rejected by the user who is performing manual authorization.
- **Settlement in Process:**The transfer has been authorized for settlement and sent to Oracle Payments.
- **Settled:**The transfer was successfully processed by Oracle Payments or it did not require settlement via Oracle Payments.
- **Failed:**The transfer failed processing in Oracle Payments.
- **Canceled:**The transfer has been manually canceled by the user.

To Update a Bank Account Transfer

1. Navigate to the Bank Account Transfers page.
2. Enter search criteria and click Go.
3. Select bank account transfer and click Update. Please note that the Update icon is enabled only for bank account transfers in status New, Validated, Invalid, or Rejected.
4. Modify bank account transfer attributes.
5. Click Apply. The changes saved. If you would like to validate the bank account transfer at the same time as saving the changes, click Apply and Validate instead of Apply. If the validation is successful, the bank account transfer is saved with status

Validated.

To Cancel a Bank Account Transfers

1. Navigate to the Bank Account Transfers page.
2. Enter search criteria and click Go.
3. Select bank account transfer and click Cancel. The Cancel icon is disabled for bank account transfers in status Settled if at least one underlying cash flow is cleared or reconciled

If a bank account transfer requires settlement via Oracle Payments and the status of the transfer is "Settlement in Process" or "Settled", canceling the bank account transfer will not stop or reverse payment processing in Oracle Payments. The user will have to switch to Oracle Payments and manually stop the payment process or cancel the payment.

Authorizing Bank Account Transfers

Authorization

If you would like another user to approve the bank account transfer before it is processed for payment and/or journalized, you can set up the system parameter to required manual bank account transfer authorization. Bank account transfer authorization is a completely separate function from bank account transfer update.

To Authorize a Bank Account Transfer

1. Navigate to the Bank Account Transfer Authorization page.
2. The list of bank account transfers awaiting your authorization is displayed. This list is subject to bank account use security.
3. Select transfers and click Authorize Transfers. If it requires payment processing, it will now be automatically sent to Oracle Payments. If it does not require payment processing, it will now be available for journal creation.
4. If you would like to reject the transfer, click on Reject Transfers instead.

Processing Payments

Bank Account Transfer Payments

Bank account transfer payment instructions can be communicated to the bank electronically via Oracle Payments. When a bank account transfer that requires settlement is authorized in Oracle Cash Management, a payment process request is automatically created in Oracle Payments. For more details on payment instruction creation and bank communication, please refer to Oracle Payments User Guide.

If the payment is successfully processed in Oracle Payments, the status of the bank account transfer will be automatically set to Settled. If the payment is not successfully processed, the status of the bank account transfer will be automatically set to Failed and may require the user's intervention to recreate the transfer.

Generating Accounting Entries

Create Accounting

Bank account transfers can be posted to Oracle General Ledger via the centralized subledger accounting engine by running "Create Accounting" concurrent program. See the program description and Subledger Accounting section for more details.

Bank account transfers that require settlement in Oracle Payments are available for journal creation when their status is set to Settlement in Process. Bank account transfers that do not require settlement in Oracle Payments are available for journal creation when their status is set to Settled. This corresponds to "Bank Account Transfer Created" accounting event type in the "Bank Account Transfers" event class. Additional event types are created in the system when the bank account transfer is canceled or when the related cash flows are cleared or un-cleared.

Cashflows

Cashflows

You can use Cashflows window to view the detail of existing cashflows or to cancel the cashflows. Cashflows are available for clearing and reconciliation. Clearing cashflows will generate accounting entries through Subledger Accounting. See Subledger Accounting chapter in this document for detail. Cashflows also can be included in Cash Positioning as a positioning source.

Cashflows can be created from the following programs:

- Manual Entry of Bank Account Transfers

- Generate Sweep Transactions
- Cash Leveling
- Bank Statement Cashflows

Each cash flow is designed to produce a balanced journal, with a debit and credit journal entry. Cash flows are also used in clearing and reconciliation. Cash flows can be included in Cash Positioning as inflow and outflow sources.

To Query Cashflows:

1. Navigate to Cashflows window. From the navigator, choose Cash Transactions > Cashflows.
2. Enter the criteria for the cashflows you want to query. To perform a search, you need to fill in search criteria values in at least one of the following fields: Cashflow Number, Bank Account Number, Cashflow Amount, Transaction Type, Direction, Bank Reference Number, Legal Entity, Cashflow Date, Cashflow Status.
3. Choose Go button to perform a query.

Cashflows Window Reference

Result Table Region

- **Cashflow Number:**Unique cashflow identifier.
- **Transaction Type:**The source transaction type of cashflow. There are two possible values:
- Bank Account Transfer - if the cashflow is created from Manual Entry of Bank Account Transfers, Generate Sweep Transactions, or Cash Leveling program.
- Statement Line - if the cashflow is created from Bank Statement Cashflows program.
- **Transaction Number:**Bank Account Transfer number. If the cashflow is generated by Bank Statement Cashflow program, then this field is null.
- **Transaction Subtype:**Transaction subtype that is assigned to the cashflow.
- **Bank Account:**Cashflow bank account number.
- **Counterparty Bank Account:**Counterparty bank account number. This field is null for cashflows generated from the Bank Statement Cashflows program.
- **Direction:**Inflow or Outflow.

For the cashflows with Bank Account Transfer transaction type, inflow means that the counterparty bank account is funding bank account whereas the cashflow bank account is beneficiary bank account. On the other hand, outflow means that the cashflow bank account is funding bank account whereas the counterparty bank account is beneficiary bank account. For the cashflows with Statement Line transaction type, inflow means that the cashflow bank account is beneficiary bank account that receives fund from the GL account specified in Bank Statement Cashflow Mapping. On the other hand, outflow means that the cashflow bank account is funding bank account that sends fund to the GL account specified in Bank Statement Cashflow Mapping.

- **Amount:**Cashflow amount.
- **Currency:**Cashflow currency code.
- **Cashflow Date:**Date that the cashflow is created.
- **Status:**Cashflow status. There are four possible values:
- Created: Cashflow is newly created
- Canceled: Cashflow is canceled
- Cleared: Cashflow is cleared
- Reconciled: Cashflow is reconciled
- **Cancel Cashflow:**Choose Cancel Cashflow icon to cancel the cashflow. Cashflow with Statement Line transaction type cannot be canceled once the cashflow is reconciled. You must first unreconcile the cashflow before you cancel it. Cashflow with Bank Account Transfer transaction type can only be canceled by canceling the bank account transfer in Bank Account Transfer window. Cancel actions cannot be undone.

Cashflow Detail Region

Header Section:

- **Cashflow:**Cashflow identification number.

General Information Section:

- **Cashflow Amount:**Cashflow amount.
- **Direction:**Inflow or Ourflow.
- **Cashflow Date:**Date that the cashflow is created
- **Cashflow Status:**Created, Canceled, Cleared, or Reconciled.

- **Transaction Type:**Bank Account Transfer or Statement Line.
- **Transaction Subtype:**Transaction subtype that is assigned to the cashflow.
- **Source Transaction Number:**Source transaction number.
- **Bank Reference Number:**Transaction identifier used in Autoreconciliation as a matching key.
- **Bank Statement Number:**Bank statement number that the cashflow is generated from.
- **Value Date:**Value date of the cashflow.

Bank Account Section:

- **Bank Account Number:**Source bank account number.
- **Bank Account Name:**Source bank account name.
- **Bank Account Currency:**Source bank account currency.
- **Branch Name:**Branch name of source bank account.
- **Bank Name:**Bank name of source bank account.

Counterparty Bank Account Section:

- **Bank Account Number:**Destination bank account number.
- **Bank Account Name:**Destination bank account name.
- **Branch Name:**Branch name of destination bank account.
- **Bank Name:**Bank name of destination bank account.
- **Counterparty:**Counterparty name.

Clearing Information Section:

- **Cleared Amount:**Amount cleared in bank account currency.
- **Cleared Base Amount:**Amount cleared in accounting currency.
- **Changes Amount:**Amount charged in bank account currency
- **Charges Base Amount:**Amount charged in accounting currency.
- **Error Amount:**Error amount in bank account currency.

- **Error Base Amount:**Error amount in accounting currency.
- **Cleared Date:**Date that cashflow is cleared.
- **Exchange Rate:**Exchange rate used in clearing.
- **Exchange Date:**Exchange date used in clearing.
- **Exchange Rate Type:**Exchange rate type used in clearing.

Accounting Information Section:

Accounting Status

- **Accounted:**If all accounting events associated with cashflow have 'ACCOUNTED' status.
- **Not Accounted:**If all accounting events associated with cashflow have 'UNACCOUNTED' status.
- **Partially Accounted:**Only some of but not all accounting events associated with cashflow have 'ACCOUNTED' status.
- **Accounted with Error:**At least one of accounting events associated with cashflow has 'ACCOUNTING_ERROR' status.
- **Not Applicable:**Cashflow canceled.

View Accounting Details button:

This button opens up accounting detail page.

10

Accounting

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Subledger Accounting (SLA) Introduction
- Accounting Events

Subledger Accounting (SLA) Introduction

You can automatically create accounting entries for Bank Account Transfers and Bank Statement Cash Flows in Cash Management using the Oracle Subledger Accounting (SLA) architecture. This chapter is largely dedicated to describing the principles of the automated accounting. In addition to automated accounting, you can create manual journal entries in Cash Management, if you need to account for business events not related to Bank Account Transfers and Bank Statement Cash Flows..

Oracle Subledger Accounting is a rule-based accounting engine that centralizes journal entry creation across the E-Business Suite. Acting as an intermediate step between a subledger application, such as Oracle Cash Management, and Oracle General Ledger, Oracle Subledger Accounting creates journal entries for subledger transactions and transfers them to Oracle General Ledger.

Oracle Subledger Accounting allows multiple accounting representations for a single business event, resolving conflicts between corporate and local fiscal accounting requirements. With subledger accounting you retain the most granular level of detail in the journal entries, with different summarization options in the General Ledger, allowing full auditability and reconciliation.

Each transaction in Oracle Cash Management has a number of accounting events associated with it. Oracle Cash Management provides a set of predefined accounting rules that Oracle Subledger Accounting uses to create journal entries for each accounting event. In addition to the seeded setup, you can define your own detailed accounting rules using a centralized accounting setup in a common user interface. Journal entries can be created on a trial or final basis. Once the journals are created, you can view them in the transaction windows in Oracle Cash Management. Similarly, you can drill down from the journal entry in Oracle General Ledger to the source transaction

in Oracle Cash Management.

For definitions, common setup steps and further information about Subledger Accounting, see: Oracle Subledger Accounting Implementation Guide.

Accounting Events

Accounting events represent occurrences that have a financial accounting impact. Accounting events are captured when transactions are committed or processed.

In Oracle Subledger Accounting, accounting events are categorized into event types. Event types are grouped into event classes that in turn are grouped into event entities. The overall grouping of these components is called an event model. The Oracle Cash Management accounting event model is predefined for you, and includes each Cash Management transaction type (event class) and its lifecycle. You should understand the Cash Management accounting event model because the model classifies Cash Management accounting events, which are the basis for creating subledger accounting.

At the foundation of the event model, Cash Management predefines event entities. An event entity enables Oracle Subledger Accounting to handle the accounting for similar business events in a consistent manner. The event entity in Cash Management is Cash Flow.

Each event entity is associated with one or more event classes. An event class represents a category of business events for a particular transaction type or document. Event classes group similar event types and enable the sharing of accounting definitions. An event type represents a business operation that you can perform for an event class. An accounting event has both an event class and an event types that affect how the Create Accounting program determines the subledger accounting for it. Event types provide the lowest level of details for storing accounting definitions.

Cash Management provides a predefined set of event classes and event types for each accounting event entity.

Cash Flow Event Entity

This table describes the event classes and types that Payables predefines for the Cash Flows Event Entity.

Event Class	Event Type	Seeded Accounting Definitions
Bank Account Transfers	Bank Account Transfer Cancelled	No
	Bank Account Transfer Cleared	Yes

	Bank Account Transfer Settled	No
	Bank Account Transfer Uncleared	Yes
Bank Statement Cash Flows	Bank Statement Cash Flow Canceled	Yes
	Bank Statement Cash Flow Recorded	Yes

Bank Account Transfer Settled event is raised when the bank account transfer reaches the Settled status. If the bank account transfer is canceled, then the Bank Account Transfer Cancelled event is raised. If you create journal entries for the Bank Account Transfer Settled event and then cancel the bank account transfer, the Bank Account Transfer Cancelled event will produce reversing journal entries. If, however, you cancel bank account transfer even before creating journals for the Bank Account Transfer Settled event, then no journals will be created for the bank account transfer at all.

Similarly, the Bank Account Transfer Cleared event is raised when you manually or automatically clear the bank account transfer cash flows. If the bank account transfer cash flow is un-cleared, then the Bank Account Transfer Uncleared event is raised. If you create journal entries for the Bank Account Transfer Cleared event and then un-clear the bank account transfer cash flow, the Bank Account Transfer Uncleared event will produce reversing journal entries. If, however, you un-clear bank account transfer cash flow even before creating journals for the Bank Account Transfer Cleared event, then no journals will be created for the bank account transfer cash flow at all.

Important. Each bank account transfer produces two cash flows: an outflow for the source bank account and an inflow for the destination bank account. Since you clear bank account transfers by bank account, the clearing status of cash flows originated from the same bank account transfer can be different. Thus, accounting events are raised and tracked at the cash flow level.

Bank Statement Cash Flow Recorded even is raised when the concurrent program creates a bank statement cash flow. If the bank statement cash flow is canceled, then the Bank Statement Cash Flow Cancelled event is raised. If you create journal entries for the Bank Statement Cash Flow Recorded event and then cancel the bank statement cash flow, the Bank Statement Cash Flow Cancelled event will produce reversing journal entries. If, however, you cancel bank statement cash flow even before creating journals for the Bank Statement Cash Flow Recorded event, then no journals will be created for the bank statement cash flow at all.

Accounting Definitions

The following accounting definitions are seeded. You can modify the seeded definitions and/or add your own definitions for additional accounting events.

Application: Cash Management

Definition Code:CE_STANDARD_ACCOUNTING

Definition Name: Cash Management Standard Accounting

Enabled: Check mark (Yes)

Event Class: Bank Account Transfers

Event Type: Bank Account Transfer Canceled

Create Accounting: Blank (No)

Locked: Blank (No)

Journal Lines Definition Assignments: Blank (No)

Event Class: Bank Account Transfers

Event Type: Bank Account Transfer Cleared

Create Accounting: Check mark (Yes)

Locked: Blank (No)

Journal Lines Definition Assignments: Bank Account Transfer Clearing Lines Definition

This definition will produce the following journal entry lines per cash flow when the cash flow is cleared and the accounting program is run:

1. Debit the bank charge amount (if any) to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Charges;

2. Debit the bank error amount (if any) to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Errors;

3. Debit the FX charges amount (if any) to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Foreign Exchange Charges;

4. Credit cleared bank account transfer amount to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Cash, if the cash flow direction is Outflow; **OR**Debit cleared bank account transfer amount (minus bank charge amount, bank error amount and FX charge amount, if any) to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Cash, if the cash flow direction is Inflow;

5. Debit cleared bank account transfer amount (minus bank charge amount, bank error amount and FX charge amount, if any) to the Cash-in-Transit GL account defined in Intracompany Rule setup (for intracompany transfer) OR Intercompany Receivable Account for this Trading Partner (for intercompany transfer), if the cash flow direction is Outflow; **OR**Credit cleared bank account transfer amount to the Cash-in-Transit GL account defined in Intracompany Rule setup (for intracompany transfers) OR Intercompany Payable Account for this Trading Partner (for intercompany transfer), if the cash flow direction is Inflow.

Bank Account Transfer Business Requirements

The following section describes the business requirements for Bank Account Transfers.

- **Manual Entry of Bank Account Transfers**

  You can capture and process Bank Account Transfers from a number of different locations. Currently, the Bank Account Transfer form in Treasury is used for transaction capture.

- **Recording and Initiating Bank Account Transfers**

  A system parameter is required that allows users to choose whether the functionality for Cash Management (CE) or Treasury (XTR) will be utilized for bank account transfers. When Treasury is not installed only Cash Management will be available.

- **Manual Creation of Ad-hoc Bank Account Transfers**

  1. The user should be able to create Bank Account Transfers manually

  2. The Value Date of the transfer should be allowed to be less, equal or greater than the system date. When transactions are created to reflect a line in a bank statement, users would enter transaction that are less than the system date

  3. The standard "WHO" columns should be added in the background. A unique transaction number should be generated by the system for each transfer.

  4. The Bank Account Transfers should have the following enterable attributes:
     - Transaction Sub-Type
     - Repetitive Code
     - Transaction Date
     - Value Date
     - From Account Name

- To Account Name
- Amount
- Descriptive FlexFields

Event Class: Bank Statement Cash Flows

Event Type: All

Create Accounting: Check mark (Yes)

Locked: Blank (No)

Journal Lines Definition Assignments: Bank Statement Cashflow Journal Line Definition

This definition will produce the following journal entry lines per cash flow when the cash flow is created by the concurrent program based on the bank statement line and the accounting program is run:

1. Credit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Cash, if the cash flow direction is Outflow; **OR**Debit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Cash, if the cash flow direction is Inflow;

2. Debit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the Bank Statement Cash Flow Mappings window, if the cash flow direction is Outflow; **OR** Credit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the Bank Statement Cash Flow Mappings window, if the cash flow direction is Inflow.

The same definition will produce the following journal entry lines per cash flow when the accounted bank statement cash flow is cancelled and the accounting program is run:

1. Debit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Cash, if the cash flow direction is Outflow; **OR**Credit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the bank account setup under Account Controls: General Controls: Cash, if the cash flow direction is Inflow;

2. Credit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the Bank Statement Cash Flow Mappings window, if the cash flow direction is Outflow; **OR** Debit bank statement cash flow amount to the GL account indicated in the Bank Statement Cash Flow Mappings window, if the cash flow direction is Inflow.

Setup Affecting Accounting Event Details

Window	Option or Field	Values
System Parameters (Cash Management Transactions tab – Accounting Region)	Exchange Rate Type	List of values of user-defined exchange rate types
System Parameters (Cash Management Transactions tab – Accounting Region)	Bank Statement Cash Flow Rate Date	Cash Flow Date GL Date Cleared Date Bank Statement Date
System Parameters (Cash Management Transactions tab – Accounting Region)	Bank Transfer Rate Date	Cash Flow Date Actual Value Date Cleared Date Bank Statement Date GL Date Statement Line Date Transfer Date
Manage Bank Accounts: Account Controls: General Controls:	Cash	User-selected GL account
Manage Bank Accounts: Account Controls: General Controls:	Cash Clearing	User-selected GL account
Manage Bank Accounts: Account Controls: General Controls:	Bank Charges	User-selected GL account
Manage Bank Accounts: Account Controls: General Controls:	Bank Errors	User-selected GL account
Manage Bank Accounts: Account Controls: General Controls:	Foreign Exchange Charges	User-selected GL account

Account Controls: Reconciliation Controls: Auto Reconciliation Tolerances: Cash Flows:	Foreign Tolerance Differences	Charges Errors FX Charges
Account Controls: Reconciliation Controls: Auto Reconciliation Tolerances: Cash Flows:	Tolerance Differences	Charges Errors

Accounting Examples

The following examples demonstrate journal entries created with the seeded accounting setup.

Example #1

- Bank Account Transfer
- Transfer Amount = USD 100.00
- Source Bank Account = Account 1
- Destination Bank Account = Account 2
- Bank Charge Bearer = Payer
- Bank Account 1 Setup:
- Owner = Legal Entity # 1 (Ledger Currency = USD)
- Currency = USD
- Account Controls: General Controls: Cash = GL # 1
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Charges = GL # 3
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Errors = GL # 4
- Account Controls: General Controls: Foreign Exchange Charges = GL # 5
- Account Controls: Reconciliation Controls: Auto Reconciliation Tolerances: Cash Flows: Tolerance Differences = Errors
- Bank Account 2 Setup:

- Owner = Legal Entity # 1 (Ledger Currency = USD)
- Currency = USD
- Account Controls: General Controls: Cash = GL # 6
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Charges = GL # 8
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Errors = GL # 9
- Account Controls: General Controls: Foreign Exchange Charges = GL # 10
- Account Controls: Reconciliation Controls: Auto Reconciliation Tolerances: Cash Flows: Tolerance Differences = Errors
- Legal Entity #1 Intracompany Rule:
- Intracompany Rule: Cash-in-Transit = GL # 2

Bank account transfer related cash flow (outflow) is automatically cleared when the Bank Account 1 Bank Statement is auto-reconciled and the "Create Accounting" concurrent program is run. The following journal entry is created.

Note: In the following two tables, GL Date = Clearing Date.

GL Account	Debit	Credit
GL #1 (Bank Account 1 Cash)		105
GL #2 (LE Cash-in-Transit)	100	
GL #3 (Bank Account 1 Bank Charges)	3	
GL #4 (Bank Account 1 Bank Errors)	2	
GL #5 (Bank Account 1 Foreign Exchange Charges)		

Bank account transfer related cash flow (inflow) is automatically cleared when the Bank Account 2 Bank Statement is auto-reconciled and the "Create Accounting" concurrent program is run. The following journal entry is created.

GL Account	Debit	Credit
GL #6 (Bank Account 2 Cash)	100	
GL #2 (LE Cash-in-Transit)		100
GL #8 (Bank Account 2 Bank Charges)		
GL #9 (Bank Account 2 Bank Errors)		
GL #10 (Bank Account 2 Foreign Exchange Charges)		

Both bank account transfer related cash flows (inflow and outflow) are automatically un-cleared when the Bank Account 1 Bank Statement is un-reconciled, the Bank Account 2 Bank Statement is un-reconciled, and the "Create Accounting" concurrent program is run. The following journal entries are created.

Note: In the following two tables, GL Date = Un-Clearing Date.

GL Account	Debit	Credit
GL #1 (Bank Account 1 Cash)	105	
GL #2 (LE Cash-in-Transit)		100
GL #3 (Bank Account 1 Bank Charges)		3
GL #4 (Bank Account 1 Bank Errors)		2
GL #5 (Bank Account 1 Foreign Exchange Charges)		

GL Account	Debit	Credit

GL #6 (Bank Account 2 Cash)		100
GL #2 (LE Cash-in-Transit)	100	
GL #8 (Bank Account 2 Bank Charges)		
GL #9 (Bank Account 2 Bank Errors)		
GL #10 (Bank Account 2 Foreign Exchange Charges)		

Example #2

- Bank Statement Line (Bank Statement belongs to Bank Account 1)
- Transaction Code = 111
- Type = Payment
- Transaction Date = January 1
- Currency = USD
- Amount = 100.00
- Bank Account 1 Setup:
- Owner = Legal Entity # 1 (Ledger Currency = USD)
- Currency = USD
- Account Controls: General Controls: Cash = GL # 1
- Bank Statement Cash Flow Mappings for Bank Account 1
- Transaction Code = 111
- GL Account Number = GL #11

"Bank Statement Cash Flow Creation" program is run, and then the "Create Accounting" concurrent program is run. The following journal entry is created.

Note: In the following two tables, GL Date = Bank Statement Line

Transaction Date.

GL Account	Debit	Credit
GL #1 (Bank Account 1 Cash)		100
GL #11 (Bank Statement Cash Flow Mappings for Bank Account 1)	100	

Cash flow created in previous step is manually deleted, and then the "Create Accounting" concurrent program is run. The following journal entry is created.

GL Account	Debit	Credit
GL #1 (Bank Account 1 Cash)	100	
GL #11 (Bank Statement Cash Flow Mappings for Bank Account 1)		100

Foreign Exchange Conversion Examples

The following combinations of ledger currency, bank account currency and transaction currency are supported when creating bank account transfers.

Source Bank Account			
	Ledger Currency	Bank Account Currency	Transaction Currency
	Currency 1	Currency 1	Currency 1
Destination Bank Account			
	Ledger Currency	Bank Account Currency	

	Currency 1	Currency 1	
	Currency 2	Currency 1	
	Currency 2	Currency 2	

Source Bank Account			
	Ledger Currency	Bank Account Currency	Transaction Currency
	Currency 1	Currency 1	Currency 2
Destination Bank Account			
	Ledger Currency	Bank Account Currency	
	Currency 1	Currency 1	
	Currency 1	Currency 2	
	Currency 2	Currency 2	

Source Bank Account			
	Ledger Currency	Bank Account Currency	Transaction Currency
	Currency 1	Currency 2	Currency 2
Destination Bank Account			
	Ledger Currency	Bank Account Currency	
	Currency 1	Currency 2	

	Currency 2	Currency 2
	Currency 1	Currency 1

Example #1

Bank Account Transfer

- Transfer Amount = USD 100.00
- Source Bank Account = Account 1
- Destination Bank Account = Account 2
- Bank Charge Bearer = Payee

Bank Account 1 Setup:

- Owner = Legal Entity # 1 (Ledger Currency = USD)
- Currency = USD
- Account Controls: General Controls: Cash = GL # 1
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Charges = GL # 3
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Errors = GL # 4
- Account Controls: General Controls: Foreign Exchange Charges = GL # 5
- Account Controls: Reconciliation Controls: Auto Reconciliation Tolerances: Cash Flows: Tolerance Differences = Errors

Bank Account 2 Setup:

- Owner = Legal Entity # 2 (Ledger Currency = CAD)
- Currency = CAD
- Account Controls: General Controls: Cash = GL # 6
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Charges = GL # 8
- Account Controls: General Controls: Bank Errors = GL # 9
- Account Controls: General Controls: Foreign Exchange Charges = GL # 10
- Account Controls: Reconciliation Controls: Auto Reconciliation Tolerances: Cash

Flows: Tolerance Differences = Errors

Destination Bank:

- FX Rate USD 1 = CAD 1.22
- Converted transfer amount = CAD 122
- Fee = CAD 5

Bank account transfer related cash flow (outflow) is automatically cleared when the Bank Account 1 Bank Statement is auto-reconciled and the "Create Accounting" concurrent program is run is run. The following journal entry is created.

Note: In the following table, GL Date = Clearing Date; Currency = USD.

GL Account	Debit	Credit
GL #1 (Bank Account 1 Cash)		100
Intercompany Receivable Account	100	
GL #3 (Bank Account 1 Bank Charges)		
GL #4 (Bank Account 1 Bank Errors)		
GL #5 (Bank Account 1 Foreign Exchange Charges)		

Bank account transfer related cash flow (inflow) is automatically cleared when the Bank Account 2 Bank Statement is auto-reconciled and the "Create Accounting" concurrent program is run. The following journal entry is created.

Note: In the following table, GL Date = Clearing Date; Currency = CAD.

GL Account	Debit	Credit
GL #6 (Bank Account 2 Cash)		117

Intercompany Receivable Account	122		
GL #8 (Bank Account 2 Bank Charges)			5
GL #9 (Bank Account 2 Bank Errors)			
GL #10 (Bank Account 2 Foreign Exchange Charges)			

Managing Journal Entries

Cash Management supports both automatic and manual creation of journal entries, as well as maintenance of those journal entries.

Creating Journal Entries Automatically

Create journal entries for eligible accounting events generated by Bank Account Transfers and Bank Statement Cash Flows by submitting "Create Accounting" concurrent program. The program creates and, optionally, transfers and posts journal entries to General Ledger. If you do not transfer the journals to General Ledger immediately, you can later submit "Transfer Journal Entries to GL" concurrent program.

Important. Final journal entries cannot be further modified in Cash Management. Please make sure you are satisfied with the draft journal entries before creating final accounting.

In addition to creating final accounting entries, the program can be run in a draft mode, in which case draft journal entries will be created. Such journals cannot be transferred or posted to General Ledger.

For more details on this and other accounting programs, see: Oracle Subledger Accounting Implementation Guide.

Creating Journal Entries Manually

Accounting entries for Bank Account Transfers and Bank Statement Cash Flows are created automatically. However, if you would like to create a journal entry that is not related to Bank Account Transfers or Bank Statement Cash Flows, you can do so manually using the Create Subledger Journal Entry page.

To create journal entries manually:

1. Navigate to the Subledger Journal Entries page.

2. Click Create Journal Entry.

3. Enter Balance Type, GL Date, Ledger, Category, Description and other attributes as needed.

4. Select GL accounts and enter debit and credit amounts.

5. Click Save as Incomplete, if you plan to return to this entry and finalize it at a later date, or Click Continue.

6. Review your journal entry, select completion status and click Finish to validate and finalize your entry.

Transferring Journal Entries to General Ledger

You can transfer automatically created journal entries to General Ledger at the same time as you execute "Create Accounting" concurrent program. However, if have not done so or if you have created manual journals, you can submit "Transfer Journal Entries to GL" concurrent program.

For more details on this and other accounting programs, see: Oracle Subledger Accounting Implementation Guide.

Viewing Journal Entries

You can view journal entry created in Cash Management in the Subledger Journal Entries page.

To view journal entries:

1. Navigate to the Subledger Journal Entries page.

2. Enter search criteria and click Go.

3. Review search results.

Updating Manual Journal Entries

You can only update manual journal entries in status Draft, Incomplete, or Error.

To update manual journal entries:

1. Navigate to the Subledger Journal Entries page.

2. Enter search criteria and click Go.

3. Select journal entry and click Update.

4. Modify journal entry as necessary.

5. Click Save as Incomplete, if you plan to return to this entry and finalize it at a later date, or Click Continue.

6. Review your journal entry, select completion status and click Finish to validate and finalize your entry.

Deleting Manual Journal Entries

You can only delete manual journal entries in status Draft, Incomplete, or Error.

To delete manual journal entries:

1. Navigate to the Subledger Journal Entries page.

2. Enter search criteria and click Go.

3. Select journal entry and click Delete.

4. Click Yes to confirm your choice or No to keep the journal entry.

11

Inquiry and Reports

Inquiry Overview

Oracle Cash Management enables you to perform online inquiries to review bank account information, bank transfers, cashflow, balances and interest rate schedules, monitor reconciliation status, research payments and receipts, and view cash forecasting amounts. There are several inquiry windows in Cash Management:

- **View Bank Statement Reconciliation window**: Use this window to review statement reconciliations, details, and status. You can also access these other inquiry windows from View Bank Statement Reconciliation window:
  - View Bank Statement Lines window, page 11-3
  - View Available Batches window, page 11-7
  - View Available Transactions window, page 11-5
  - View Reconciled Transactions window, page 11-4
  - View Reversals window, page 11-4
  - View Reconciliation Errors window, page 11-5
- **View Available Transactions window**: Use this window to find and view transactions that are available to be reconciled with bank statement lines.
- **View Bank Account Transfer window**: Use this window to find and view the status of a bank account transfer.
- **View Cashflow window**: Use this window to find and view cashflow information.
- **View Bank Account Balances window**: Use this window to find and view bank account balance information.

- **View Interest Rate Schedule window** Use this window to find and view interest rate schedule details.

- **View Bank Information window**: Use this window to view bank information, bank addresses, and bank contacts.

- **View Bank Accounts window** Use this window to view account owner and use information, account information, account controls, cash management controls, reconciliation controls, foreign bank currency details, open interface controls, and manual reconciliation tolerances.

- **Payments window:** Use this window to review details of payments that are available for reconciliation. You can also find out the bank statement that a payment is reconciled to.

- **Receipts window**: Use this window to review details of receipts that are available for reconciliation. You can also find out the bank statement that a receipt is reconciled to.

Related Topics

Viewing Bank Statement Reconciliation, page 11-2

Viewing Available Transactions, page 11-5

Viewing Payments and Receipts, page 11-17

Using Attachments, page 5-40

Viewing Bank Statement Reconciliation

You can use View Bank Statement Reconciliation window to review statement reconciliations, details, and status. You can also access other inquiry windows from View Bank Statement Reconciliation window. You cannot change the information in a bank statement or reconciliation.

Prerequisite

Have bank statements entered and/or reconciled in Cash Management.

To query a bank statement:

1. Navigate to the Find Bank Statements window. From the Navigator, choose View>Bank Statements.

2. Enter the criteria for the statement you want to query, or leave the criteria blank to see a list of all existing statements.

3. Choose Find to see the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window containing the statements that meet your query criteria.

4. Select the statement you want to review, then choose Review. The View Bank Statement window appears.

   Cash Management displays the header information for the statement you queried. You can view Bank Name, Bank Branch, statement Date, bank Currency, Document Number, Statement Number, and GL Date. You also see Control and Line Totals for the statement and the corresponding reconciliation. Also, the number of lines and total amount are displayed for any statement lines that remain unreconciled. Finally, there is a Complete check box indicating whether the statement reconciliation has been completed.

5. Navigate to other inquiry windows, as needed, by selecting one of the buttons at the bottom of the View Bank Statement window. You may choose the Errors, Reversals, Reconciled, Available, and Lines buttons.

   - **Errors button:** The View Reconciliation Errors window appears.
   - **Reversals button:** The Find Reversals window appears.
   - **Reconciled button:** The View Reconciled Transactions window appears.
   - **Available button:** The Find Available Transactions window appears, or the View Available Batches window appears, depending on your selection criteria.
   - **Lines button:** The View Bank Statement Lines window appears, from which you can also choose Errors, Reconciled, and Available buttons.

To query bank statement lines:

1. Query the bank statement you want to review.

2. Choose Lines from the View Bank Statement window. The View Bank Statement Lines window appears, showing the statement lines, transaction Type, bank transaction Code, transaction Number, Date Cleared, Amount, Amount Reconciled, Charges and Status.

3. In the Exchange tabbed region, view exchange rate information for foreign currency transactions.

4. In the Reference tabbed region, view the Agent (supplier or customer), Agent Bank Account and Invoice number associated with each transaction.

5. In the Description tabbed region, see the Effective Date and Description of the transaction, as well as any associated Bank Charges.

6. Navigate to other inquiry windows, as needed, by selecting one of the buttons at the bottom of the View Bank Statement Lines window. You may choose Errors, Reconciled, and Available.

To query reconciled transactions:

1. Query the bank statement you want to review.

2. Choose Reconciled from the View Bank Statement window or the View Bank Statement Lines window. The View Reconciled Transactions window appears, showing the reconciled transaction lines. For each line you can view transaction Type and Number, Original Currency and Amount, bank Account Currency Amount and Amount Cleared, Transaction Date, Value Date, GL Date, and Date.

   At the bottom of the window, you can see two fields showing the Status, and Maturity Date for the selected transaction line.

3. In the Exchange tabbed region, view the Exchange Date, Type, and Rate, as well as the bank Account Currency Charges and Errors.

4. In the Reference tabbed region, view the Batch Name, Agent Name, Deposit Number, and Reference Type and Number.

5. Choose the Next button to move to the next record, if any, or choose the Previous button to move to the previous record, if any.

To query reversals:

1. Query the bank statement you want to review.

2. Choose Reversals from the View Bank Statement window. The Find Reversals window appears.

3. Enter any query values for receipt or check Number, Amount, Currency, and Date. You can also search for receipts and payments based on the Payment Method, Status, Account Number, and Account Currency Amount. Finally, you can enter Agent information to further narrow your search for a specific customer or supplier Name and Number.

   > **Tip:** Many of the query fields also have associated lists from which you can select a value. Choose the List of Values button from the Oracle Applications toolbar to see the list.

4. Choose Find. The View Reversals window appears, showing the transactions that meet your search criteria. For each line you can view transaction Type and Number, Original Currency and Amount, bank Account Currency Amount and Amount

Cleared, Transaction Date, Value Date, GL Date and Date.

At the bottom of the window, you can see two fields showing the Status and Maturity Date for the selected transaction line.

5. In the Reference tabbed region, view the Batch Name, Agent Name, Deposit Number, and Payment Method.

6. In the Comment tabbed region, view the Reversal Category, Reason, and Comments.

7. In the Bank tabbed region, view the Bank Account Number, Currency, and Name, as well as the Statement Number.

To review reconciliation errors:

1. Query the bank statement you want to review. (See above).

2. Choose Errors from the View Bank Statement window or View Bank Statement Lines window. The View Reconciliation Errors window appears, showing the Account, Bank Name, Currency, and Statement Date. The window also shows the Line Number and Message for each reconciliation error.

Related Topics

Entering Bank Statements Manually, page 4-23

Entering Bank Statement Lines, page 4-26

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Reviewing Reconciled Transactions, page 5-34

Reviewing Reconciliation Errors, page 5-15

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Using Attachments, page 5-40

Viewing Available Transactions

You can use View Available Transactions window to review those Payables and Receivables transactions that are available for reconciliation. You can also review any Oracle General Ledger journal entries that are available for reconciliation.

The window only lists void payments if the Show Void Payments option on the Systems Parameters window is checked. It does not list reversed receipts due to user error nor does it list the associated original receipts that were not reconciled.

You can access the View Available Transactions window from the Navigator, the View Bank Statement window, or the View Bank Statement Lines window.

Note: You cannot reconcile available transactions or journal entries from the View Available Transactions window.

Prerequisite

Have bank statements entered and/or reconciled in Cash Management.

To query available detail transactions from the Navigator:

1. Navigate to the Find Available window.

2. Choose Detail from the Detail/Batch/Open region, then select one or more transaction types to find detail transactions that match your criteria. You may select to view Receipt, Payment, Miscellaneous transactions, Journal, and Statement Line.

3. Edit the default sort criteria in the Ordering tabbed region of the window. The sort criteria you select determines how the resulting transactions are displayed in the View Available Transactions window.

   - Use the Primary poplist to select your primary sort category and the Secondary poplist to select your secondary sort category. The sort categories are transaction Type, Trx (transaction) Number, Date, and Amount.

   - Use the primary Order poplist to select a sort order for the primary sort category. Use the secondary Order poplist to select a sort order for the secondary category. The options are Ascending or Descending.

4. Select the Bank tabbed region.

   Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter the bank Account Number, Account Name, and Bank Name. The Branch Name and Currency Code fields are display only.

5. (Optional) Refine or focus your search further by selecting the following tabbed regions:

   - **Transaction:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter ranges of transaction Numbers, Dates, Amounts, Maturity Dates, Batch Names, and Remittance Numbers to find only transactions within those ranges. You can also choose to find only those transactions with a specific Currency Code.

   - **Agent:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter a Customer Name and Customer Number to use when finding Receivables transactions. You can also enter a Supplier Name and Supplier Number to use when finding Payables transactions.

- **Receipt:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter a Reference Type, Reference Number, Receipt Class, Payment Method, and Deposit Dates to use when finding miscellaneous transactions. Some fields are only available if you select Receipts or Miscellaneous in step 2 above.

- **Journal:** Cash Management displays some additional fields where you can enter a Period Name, Journal Entry Name, Document Number, or Line Number to use when finding journal entries.

6. Choose Find to find all transactions that match your search criteria. The View Available Transactions window appears, showing the available transaction lines. For each transaction you can view the transaction Type and Number, Original Currency and Amount, bank Account Currency Amount and Amount Cleared, Transaction Date, Value Date, GL Date, and Date.

   At the bottom of the window, you can see two fields showing the Status and Maturity Date for the selected transaction line.

7. In the Exchange tabbed region, view the Exchange Date, Type, and Rate, as well as the bank Account Currency Charges and Errors.

8. In the Reference tabbed region, view the Batch Name, Agent Name, Deposit Number, and Reference Type and Number.

To find available batches from the Navigator:

1. Navigate to the Find Available window.

2. Choose Batch from the Detail/Batch/Open region, then select Remittance and/or Payment to find batches that match your criteria.

3. Edit the default sort criteria in the Ordering tabbed region of the window. The sort criteria you select determines how the resulting transactions are displayed in the View Available Transactions window.

4. Select the Bank tabbed region.

5. Enter your Bank Account information or select one from the available list of values.

6. (Optional) Refine or focus your search further by selecting the Transaction tabbed region. You can enter transaction Dates, Amounts, Batch Names, Remittance Numbers, or the Currency Code to search for.

   Note: You cannot enter search criteria for the Agent, Miscellaneous, or Journal tabbed regions.

7. Choose Find to find all batches that match your search criteria. The View Available Batches window appears, showing the available batch lines. For each line you can view Batch Name, Original Currency and Total, bank Account Currency Total, Amount Cleared, Transaction Date, Value Date, GL Date, and Date.

   At the bottom of the window, you can see two fields showing the batch Type, and the Remittance Number for the selected batch line.

8. In the Exchange tabbed region, view the Exchange Date, Type, and Rate, as well as the bank Account Currency Charges and Errors.

To query available transactions and batches from the View Bank Statement window or View Bank Statement Lines windows:

1. Select Available from the related window. The Find Available window appears.

2. Complete your search criteria for transactions or batches as described in the previous two tasks.

   Note: You do not need to select a bank since you will have already done this from the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window.

3. Choose Find to perform your search. Refer to the previous two tasks for the steps to follow when reviewing the results of your search.

To find available Reconciliation Open Interface transactions:

1. Navigate to the Find Available window.

2. Choose Open Interface from the Detail/Batch/Open region, then select Receipts and/or Payments to find open interface transactions that match your criteria.

   The Open Interface option appears only if you have checked the Use Reconciliation Open Interface check box in the System Parameters window.

3. (Optional) Refine or focus your search further by selecting the Transaction tabbed region. You can enter transaction Dates, Amounts, Batch Names, Remittance Numbers, or the Currency Code to search for. You can also enter sort criteria, which determines how the resulting transactions are displayed in the Available Transactions window.

4. Choose Find to perform your search.

Related Topics

Reconciling Bank Statements Manually, page 5-21

Finding Available Transactions, Batches, and Journal Entries for Reconciliation, page 5-26

Reconciling Available Transactions, Batches, and Journal Entries, page 5-29

Creating Miscellaneous Transactions, page 5-41

Recording Exceptions, page 5-45

Entering Reversals, page 5-48

Viewing Bank Account Transfers

You can use this window to find out the status of a bank account transfer.

To view a bank account transfer

1. Navigate to the View > Bank Account Transfers page.
2. Enter search criteria and click Go.
3. The bank account transfer status can be one of the following:
   - **New**The transfer has been created but not validated yet.
   - **Validated**The transfer has been created and validated. It is ready to be manually authorized for settlement.
   - **Invalid**The transfer has failed validation.
   - **Rejected**The transfer is rejected by the user who is performing manual authorization.
   - **Settlement in Process**The transfer has been authorized for settlement and sent to Oracle Payments.
   - **Settled**The transfer was successfully processed by Oracle Payments or it did not require settlement via Oracle Payments.
   - **Failed**The transfer failed processing in Oracle Payments.
   - **Canceled**The transfer has been manually canceled by the user.

Viewing Cashflows

You can use this window to find out cashflow details.

To view cashflows:

1. Navigate to Cashflows window. From the navigator, choose View > Cashflows.
2. Enter the criteria for the cashflows you want to query. Fill in at least one of following fields:
   - **Cashflow Number**
   - **Bank Account Number**
   - **Cashflow Amount**
   - **Transaction Type**
   - **Direction**
   - **Bank Reference Number**
   - **Legal Entity**
   - **Cashflow Date**
   - **Cashflow Status**
3. Click on Go.

Viewing Bank Account Balances

You can use the Bank Account Balance window to review the details of your balances.

To view bank account balances

1. Navigate to the View > Bank Account Balance page.
2. If you do not have any personalized views created, you will be taken to the Advanced Search page. In this case, enter the search criteria and click Go. The bank account balances will be displayed using the system default layout. If you already have at least one view created, you will be taken to the Views page. In this case, select a view name from the list and click Go. The bank account balances will be displayed using your personal layout.

Viewing Interest Schedules

You can use the Interest Rate Schedule window to review the details of your interest rates.

To view interest rate schedules:

1. Navigate to the View > Interest Rate Schedules page.
2. Optionally, enter a part of the Interest Rate Schedule name in the Search region.
3. Click Go.
4. Click the name of the Interest Rate Schedule to view the details.

Viewing Bank Information

You can use the Banks window to review the details of general bank information, address information, and bank contact access.

To view bank information:

1. Navigate to the View > Banks page.
2. Perform a search using one of the following search options:
   - Bank Name
   - Alternate Name
   - Short Bank Name
   - Bank Number
   - Country
3. The Bank Information entered is available for review or may be updated.
   - **Country**The name of the country where the bank is located.
   - **Description**Description of the bank, for example, International Bank Partner
   - **Institution Type**Description of the kind of organization, for example, credit union.
   - **Bank Name** The name of the bank.
   - **Alternate Name**The alternate name for your bank. The system does not use the value. It is for your reference only.
   - **Taxpayer ID**Tax identification number for example, an individual's social security number, or a corporation or partnership's federal identification

number/federal tax ID.

- **Short Bank Name**This may be an alpha or a numeric reference.
- **Bank Number**Identification number of the bank. Payables uses this information to identify the bank in payment formats that use electronic payment methods. The combination of Bank Number, Branch Number, and Country must be unique.
- **XML Messanger Email**Email address for your contact at the bank.
- **Inactive Date**Date after which an expense report template can no longer be used when entering expense reports.

4. View Bank Address region information.
   - **Address**The mailing address for the bank.
   - **Country**The name of the country where the bank is located.
   - **Identifying** In many countries a fiscal code is the principal means of identifying and querying suppliers. The fiscal code is unique across all entities and appears on all official documentation.
5. View Bank Contact details.
   - **Name**Name of your contact person.
   - **Phone**Direct number to your bank contact.
   - **Email**Email address for your contact at the bank.
   - **Address**The mailing address for your contact.

Viewing Bank Accounts

You can use the Bank Accounts window to review the details of account owner and use, general account information, account controls, cash mangement controls, reconciliation controls, foreign bank currency details, open interface controls, and manual reconciliation tolerances.

To view bank accounts:

1. Navigate to the View > Bank Accounts page.
2. Perform a search using one of the following search options:

- Bank Name
- Alternate Name
- Short Bank Name
- Bank Number
- Country

3. View Account Owner and Use region.
   - **Bank Account Owner**The name of the source account holder.
   - **Account Use**Select the checkboxes that apply to your account: Payables, Payroll, Receivables, Treasury.

4. View Account Information region.
   - **Account Name**The name you used to refer to the bank account.
   - **Short Account Name**This may be an alpha or a numeric reference.
   - **Check Digit**The value used to validate the authenticity of your bank account number according to country specific bank account validation requirements. This value is provided by your financial institution.
   - **Multiple Currencies Allowed** If you selected a different currency than your ledger currency in this field, when you define Payables Payment Documents, you will only be able to select payment formats that you define in that currency. Also, you will only be able to pay invoices that you enter in this foreign currency.
   - **IBAN**International Bank Account Number.
   - **Account Type**Bank account type. For example, Controlled Disbursement for your internal bank account or Checking for a supplier or customer bank account.
   - **Alternate Account Name**The alternate name for your bank account. You can enter an alternate name for your bank account. This is particularly useful if you do business in Japan so you can enter both Kanji and Kana values for your bank account name. The system does not use the value you enter here unless you enable the Sort by Alternate Fields Payables option. If you enable that option then Payables uses the alternate name when it sorts reports by bank account name.

- **Account Number**The bank account identification number. The combination of Bank Account Number, Bank Branch Number, Account Use, and Currency must be unique for each bank. Refer to your country–sepcific documentation on validation that the system performs on the bank account number for specific countries.

- **Currency**Currency for a bank account. The default value is your ledger currency.

- **Account Type**Bank account type. For example, Controlled Disbursement for your internal bank account or Checking for a supplier or customer bank account.

- **EFT Number**Your enterprise's EFT (electronic funds transfer) user number.

- **Account Suffix**An identifier for your bank.

- **Account Holder** Name of the person or organization within your organization who is responsible for this account (optional).

- **Secondary Account Reference** Additional account reference. For your reference only.

- **Description**Description of the Bank Account. For your reference only.

- **Alternate Account Holder**The alternate name for your bank account holder.

- **Start Date**The start date entered if you wanted to limit the time during which a supplier site uses this bank account as the primary bank account for receiving electronic payments in the bank account currency.

- **Treasury Bank Account Number Reference** If your enterprise is a United States federal agency then you define the bank account number reference for a branch of the United States Treasury bank.

- **End Date**The end date entered if you wanted to limit the time during which a supplier site uses this bank account as the primary bank account for receiving electronic payments in the bank account currency.

5. View General Controls region.

   - **Cash**The cash account number entered in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product. For example: 01-000-1110-0000-000.

   - **Cash Clearing**The cash clearing account number entered in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Bank Charges**The bank charges account number entered in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Bank Errors**The bank errors account number entered in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Foreign Exchange Charges**The foreign exchange charges account number entered in the following format: Company-Department-Account-Sub-Account-Product.

- **Agency Location Code** If your enterprise is a United States federal agency then you entered an Agency Location Code.

- **Netting Account**Yes or No.

6. View Cash Management Controls region.

   - **Minimum Target Balance**The minimum target balance for bank accounts.

   - **Maximum Target Balance**The maximum target balance for bank accounts.

   - **Minimum Payment Amount**Option to pay the minimum payment available.

   - **Minimum Receipt Amount** This is the minimum amount in this currency that must be specified when you created automatic receipts with this payment method.

   - **Rounding Factor** Indicates the way amounts are displayed. Options are selected from the LOV.

   - **Rounding Rule**Round Up, Round Down, or Nearest.

   - **Cash Flow Display Order**Details cash receipts minus cash disbursements from a given operation or asset for a given period.

7. View Reconciliation Controls region.

   - **Payables Matching Order** Transaction or Batch.

   - **Float Handling**Error or Ignore.

   - **Receivables Matching Order**Transaction or Batch.

8. View Foreign Currency Bank region.

   - **Exchange Rate Type**AutoReconciliation selected the exchange rates for the transaction currency using the Exchange Rate Type you specified.

- **Exchange Rate Date**AutoReconciliation selected the exchange rates for the transaction currency using the date source you specified.
  - Options for exchange rate dates include:
  - **Bank Statement GL Date**The accounting date used to clear the statement.
  - **Bank Statement Date**The closing date of the statement.
  - **Statement Line Date**The date the transaction cleared the bank.
  - **Transaction Creation Date**The date the transaction was created.
  - **Transaction Creation GL Date**The accounting date used to create the transaction.
  - · **Transaction Exchange Rate Date**The date associated with the exchange rate that was used to create the transaction.

9. View Open Interface Controls region.
   - **Use Reconciliation Open Interfaces** The checkbox is enabled if you use this feature.
   - **Open Interface Matching Criteria**The default is Transaction Number. To reconcile bank statement lines to Treasury settlements, select the Date and Amount option.
   - **Float Status**Status of open interface transactions that are available for clearing and reconciliation.
   - **Clear Status**Status of open interface transactions that have cleared or reconciled.
10. View Manual Reconciliation Tolerances region.
    - **Tolerance Amount**Reconciliation tolerances that were entered as an amount.
    - **Tolerance Percentage** Reconciliation tolerances that were entered as a percentage.
11. View Account Access region.

    OrganizationThe checkboxes selected apply to your account: Payables, Payroll, Receivables, Treasury, End Date, Access, Options.
12. View Account Contact

- **Name**Name of your contact person.
- **Phone**Direct number to your bank contact.
- **Email**Email address for your contact at the bank.
- **Address**The mailing address for your contact.

Viewing Payments and Receipts

You can use the Payments window to review the details of transactions in Oracle Payables that are available for reconciliation. You can use the Receipts window to review the details of transactions in Oracle Receivables that are available for reconciliation. You can also use these two windows to find out the bank statement that a payment or receipt is reconciled to.

To view payments in Oracle Payables:

1. Navigate to the Payments window.
2. Query the payments you want to review.
3. If a payment is reconciled, scroll to the Statement Num and Statement Line Num field to find information on the bank statement.

To view receipts in Oracle Receivables:

1. Navigate to the Receipts window.
2. Query the receipts you want to review.
3. If a receipt is reconciled, choose the Cash Management tab to find information on the bank statement.

Cash Management Reports

Cash Management provides several reports to help you review and analyze your cash management activities.

You can run the following Cash Management reports from the Submit Request window:

- Archive/Purge Bank Statements, page 11-24
- AutoReconciliation Execution Report, page 11-24

- Bank Statement Detail Report, page 11-24
- Bank Statement Loader Execution Report, page 11-25
- Bank Statement Summary Report, page 11-26
- Bank Statements by Document Number Report, page 11-26
- Bank Transaction Codes Listing, page 11-39
- Cash Forecast Report, page 11-21
- Cash Forecast Execution Report, page 11-22
- Cash Forecast Template Listing Report, page 11-22
- Cash in Transit Report, page 11-30
- Cleared Transactions Report, page 11-31
- GL Reconciliation Report, page 11-27
- Payment Exceptions Report, page 11-39
- Purge Cash Forecasts, page 11-23
- Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report, page 11-33
- Batches Available for Reconciliation Report, page 11-36
- Bank Statement Cashflow Creation Execution Report, page 11-36
- Bank Account Balance Single Date Report, page 11-36
- Bank Account Balance Range Day Report, page 11-36
- Bank Account Balance Actual vs Projected Report, page 11-36

Submitting Requests

To submit a standard request or request set from the Submit Request window:

1. Navigate to the Submit a New Request window.
2. Choose either Request or Request Set. Choose OK to open the Submit Requests window.
3. Enter the name of the request or request set that you want to submit.

4. If the request or request set has parameters, enter the parameters in the Parameters window. Choose OK to save the parameters.

   If your request has parameters, you can see detailed information on the parameters in the Selected Report Parameters section of the request description, or in Common Report Parameters. See: Common Report Parameters, page 11-20

5. Choose Submit to submit your request. You can review the status of your request in the Concurrent Requests Summary or the Requests window.

   If your request has output, you can see detailed information on it in the Selected Report Headings section of the request description, or in the Common Report Headings help document. See: Common Report Headings, page 11-20.

Cancelling Requests

To cancel a concurrent request:

In the Concurrent Requests Summary, query the concurrent request number for your request. Select your request. Choose Cancel Request. See also: Cancelling Requests, *Oracle Applications User's Guide*.

Monitoring Requests

To monitor the status of a concurrent request:

You can view the status of your request in the Requests window by choosing View My Requests from the Help Menu. See Also: Monitoring Requests, *Oracle Applications User's Guide*.

Defining Request Sets

From the Submit Request window, you can submit a single request, or you can submit a request set to run several reports as a group. See Also: Defining Request Sets in the *Oracle Applications User Guide*.

Related Topics

Cash Management Reports, page 11-17

Common Report Parameters, page 11-20

Common Report Headings, page 11-20

Using the Concurrent Requests Windows in the *Oracle Applications User Guide*.

Overview of Reports and Programs in *Oracle Applications User Guide*

Changing Request Options in *Oracle Applications User Guide*

Defining Request Sets in *Oracle Applications User Guide*

Submitting a Request Set in *Oracle Applications User Guide*

Common Report Parameters

These report parameters are common to many Cash Management reports:

Bank Account Number: Select an account or leave blank to run the report for all accounts at the bank branch.

Bank Branch Name: Select the bank branch name for which the report will be produced.

Statement Date. Enter the date of the statement lines that you want to include in the report.

Statement Date From/To: Enter a range of dates to see information only for statement lines that fall within those dates.

Statement Number From/To: Enter a range of statement numbers to include in the report.

Common Report Headings

Report headings at the top of each page provide you with general information about the contents of your report or listing, such as your ledger name, report title, date and time Cash Management runs your report, and page number.

In addition, Cash Management prints the parameters you specified when you submitted the report request.

The following are report headings common to many Cash Management reports:

Bank Account Currency: Currency for a bank account.

Bank Account Name: Name of the bank account.

Bank Account Number: Bank account identification number.

Bank Branch Name: Name of the bank branch.

Bank Name: Name of the bank.

Cash Forecasting Reports

When you generate a cash forecast, Cash Management automatically produces the Cash Forecast Execution Report. If the cash forecast completes successfully, Cash Management also automatically produces the Cash Forecast report.

You can review the Cash Forecast Execution Report to determine if any errors occurred when you ran the Submit Forecast program.

Cash Management provides the following cash forecasting reports:

- Cash Forecast Report, page 11-21
- Cash Forecast Execution Report, page 11-22

Cash Forecast Report

The Cash Forecast Report lets you view the cash forecast data that you can see in the Cash Forecast Results page online.

If you submit this report using Oracle Report eXchange you can export your cash forecast data to the spreadsheet application of your choice. You can also print the Cash Forecast Report to review your forecasts instead of viewing them online.

Report Submission

Cash Management automatically produces this report when you generate a cash forecast using the Run Forecast icon in the Forecast Templates Search and Results page or the Forecasts Search and Results page or when you are using the Submit Request window, and that forecast completes successfully. You can also print this report at a later time using the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Template Name. Enter the template name of the cash forecast that you want to produce.

Forecast Name. Enter the name of the cash forecast that you want to produce.

Selected Report Headings

Status. The status of the forecast execution, such as success, warning, or error.

Calendar Name. The name of the General Ledger accounting calendar. Applicable only for forecasts by General Ledger period.

Start Date. For forecasts by days, the earliest date of information that is included in the forecast.

Start Period. For forecasts by General Ledger period, the earliest period of information that is included in the forecast.

Project Number. For forecasts of projects, the project number associated with the forecast.

Project Name. For forecasts of projects, the project name associated with the forecast.

Forecast Currency. The currency of the amounts that appear in the forecast.

Source Currency Type. Determines if source transactions are selected by currency:

- All - All transactions are included.

- Entered - Transactions entered in the source currency are included.
- Ledger - Transactions where the source currency is the same as the ledger currency are included.

Source Currency. The currency of the source transactions included in the forecast.

Exchange Type. The exchange rate type, as defined in Oracle General Ledger.

Exchange Date. The exchange date, as defined in Oracle General Ledger.

Amount Threshold. The minimum amount of an individual transaction in order for it to be included in the forecast.

Cash Inflow. The total amount of cash received during the forecast period.

Cash Outflow. The total amount of cash spent during the forecast period.

Net Cash. The difference between the cash inflow and cash outflow for the forecast period.

Cash Forecast Execution Report

This report includes information on any errors that the Submit Forecast program produced when you submitted a cash forecast to be generated.

Report Submission

Cash Management automatically generates this report when you submit a forecast using the Run Forecast icon in the Forecast Templates Search and Results page or the Forecasts Search and Results page, or when you are using the Submit Request window to submit a forecast. You can also print this report at a later time using the Submit Request window. See: Generating a Cash Forecast with Amounts Calculated Automatically, page 6-21 and Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Forecast Name. Enter the name of the forecast that you submitted.

Selected Report Headings

Forecast Name. The name of the cash forecast.

Template Name. The name of the template for the cash forecast.

Forecast By. The forecast period type (GL Period or Days).

Start Date. The earliest date of information that is included in the forecast.

Forecast Currency. The currency of the amounts that appear in the forecast.

Source Currency Type. Determines if source transactions are selected by currency:

- All - All transactions are included.

- Entered - Transactions entered in the source currency are included.
- Ledger - Transactions where the source currency is the same as the ledger currency are included.

Source Currency. The currency for the source transactions included in the forecast.

Exchange Date. The exchange date, as defined in Oracle General Ledger.

Exchange Type. The exchange rate type, as defined in Oracle General Ledger.

Error Message. Description of any errors that occurred for the cash forecast.

Purge Cash Forecasts Report

The Purge Cash Forecast Report lets you view which forecasts have been purged. Cash Management automatically generates this report when you submit the Purge Cash Forecasts program using the Submit Request window.

Report Submission

Cash Management automatically generates this report when you run the Purge Cash Forecasts program.

Selected Report Headings

Forecast Name. The name of the forecasts that were purged.

Template Name. The name of the template associated with the purged forecasts.

Forecast By. Indicates whether the forecast was by days or GL periods.

Forecast Date/Period. Indicates thestart date or GL period of the purged forecast.

Statements Reports

Cash Management provides the following statements reports.

- Archive/Purge Bank Statements Report, page 11-24
- AutoReconciliation Execution Report, page 11-24
- Bank Statement Detail Report, page 11-24
- Bank Statement Summary Report, page 11-26
- Bank Statements by Document Number Report, page 11-26
- GL Reconciliation Report, page 11-27
- Sweep Transactions Generation Execution Report, page 11-29

Archive/Purge Bank Statements Report

Use this report to view a list of bank statements that were archived or purged from Cash Management. This report lists only the number of headers and lines archived or purged from the bank statement interface table and does not list reconciliations or errors, since they are not applicable to interface tables. This report does, however, list the number of headers, lines, reconciliations, and errors for the bank statement tables.

The number under the headers and lines column is the total number of headers and lines that have been archived or purged.

Report Submission

Cash Management automatically generates this report when you run the Archive/Purge Bank Statements program.

AutoReconciliation Execution Report

This report shows import and reconciliation errors that occurred when running the AutoReconciliation program. Cash Management automatically produces this report during the automatic reconciliation process. You may also request it as needed from the Submit Request window.

This report includes either statement import errors, which prevented the automatic loading of your bank statement, or your reconciliation exceptions found during the automatic reconciliation process.

This report lists the details of any miscellaneous transactions that were created in Receivables during the automatic reconciliation process.

If the Autoreconciliation program does not encounter any reconciliation errors or exceptions, the body of the report will display a message that says the program ran successfully and that there was no error found.

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Statement Number. Enter the number of the bank statement.

Bank Statement Detail Report

This report shows statement and transaction information for a specific bank account statement, including bank statement header information, statement line detail, and reconciled transaction detail. This report lists any unreconciled transactions separately with their current status, and the statement totals for each type of transaction, including

the amount entered, reconciled, unreconciled and over-reconciled. Under-reconciled amounts are displayed as a negative amount in the over-reconciled column. You also have the option to run the report for only unreconciled statement lines.

The statements are displayed in the following order:

1. Bank Branch Name
2. Bank Account Name
3. Statement Date
4. Statement Number

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Break Level. Indicate if you want the report to have a page break for every bank account or for every bank statement.

Statement Line Status. Indicate if you want to include reconciled, unreconciled, or all transactions in the report.

Bank Statement Loader Execution Report

This report shows errors and warnings that occur when the Bank Statement Loader program transfers data from the intermediate table to the Bank Statement Open Interface tables. Cash Management automatically produces this report when you run the Bank Statement Loader program.

The report lists exceptions by their type. The report lists errors first and warnings next. Within each type, the report sorts exceptions by the Rec No, in ascending order.

Report Submission

Cash Management automatically generates this report when you run the Bank Statement Loader program.

Selected Report Headings

Name. Name of the mapping template specified in the Mapping Name parameter of the Bank Statement Loader program.

Description. Description of the mapping template specified in the Mapping Name parameter of the Bank Statement Loader program.

Format Type. Format type of the mapping template specified in the Mapping Name

parameter of the Bank Statement Loader program.

Control File. SQL*Loader file of the mapping template specified in the Mapping Name parameter of the Bank Statement Loader program.

Data File Name. Value specified in the Data File Name parameter of the Bank Statement Loader program.

Bank Account Number. The bank account number of the statement that was loaded into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables.

Statement Number. The bank statement number of the statement that was loaded into the Bank Statement Open Interface tables.

Type. Warning or error

Message. Message text.

Rec No. The sequential number of the record in the bank statement file.

Bank Statement Summary Report

This report shows summary bank statement information for a bank account.

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Balances By. Indicate if you want to sort the balances on the report by statement date or effective date.

As Of Date. Only statement information entered before this date is included on the report.

Bank Statements by Document Number Report

This report lists bank statements in document number order, to help you identify missing and deleted statements.

If you or your System Administrator sets up the Document Sequences feature for Cash Management, then you can print a report to list all bank statements in document number order.

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Sequence Name. Enter the name of the document sequence that you want to use to produce the report.

Document Number From/To. Enter the range of document numbers for statements that you want to include in the report.

GL Reconciliation Report

Use this report to reconcile the General Ledger cash account balance to the bank statement closing balance and to identify any discrepancies in your cash position. The General Ledger cash account should pertain to only one bank account. This report is available in Summary and in Detail format.

The Summary report lists the General Ledger cash account balance and an adjusted balance for the bank statement. It also lists a separate adjustment amount for unreconciled receipts, payments, and journal entries which have been recorded in the General Ledger cash account, as well as bank errors. The Detail report provides details for the unreconciled items as well as the information contained in the Summary report.

> **Note:** This report does not include information on Payroll payments, Treasury settlements, or external transactions in the Reconciliation Open Interface because they may have been posted to a different General Ledger account than the one assigned to the bank account.

> **Warning:** To ensure that this report is accurate, you must first perform these tasks:

- Reconcile all statements in Cash Management.
- Transfer journal entry transactions from Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables to your General Ledger.
- Post journals in General Ledger.
- Run the report for the current GL period.

See: How Using Cash Management Affects Your Closing Process, page 5-61

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Period Name. Enter the name of the period for which you want to reconcile to the General Ledger.

Closing Balance. Enter the bank statement closing balance for the period you entered.

Report Type. Choose either Summary or Detail to indicate if you want the report to provide summary balances only or details of unreconciled items.

Selected Report Headings

General Ledger Cash Account Balance. The balance in the General Ledger cash account after all relevant postings have occurred for the reconciliation period. The General Ledger cash account pertains to only one bank account.

Bank Statement Closing Balance. The bank statement closing balance that you specified.

Unreconciled Receipts. Total amount of receipts that were recorded in the General Ledger cash account for the reconciliation period, but were not reconciled as of the statement cutoff date.

Unreconciled Payments. Total amount of payments that were recorded in the General Ledger cash account for the reconciliation period, but were not reconciled as of the statement cutoff date.

Unreconciled Journal Entries. Total amount of journal entries that were posted to the General Ledger cash account but were not reconciled for the reconciliation period. Depending on the transactions, these are added to or subtracted from the General Ledger cash account balance.

Lines Marked as Errors. Total amount of transactions that are in dispute with the bank and are considered to be outstanding as of the statement cutoff date.

Adjusted Bank Statement Balance. The sum of the Bank Statement Closing Balance, Unreconciled Receipts, Unreconciled Payments, Unreconciled Journal Entries, and Lines Marked as Errors.

Difference. The net difference between the General Ledger Cash Account Balance and the Adjusted Bank Statement Balance. You can investigate this balance to identify items that comprise it. You can start by investigating the corresponding items for the lines marked as error in the bank statement.

Detail Report

Unreconciled Receipts. Details of transactions that comprise the Unreconciled Receipts total amount. The transactions include receipts that have the status of Cleared, Remitted, or Reversed.

- **Cleared.** Receipts that have been manually cleared in Cash Management or automatically cleared in Receivables, but have not been reconciled.

- **Remitted.** Receipts that have been deposited and accounted, but have not been cleared or reconciled.

- **Reversed.** Receipts that have been reversed either through Cash Management or through Receivables and are available for reconciliation.

Unreconciled Payments. Details of transactions that comprise the Unreconciled Payments total amount. The transactions include payments that have the status of Cleared, Negotiable, or Stop Initiated.

- **Cleared.** Payments that have been manually cleared but have not been reconciled.

- **Negotiable.** Payments that have been issued and accounted, but have not been cleared or reconciled.

- **Stop Initiated.** Payments that have been stopped in Payables and are available for reconciliation.

Unreconciled Journal Entries. Details of transactions that comprise the Unreconciled Journal Entries total amount. The transactions include budget journals created with the Balance Type of Actual.

Lines Marked as Errors. Details of transactions that comprise the Lines Marked as Errors total amount.

Bank Statement Cashflow Creation Execution Report

The Bank Statement Cashflow Creation Execution Report shows a complete, comprehensive listing of errors and cashflow transactions created successfully when running the Bank Statement Cashflow Creation program. Cash Management automatically produces this report during the bank statement cashflow creation process.

Report Submission

Cash Management automatically generates this report when you run the Bank Statement Cashflow Creation program.

Sweep Transactions Generation Execution Report

The Sweep Transactions Generation Execution Report lists Sweep Transactions Generation exceptions. During automatic deal generation, the following error messages are shown in the output file:

- Transaction generation failure, incomplete cash pool setup

- Transaction generation failure, mandatory fields missing

- Transaction generation failure, bank account number is missing
- Transaction generation successful, with a limit warning
- Possible match already exists for Deal #_____, Transaction #_____

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Transactions Reports

Cash Management provides the following transactions reports.

- Cash in Transit Report, page 11-30
- Cleared Transactions Report, page 11-31
- Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report, page 11-33
- Batches Available for Reconciliation Report, page 11-36
- Payments Exceptions Report, page 11-39

Cash in Transit Report

This report lists, for a specific bank account, all transactions that have been remitted to the bank but have not been cleared. This report excludes all voided transactions. The report also excludes all reversed transactions which have a reversal date on or prior to the As of Date.

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Transaction Type. The type of transactions that you want to include on the report.

- AP Payments
- AR Receipts
- AP Payments and AR Receipts

- Payroll Payments
- Open Interface Transactions
- All

Payroll Business Group. This field is only enabled if Payroll Payments is selected in the Transaction Type field. If a business group is entered, only payroll payments that belong to this business group are displayed on the report.

AP/AR Operating Unit. This field is only enabled if either AP Payments or AR Receipts is selected in the Transaction Type parameter field. If an operating unit is entered, only AP Payments or AR receipts that belong to this operating unit are included on the report.

As Of Date. Only transactions that were entered before this date are included on the report.

Sort By. Indicate if you wish to sort the uncleared receipts and payments by Maturity Date, Payment Method, or Payment/Receipt Number.

Selected Report Headings

Payments in Transit:

Vendor Name. The supplier associated with the transaction.

Payment Date. The check or payment date.

Maturity Date. The maturity date of the payment.

Curr. The code for the currency of the payment.

Amount. The amount of the payment.

Bank Account Amount. The payment amount in the currency of the bank account.

Receipts in Transit:

Customer Name. The customer associated with the transaction.

Remit Date. The receipt transaction date.

Maturity Date. The receipt maturity/due date.

Curr. The code for the currency of the receipt.

Amount. The amount of the receipt.

Account Amount. The receipt amount in the currency of the bank account.

Cleared Transactions Report

This report shows transactions that were cleared or reconciled both manually and automatically.

The cleared receipts section shows the customer name, remittance date, maturity date, payment method, receipt number, currency, amount, account amount, cleared date, and cleared amount.

The cleared payments section shows the supplier name, payment date, payroll payments, maturity date, payment method, payment number, currency, amount, account amount, cleared date, and cleared amount

You can submit the report forPayables payments only, receipts only, payroll payments, or all three.

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Bank Branch. Bank branch for which you want to submit the report.

Bank Account Number. If you want to submit the report for a particular bank account, enter the bank account number.

Transaction/Batch. Select the level at which you want to run the report:

- Batch.
- Transaction.

Transaction Type. Transaction type for which you want to run the report.

- All.
- Payments.
- Receipts.
- AP Payments and AR Receipts.
- Payroll Payments.
- Open Interface Transactions
- Cash Management Transactions.
- Journal Entry Lines.
- Bank Statement Lines.
- Treasury Open Interface Transactions.

Treasury Legal Entity. This field is enabled if Treasury Open Interface is selected in the Transaction Type parameter field. If a legal entity is entered, only Treasury transactions that belong to this legal entity are included on the report.

Payroll Business Group. This field is only enabled if Payroll Payments is selected in the Transaction Type field. If a business group is entered, only payroll payments that belong to this business group are displayed on the report.

AP/AR Operating Unit. This field is enabled if either AP Payments or AR Receipts is selected in the Transaction Type parameter field. If an operating unit is entered, only AP payments or AR receipts that belong to this operating unit are included on the report.

Cleared Date From/To. Enter a value in one or both fields if you want to limit the report to transactions with cleared dates during a particular time period.

Order By. Order in which report output will be displayed.

- Amount.
- Date.

Selected Report Headings

Remittance Date. The receipt transaction date.

Maturity Date. Date the issuing bank dispersed funds.

Amount. Amount of payment in the currency it was issued.

Account Amount. Payment amount in the currency of the bank account.

Cleared Date. Date the payment or receipt cleared in Cash Management.

Payment Date. Date payment is issued.

Cleared Amount. Amount cleared in Cash Management.

Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report

This report shows all transactions available for reconciliation for a specific bank account. It lists detailed transaction information for your Available Receipts, Available Payments, and Available Journal Entries for reconciliation. Detailed information includes the Customer, Supplier, Transaction Date, Payment Method, Transaction Number, Currency, and Amount. It also lists detailed information for statement lines that are available for reconciliation against other statement lines.

> **Note:** Statement lines that cannot be reconciled are not shown. To view these lines, you should run the Bank Statement Detail Report.

This report only lists void payments if the Show Void Payments option on the Systems Parameters window is checked. It does not list receipts reversed due to user error nor

does it list the associated original receipts that were not reconciled. This report groups transactions by status so that void or reversed transactions are separate from regular transactions.

The Net Available Amount is calculated as Total Available Receipts - Total Reversed Receipts - Total Available Payments + Total Voided Payments.

> **Note:** If you want to view batches available for reconciliation, submit the Batches Available for Reconciliation Report, page 11-36.

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Transaction Type. Indicate the types of transactions, such as payments, that you want to include on the report.

- All.
- Payments.
- Receipts.
- AP Payments and AR Receipts.
- Payroll Payments.
- Open Interface Transactions.
- Cash Management Transactions.
- Journal Entry Lines.
- Bank Statement Lines.
- Treasury Open Interface Transactions.

Treasury Legal Entity. This field is enabled if Treasury Open Interface is selected in the Transaction Type parameter field. If a legal entity is entered, only Treasury transactions that belong to this legal entity are included on the report.

Payroll Business Group. This field is only enabled if Payroll Payments is selected in the Transaction Type field. If a business group is entered, only payroll payments that belong to this business group are displayed on the report.

AP/AR Operating Unit. This field is enabled if either AP Payments or AR Receipts is

selected in the Transaction Type parameter field. If an operating unit is entered, only AP payments or AR receipts that belong to this operating unit are included on the report.

Bank Account Number. Enter the bank account number.

Order By. Choose to sort the report by amount or date.

Selected Report Headings

Available Receipts:

Customer Name. The customer associated with the transaction.

Remit Date. The receipt transaction date.

Maturity Date. The receipt maturity/due date.

Curr. The code for the currency of the receipt.

Amount. The amount of the receipt.

Account Amount. The receipt amount in the currency of the bank account.

Available Payments:

Supplier Name. The supplier associated with the transaction.

Payment Date. The check or payment date.

Maturity Date. The maturity date of the payment.

Curr. The code for the currency of the payment.

Amount. The amount of the payment.

Account Amount. The payment amount in the currency of the bank account.

Journal Entry Lines:

Effective Date. The date the journal entry line affects balances in the general ledger.

Maturity Date. The maturity date of the journal entry line.

Journal Entry Description. Matching is performed against the journal entry description.

Curr. The code for the currency of the journal entry line.

Amount. The amount of the journal entry line.

Account Amount. The amount of the journal entry line in the currency of the bank account.

Reversed Receipts:

Customer Name. The customer associated with the transaction.

Remit Date. The receipt transaction date.

Maturity Date. The maturity date or due date of the transaction.

Payment Method. The user-defined Receivables choices for how customer's invoices

can be paid for customer receipts.

Receipt Number. The receipt number.

Currency. The code for the currency of the receipt.

Amount. The amount of the receipt.

Account Amount. The receipt amount in the currency of the bank account.

Unreconciled Statement Lines:

Statement Number. The number of the bank statement.

Transaction Date. The transaction date.

Maturity Date. The transaction maturity/due date.

Line Type. Indicates the types of transactions, such as payments.

Transaction Number. The transaction number.

Currency. The code for the currency of the statement line.

Amount. The amount of the statement line.

Account Amount. The amount in the currency of the bank account.

Batches Available for Reconciliation Report

This report shows any batches available for reconciliation for a specific bank account. It lists detailed transaction information for your Payment and Remittance Batches that are available for reconciliation. Detailed information includes the Batch Name, Remit/Payment Date, Deposit Number/Reference, Currency, and Amount.

> **Note:** To view transactions available for reconciliation, submit the Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report. , page 11-33

Report Submission

Submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Parameters

Batch Type. Indicate the type of batch to include on the report.

Bank Account Number. Enter the bank account number.

Order By. Choose to sort the report by amount or date.

Selected Report Headings

Bank Account Currency. The code for the currency of the bank account.

Remit/Payment Date. The batch transaction date.

Deposit Number/Reference Number. The deposit number on the remittance batch or the reference number on the payment batch.

Curr. The code for the currency of the batch.

Amount. The amount of the batch.

Account Amount. The batch amount in the currency of the bank account.

Balances Reports

Cash Management provides the following balances reports.

- Bank Account Balance Single Date Report
- Bank Account Balance Range Day Report
- Bank Account Balance Actual vs Projected Report

Bank Account Balance Single Date Report

The Bank Account Balance Single Date Report allows users to report on one or more bank account's balances for a particular date and the results are grouped by Bank Account Currency.

Selected Report Parameters

Bank Account Currency. Enter the currency of the bank account.

Legal Entity. Enter a legal entity to which the user has access.

As of Date. Enter the date on which you want to review the balance information.

Reporting Currency. Choose a currency in which you want the balances to be reported in addition to the local currency. If the user selects a Reporting Currency, the Exchange Rate Type and Exchange Rate Date parameters are required.

Exchange Rate Type. Choose an exchange rate type, as defined in Oracle General Ledger.

Exchange Rate Date. Enter the date of the exchange rate.

Selected Report Headings

As of Date. Balance date on which the balances are reported.

Legal Entity. The legal entity that you specified.

Reporting Currency. The reporting currency that you specified.

Exchange Rate Type. The exchange rate type that you specified.

Exchange Rate Date. The exchange rate date that you specified.

Bank Account Balance Day Range Report

The Bank Account Balance Day Range Report allows users to report on one or more bank account's balances for a range of dates.

Selected Report Parameters

Bank Account Currency. Enter the currency of the bank account.

Legal Entity. Enter a legal entity to which the user has access.

From Date. Enter the start date of a date range from which you want to review the balance information.

To Date. Enter the end date of a date range to which you want to review the balances.

Reporting Currency. Choose a currency in which you want the balances to be reported in addition to the local currency. If the user selects a Reporting Currency, the Exchange Rate Type and Exchange Rate Date parameters are required.

Exchange Rate Type. Choose an exchange rate type, as defined in Oracle General Ledger.

Exchange Rate Date. Enter the date of the exchange rate.

Selected Report Headings

From/To Date. The from and to dates that you specified.

Legal Entity. The legal entity that you specified.

Reporting Currency. The reporting currency that you specified.

Exchange Rate Type. The exchange rate type that you specified.

Exchange Rate Date. The exchange rate date that you specified.

Bank Account Balance Actual vs Projected Report

The Bank Account Balance Actual vs Projected Report allows users to compare one or more bank account's actual balance to the projected balance for a range of dates.

Selected Report Parameters

Bank Account Currency. Enter the currency of the bank account.

Legal Entity. Enter a legal entity to which the user has access.

From Date. Enter the start date of a date range from which you want to review the

balance information.

To Date. Enter the end date of a date range to which you want to review the balances.

Actual Balance Type. Choose the actual balance type (e.g. Available Balance, Ledger Balance, etc.) that you want to compare to the projected balance.

Selected Report Headings

From/To Date. The from and to dates that you specified.

Legal Entity. The legal entity that you specified.

Payment Exceptions Report

If you implement the automatic bank transmission feature, use this report to view payment exceptions generated by the bank and transmitted to your local directory. You can view the transmission history and the actual report in the Transmissions window. In the Find Transmissions window, choose the file type of EXCEPTION to query exceptions reports. Select the File Text field of the file you want to view and choose Edit Field from the Edit menu. The Editor window displays the content of the file you selected. See: *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

To resolve the payment exceptions, you need to manually unreconcile the transactions in Cash Management and void the payment in Payables.

Report Submission

You submit this report from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18. Select the Retrieve Payment Exceptions program.

Selected Report Parameters

Transmission Code. Indicate the transmission code defined for your bank. The transmission code determines the set of transmission parameters this program uses.

Cash Management Listings

Cash Management provides the following listings.

- Bank Transaction Codes Listing, page 11-39
- Cash Forecast Template Listing, page 11-41

Bank Transaction Codes Listing

Use this listing to review the transaction codes that you defined for a specific bank

account.

Report Submission

You submit this listing from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Selected Report Headings

Code. The code that the bank uses to identify this type of transaction.

Desc. A description of the transaction associated with this code.

Start Date. The first date, in a range of dates, that the transaction code is active.

End Date. The last date, in a range of dates, that the transaction code is active.

Trans Source. The source for transactions that Cash Management uses to reconcile statement lines for this transaction code.

- Journal - General Ledger journals
- Open Interface - Reconciliation Open Interface
- Supplier Payments - Oracle Payables
- Customer Receipts - Oracle Receivables

Matching Against. The identifier for the order and type of transactions to match for the transaction code if the transaction type is Miscellaneous Receipt or Miscellaneous Payment:

- Misc - Only matches against miscellaneous transactions.
- Stmt - Only matches against statement lines (corrections).
- Misc, Stmt - Cash Management first tries to match against miscellaneous transactions. If there is no match, then it tries to match against statement lines (corrections).
- Stmt, Misc - Cash Management first tries to match against statement lines (corrections). If there is no match, then it tries to match against miscellaneous transactions.

Correction Method. The method the bank uses to correct bank errors: reversal, adjustment, or both. The correction method only applies to Miscellaneous Receipt or Miscellaneous Payment transaction codes that may be used to match to correction statement lines.

Create. Indicates if Cash Management creates transactions for any miscellaneous payments or miscellaneous receipts that are reported on a bank statement without a transaction number.

Activity. The Receivables activity type for any miscellaneous transactions (receipts) that were created within Cash Management.

Payment Method. The payment method for any miscellaneous transactions (payments) that were created within Cash Management.

Cash Forecast Template Listing

Use this report to see details for a cash forecast template.

Report Submission

You submit this listing from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

Report Parameter

Template Name. The template for which you want to run the report. Leave this parameter blank to create a listing for all templates.

Selected Report Headings

For details on any heading, see the Forecast Template Rows Window Reference, page 6-8.

Cash Management Programs

Cash Management provides the following programs:

Archive/Purge Bank Statements, page 5-62

Bank Statement Import and AutoReconciliation, page 5-1

Bank Statement Import, page 4-11

AutoReconciliation, page 5-1

Sweep Transactions Generation, page 5-6

Cash Forecasting by GL Periods, page 6-20

Cash Forecasting by Days, page 6-20

Purge Cash Forecasts, page 6-44

Cash Position Prior Day Cash Flow and Overdue Transactions, page 7-6

Bank Statement Cashflow Creation, page 7-6

Program Submission

You submit these programs from the Submit Request window. See: Submitting Requests, page 11-18.

A

Navigation Paths

This appendix describes the default navigation paths for each window in Cash Management.

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Cash Management Window Navigation PathsNavigation pathssectHead

Cash Management Window Navigation Paths

Although your system administrator may have customized your navigator, typical navigation paths for each predefined responsibility in Cash Management are described in the following tables:

Window Name	Navigation Path
Account Generation Process	Setup > Flexfields > Key > Accounts
Accounting Calendar	Setup > Calendars > Accounting

Window Name	Navigation Path
Available Batches	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Available button from the Bank Statement window or the Bank Statement Lines window. Select Batch option and then the Find button from the Find Available window; or View > Bank Statements. Review button from the Find Bank Statements window. Available button from the View Bank Statement window or the View Bank Statement Lines window. Select Batch option and then the Find button from the Find Available window.
Available Transactions	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Available button from the Bank Statement window or the Bank Statement Lines window. Select Detail option and then the Find button from the Find Available window; or View > Bank Statements. Review button from the Find Bank Statements window. Available button from the View Bank Statement window or the View Bank Statement Lines window. Select Detail option and then the Find button from the Find Available window.
Bank Statement	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window.
Bank Statement Interface	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statement Interface

Window Name	Navigation Path
Bank Statement Lines	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Lines button from the Bank Statement window.
Bank Statement Lines Interface	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statement Interface. Lines button from the Bank Statement Interface window.
Bank Statement Mapping	Setup > Bank Statement Mappings
Bank Transaction Codes	Setup > Bank Transaction Codes
Banks	Setup > Banks
Cash Position Worksheet Search and Results	Cash Positioning
Clear Transactions	Bank Reconciliation > Manual Clearing > Clear Transactions. Find button from the Find Transactions window.
Completed Requests	Other > Programs > View
Concurrent Requests Summary	Other > Concurrent
Conversion Rate Types	Setup > Currencies > Rate Types
Create Cash Position Worksheets	Cash Positioning > Click on Create Worksheet button
Cross-Validation Rules	Setup > Flexfields > Key > Cross Validation
Currencies	Setup > Currencies > Codes
Descriptive Flexfields	Setup > Flexfields > Descriptive > Register
Descriptive Flexfield Segments	Setup > Flexfields > Descriptive > Segments
Daily Rates	Setup > Currencies > Daily Rates

Window Name	Navigation Path
External Forecast Sources	Setup > External Forecast Sources. Find or New button from the Find External Forecast Sources window.
Find Available	View > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review button from the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window. Available button from the View Bank Statement window or the View Bank Statement Lines window.
Find Bank Statements	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements or View > Bank Statements.
Find External Forecast Sources	Setup > External Forecast Sources.
Find Reversals	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Reversal button from the Bank Statement window or View > Bank Statements. Review button from the Find Bank Statements window. Reversals button from the View Bank Statement window.
Find Transactions	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Available button from the Bank Statement window or the Bank Statement Lines window. or Bank Reconciliation > Manual Clearing > Clear Transactions. or Bank Reconciliation > Manual Clearing > Unclear Transactions.

Window Name	Navigation Path
Forecasts	Cash Forecasting
GL Accounts	Setup > Combinations
Key Flexfields	Setup > Flexfields > Key > Register
Key Flexfield Segments	Setup > Flexfields > Key > Segments
Miscellaneous Receipts	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Create button from the Bank Statement window.
Payments	View > Payments
Period Types	Setup > Calendars > Types
Personal Profile Values	Other > Profile
Receipts	View > Receipts
Reconcile Bank Statements	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window.
Reconciled Transactions	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Reconciled button from the Bank Statement window or the Bank Statement Lines window.
Reconciliation Errors (AutoReconciliation)	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Errors button from the Bank Statement window or the Bank Statement Lines window.

Window Name	Navigation Path
Reconciliation Errors (Bank Statement Import)	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statement Interface. Errors button from the Bank Statement Interface window.
Request Set	Other > Programs > Set
Requests	Other > Programs > View
Reversals	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review or New button from the Reconcile Bank Statements window. Reversal button from the Bank Statement window. Find button from the Find Reversals window.
Rollup Groups	Setup > Flexfields > Key > Groups
Segment Values	Setup > Flexfields > Key > Values or Setup > Flexfields > Descriptive > Values
Ledger	Setup > Books
Shorthand Aliases	Setup > Flexfields > Key > Aliases
Submit Automatic Reconciliation	Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. From the Reconcile Bank Statements window, AutoReconciliation from the Oracle Applications Tools menu. or Bank Reconciliation > Bank Statement Interface. From the Bank Statement Interface window, AutoReconciliation from the Oracle Applications Tools menu.
Submit Request	Other > Programs > Run
System Parameters	Setup > System Parameters

Window Name	Navigation Path
Transaction Calendar	Setup > Calendars > Transaction
Transmissions	View > Transmissions
Unclear Transactions	Bank Reconciliation > Manual Clearing > Unclear Transactions. Find button from the Find Transactions window.
Update Amounts	Cash Forecasting > Forecasts. Find button or New button from the Find Cash Forecasts window. Review button from the Cash Forecasts window or the Cash Forecast window. Update Amounts from Oracle Applications Tools menu.
View Available Batches	View > Bank Statements. Review button from the Find Bank Statements window. Available button from the View Bank Statement window or the View Bank Statement Lines window. Select the Batch option and then the Find button from Find Available window.
View Available Transactions	View > Available Transactions
View Bank Statement Lines	View > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review button from the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window. Lines button from the View Bank Statement window.
View Bank Statement Reconciliation	View > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window.
View Bank Statement	View > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review button from the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window.

Window Name	Navigation Path
View Reconciliation Errors	View > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review button from the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window. Errors button from the View Bank Statement window or the Bank Statement Lines window.
View Reconciled Transactions	View > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review button from the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window. Reconciled button from the View Bank Statement window or the View Bank Statement Lines window.
View Reversals	View > Bank Statements. Find button from the Find Bank Statements window. Review button from the View Bank Statement Reconciliation window. Reversals button from the View Bank Statement window. Find button from the Find Reversals window.

B

Profile Options

This appendix the profile options affecting the Cash Management operations.

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Setting Profile Options for Cash Management profile optionsoverviewsetting upprofile options

Setting Profile Options for Cash Management

During your implementation, you set a value for selected profile options to specify how your Cash Management application controls access to and processes data.

Generally, the system administrator sets and updates profile values. The system administrator may set profile options during setup of other applications before your Cash Management implementation. Refer to the other product user guides for more details on how other products use these profile options.

Profile Options Summary

You can view and update certain profile options. The following table shows whether you or the system administrator can view or update profile option values at each level: Site, Application, Responsibility, and User. Use the Personal Profile Options window to view or set your profile options at the user level. You can consult theProfile Options in Oracle Application Object Library, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*for a list of profile options common to all Oracle Applications.

The key for this table is:

- **Update**: You can update the profile option.
- **View Only**: You can view the profile option, but cannot change it.
- **No Access**: You cannot view or change the profile option value.

Profile Option	User	User	Resp	App	Site	Required?	Default Value
GL Ledger Name	No Access	No Access	Update	Update	Update	Required	No default
Journals: Display Inverse Rate	Update	Update	Update	Update	Update	Optional	No default
Indicate Attachments	Update	Update	Update	Update	Update	No	No default
Sequential Numbering	View Only	No Access	Update	Update	Update	No	No default
MO:Operating Unit	No Access	No Access	Update	No Access	Update	No	No default
CE: Bank Account Security Access	View Only	Update	Update	Update	Update	Yes	Internal
Currency: Negative Format	Update	Update	Update	Update	Update	No	XXX-

Profile Options in Cash Management

CE: Bank Account Security - This profile option specifies the bank accounts you can access in Cash Management.

- **Internal**: See only the internal bank accounts.
  - **Payroll**: See only the payroll bank accounts.
  - **All**: See both the internal and the payroll bank accounts.

Profile Options Affecting, But Not Owned By, Cash Management

Because some Oracle Applications products have overlapping functions, many profile

options affect more than one product's operation.

The following General Ledger profile options affect the operation of Cash Management, even if you have not installed General Ledger.

- **GL Ledger Name** - This profile option specifies your ledger, associating a ledger with a responsibility. Use the System Administrator responsibility to set this profile option. If you are performing a single ledger installation, set the option for the Oracle Cash Management application. If you are performing a multiple ledger installation, set the option for each unique combination of organization and responsibility. For more information, please see your *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*.

- **Journals: Display Inverse Rate** - This profile option specifies how you enter and display conversion rates in the Enter Journals window. For more information, please see your *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*.

The following Application Object Library profile options also affect the operation of Cash Management:

- **Indicate Attachments** - This profile option allows you to turn off indication of attachments when querying records (for performance reasons) in Oracle Applications. It is set at the site level. For more information, please see your *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

- **MO: Operating Unit** - This profile option controls which operating unit a particular responsibility corresponds to, and is used only if you have installed multiple organization support. For more information, please see *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*.

- **Sequential Numbering** - This profile option enables sequential numbering for Cash Management. For more information, please see your *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

Related Topics

Setting General Ledger Profile Options, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*.

Profile Options in Oracle Application Object Library , *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

C

Function Security in Oracle Cash Management

This appendix describes which Cash Management functions and features are controlled by function security.

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Function Security in Cash Management

Function Security in Cash Management

Use function security to control user access to selected Cash Management functions. By default, access to Cash Management functionality is *not* restricted; you must ask your system administrator to customize your responsibilities to restrict access. Your system administrator customizes each responsibility at your site by including or excluding registered functions and menus of functions for a responsibility in the Responsibilities window.

The following examples are common results that enforcing function security may produce:

- A window (form) or menu does not appear in the Navigator window.

  Note: Some forms and menus, when excluded from a responsibility, may affect more than one window or function. For example, your system administrator could create a responsibility that allows a user to view cash forecasts, but not update them by including the View Cash Forecasts window, but not the Cash Forecasts window.

- A button is hidden.

Note: Some buttons access more than one window or function. For example, in the Reconcile Bank Statements window, the Create button allows users to create cash receipts, regular payments, and miscellaneous receipts and payments by displaying a list of values (Supplier Payments, Customer Receipts, Miscellaneous) to choose from after the button is selected. The create button is disabled only if all Create functions are disabled.

- A field is not updatable.

Use function security to control use of the Cash Management functions shown in the following table:

User Function Name	Restrictable Actions	Effect
Payments	Enter regular payments	Disables the Payments option when you choose the Create button in the Reconcile Bank Statements window
Receipts	Enter cash receipts	Disables the Receipts option when you choose the Create button in the Reconcile Bank Statements window
Misc: Enter	Enter miscellaneous transactions (receipts and payments)	Disables the Miscellaneous option when you choose the Create button in the Reconcile Bank Statements window
Reverse: Std	Allow standard reversal	Disables the Reversals button in the Reconcile Bank Statements window

Banks

The following functions described in the table below can be excluded in the Banks window.

Function Name	Restriction(s)
Banks: Payable Options	Access the AP Options region of the Bank Accounts window to define various attributes for Oracle Payables
Banks: Payment Documents	Access Payment Documents window to enter new payment documents
Banks: Receivable Options	Access the AR Options and More AR Options regions of the Bank Accounts window to define GL Accounts
Banks: Related Banks	Assign related banks to a Clearing House

Bank Accounts

The following functions described in the table below can be excluded in the Bank Accounts window.

Function Name	Restriction(s)
Bank Account Access: Customer	Access customer bank accounts
Bank Account Access: Supplier	Access supplier bank accounts
Bank Account Access: Internal	Access internal bank accounts

Related Topics

Overview of Function Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

How Function Security Works, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Implementing Function Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Defining a New Menu Structure, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

D

Bank Statement Mapping Templates

This appendix describes the rules for the predefined mapping templates in Cash Management, BAI2, SWIFT940, and EDIFACT - France.

This appendix covers the following topics:

- BAI2 Mapping Template
- SWIFT940 Mapping Template
- EDIFACT - France Mapping Template

BAI2 Mapping Template

This section contains the default mapping rules created for the BAI2 format.

Header Information

BAI2 header information is stored in record ID 02 and record ID 03. Record ID 88 is a continuation record that contains overflow information from record ID 03. The following is an example:

02, 0012344, 121000248, 1,970522, 0000, USD, /

03, 49999677822, USD, 015, 93711773,,, 045, 7167744,,, 040, 85015748,,, 400, 11790274,2,/

88, 010, 12450000, , /

The following table illustrates the mapping of BAI2 header information with record ID 02 and record name Group Header to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

BAI2 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
Ultimate Receiver	COLUMN1	

BAI2 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
Originator ID	COLUMN2	
Group Status	COLUMN3	
As-of Date	COLUMN4	STATEMENT_NUMBER, STATEMENT_DATE
As-of Time	COLUMN5	STATEMENT_DATE
Currency Code	COLUMN6	
As-of Date Modifier	COLUMN7	

The following table illustrates the mapping of BAI2 header information with record ID 03 and record name Account Identifier and Summary Status to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

BAI2 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
Account Number	COLUMN1	BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM
Currency Code	COLUMN2	CURRENCY_CODE
Type Code	COLUMN4	
Sign	COLUMN5	
Amount	COLUMN6	
Item Count	COLUMN7	
Funds Type	COLUMN8	

The following table shows how the remaining columns in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table are populated by the Bank Statement Loader program:

Column Name	Source
BANK_NAME	not populated
BANK_BRANCH_NAME	not populated
CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code of 010
CONTROL_TOTAL_DR	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code of 400
CONTROL_TOTAL_CR	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code of 100
CONTROL_END_BALANCE	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code of 015
CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT	not populated
CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT	not populated
CONTROL_LINE_COUNT	not populated
RECORD_STATUS_FLAG	defaulted to 'N'
ORG_ID	populated by calling the FND_PROFILE API
CHECK_DIGITS	not populated
CASHFLOW_BALANCE	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code of 045
INT_CALC_BALANCE	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code of 045
ONE_DAY_FLOAT	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code 072
TWO_DAY_FLOAT	copied from record ID 03 and record ID 88 using the predefined transaction code 074

Column Name	Source
INTRA_DAY_FLAG	'N' if populated by the Bank Statement Loader program. 'Y' if populated by the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program
CREATED_BY	updated at the time of insert
CREATION_DATE	updated at the time of insert
LAST_UPDATED_BY	updated at the time of insert and update
LAST_UPDATE_DATE	updated at the time of insert and update

Line Information

BAI2 line information is stored in record ID 16 and record ID 88. Record ID 88 is a continuation record that contains overflow information from record ID 16. The information from record ID 88 is stored in the TRX_TEXT column. The following is an example:

16, 469, 1175000000, , , 00000001, ABC, COMPANY NATL

88, BANK

The following table illustrates the mapping of BAI2 line information with record ID 16 and record name Transaction Detail to the Bank Statement Lines Interface table:

BAI2 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
Type Code	COLUMN1	TRX_CODE
Amount	COLUMN2	AMOUNT
Funds Type	COLUMN3...?	Variable
Bank Ref No	COLUMN?	CUSTOMER_TEXT
Customer Ref No	COLUMN?	INVOICE_TEXT
Text	COLUMN?	BANK_TRX_NUMBER, TRX_TEXT

The following table illustrates the mapping of BAI2 line information with record ID 88 and record name Continuation to the Bank Statement Lines Interface table:

BAI2 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
Continuation	COLUMN1	TRX_TEXT

> **Note:** Since the number of fields in record ID 16 varies, depending upon information such as funds type, the location of these fields in the intermediate table cannot be determined in advance. However, Text, Customer Ref No, and Bank Ref No are always located at the end of the record, where Text is the last field, Customer Ref No is the second to the last field, and Bank Ref No is the third to the last field. They are represented by negative positions. The Text field is mapped to the BANK_TRX_NUMBER column and the TRX_TEXT column as position -1. The Customer Ref No field is mapped to the INVOICE_TEXT column as position -2. The Bank Ref No field is mapped to the CUSTOMER_TEXT column as position -3. If your bank uses different locations for these fields, you need to modify the mapping accordingly. In addition, the BANK_TRX_NUMBER column is populated with data from the Text field that matches the default format of Example (xxx). You must change the format to the actual format used by your bank.

The following table shows how the remaining columns in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table are populated by the Bank Statement Loader program:

Column Name	Source
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	copied from the header information
STATEMENT_NUMBER	copied from the header information
LINE_NUMBER	sequentially generated, starting with 1
TRX_DATE	copied from the header information
EFFECTIVE_DATE	populated with the value date, if the Funds Type field of record ID 16 contains the value of 'V'
BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT	not populated

Column Name	Source
CURRENCY_CODE	not populated, but the Bank Statement Import program defaults the currency code from the header information
USER_EXCHANGE_RATE_TYPE	not populated
EXCHANGE_RATE_DATE	not populated
EXCHANGE_RATE	not populated
ORIGINAL_AMOUNT	not populated
CHARGES_AMOUNT	not populated
CREATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert
CREATION_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert
LAST_UPDATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert and update
LAST_UPDATE_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert and update

SWIFT940 Mapping Template

This section contains the default mapping rules created for the SWIFT940 format.

Header Information

SWIFT940 header information is stored in records with tags of 25, 28C, 60a, and 62a. A tag behaves similarly as record ID in BAI2. When a record is copied from a SWIFT940 bank statement file to the intermediate table, the Bank Statement Loader program uses the tag as the record ID, but deletes the last non-numeric character. The following is an example:

:**20**:GL9903010486

:**25**:720520899611

:**28**:193

:**60F**:C990226BEF37692**,**

:**62F**:C990227BEF37812,12

The following table contains the legend for SWIFT940 tables:

Legend for SWIFT940 Tables	Legend for SWIFT940 Tables
a	character
n	numeric
number	numeric
x	character or numeric
[ ]	optional

The following table illustrates the mapping of SWIFT940 header information with record ID 25/25 and record name Account Identification to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

Format in SWIFT940	SWIFT940 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
35x: Account Identification	35x	COLUMN1	BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM

The following table illustrates the mapping of SWIFT940 header information with record ID 28C/28 and record name Statement Number/Sequence Number to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

Format in SWIFT940	SWIFT940 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
5n: Statement Number [/3n]: Sequence Number	5n[/3n]	COLUMN1	STATEMENT_NUMBER

The following table illustrates the mapping of SWIFT940 header information with record ID 60a/60 and record name Opening Balance to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

Format in SWIFT940	SWIFT940 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
1a: D or C	1a	COLUMN2	
6n: Opening Balance Date	6n	COLUMN3	
3a: Currency Code	3a	COLUMN4	CURRENCY_CODE
15number: Opening Balance	15number	COLUMN5	CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE

The following table illustrates the mapping of SWIFT940 header information with record ID 62a/62 and record name Closing Balance to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

Format in SWIFT940	SWIFT940 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
1a: D or C	1a	COLUMN2	
6n: Closing Balance Date	6n	COLUMN3	STATEMENT_DATE
3a: Currency Code	3a	COLUMN4	
15number: Closing Balance	15number	COLUMN5	CONTROL_END_BALANCE

The remaining columns in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table are populated as indicated in the table below:

Column Name	Source
BANK_NAME	not populated
BANK_BRANCH_NAME	not populated
CONTROL_TOTAL_DR	not populated, because SWIFT940 does not provide this information

Column Name	Source
CONTROL_TOTAL_CR	not populated, because SWIFT940 does not provide this information
CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT	not populated
CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT	not populated
CONTROL_LINE_COUNT	not populated
RECORD_STATUS_FLAG	defaulted to 'N'
ORG_ID	populated by calling the FND_PROFILE API
CHECK_DIGITS	not populated
CASHFLOW_BALANCE	not populated
INT_CALC_BALANCE	not populated
ONE_DAY_FLOAT	not populated
TWO_DAY_FLOAT	not populated
INTRA_DAY_FLAG	'N' if populated by the Bank Statement Loader program. 'Y' if populated by the Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program.
CREATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert
CREATION_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert
LAST_UPDATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert and update
LAST_UPDATE_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert and update

Line Information

SWIFT940 line information is stored in record ID 61. Record ID 61A and record ID 86 are continuation records that contain overflow information from record ID 61. The

following is an example:

:**61**:9903020301D3,92N422NONREF

/OCMT/EURI,78

:**86**: 43.59.16.629 GTS OPERATIONS ADM

00011000000090 000000520012 9123456 19999

The following table illustrates the mapping of SWIFT940 line information with record ID 61/61 and record name Statement Line to the Bank Statement Lines Interface table:

Format in SWIFT940	SWIFT940 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
6n: Transaction Date	6n	COLUMN1	TRX_DATE
[4n] : Entry Date	[4n]	COLUMN2	
2a: Debit/Credit Mark	2a	COLUMN3	
[1a] : Funds Code	[1a]	COLUMN4	
15number : Amount	15number	COLUMN5	AMOUNT
axxx : Transaction Code	axxx	COLUMN6	TRX_CODE
16x : Reference for Account Owner	16x	COLUMN7	CUSTOMER_TEXT
[//16x] : Account Servicing Institution's Reference	[//16x]	COLUMN8	BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT
[34x] : Supplementary Detail			

The following table illustrates the mapping of SWIFT940 line information with record ID 86/61A and record name Information to Account Owner to the Bank Statement Lines Interface table:

Format in SWIFT940	SWIFT940 Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
65x: Information to Account Owner	65x	COLUMN1	BANK_TRX_NUMBER, TRX_TEXT

Note: [34x] is stored as a separate record ID 61A and is mapped to the TRX_TEXT column. Overflow information from record ID 61 is stored in the same column as the supplementary details in record ID 61. The BANK_TRX_NUMBER column is populated with data from the Information to Account Owner field that matches the default format of Example (xxx). You must change the format to the actual format used by your bank. The Transaction Code field identifies the type of transaction. For example, transfers are identified as TRF. However, the Transaction Code field does not contain information about the debit or credit nature of the transaction. A separate field, the Debit/Credit Mark field, is used to differentiate debit and credit entries, where D means debit and C means credit. When the Bank Statement Loader program populates the TRX_CODE column in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table, it appends the Debit/Credit Mark to the Transaction Code to form a new code. For example, debit transfers are identified as TRFD and credit transfers as TRFC. You must set up these new bank transaction codes in Cash Management before you can import the bank statement information.

The remaining columns in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table are populated as the following table illustrates:

Column Name	Source
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	copied from the header information
STATEMENT_NUMBER	copied from the header information
LINE_NUMBER	sequentially generated, starting with 1
EFFECTIVE_DATE	not populated
INVOICE_TEXT	not populated

Column Name	Source
CURRENCY_CODE	not populated, but Bank Statement Import program defaults the currency code from the header information
USER_EXCHANGE_RATE_TYPE	not populated
EXCHANGE_RATE_DATE	not populated
EXCHANGE_RATE	not populated
ORIGINAL_AMOUNT	not populated
CHARGES_AMOUNT	not populated
CREATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert
CREATION_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert
LAST_UPDATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert and update
LAST_UPDATE_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert and update

EDIFACT - France Mapping Template

This section contains the default mapping rules created for the French EDIFACT format.

Header Information

French EDIFACT header information is stored in record ID 01. Trailer information is stored in record ID 07.

The following table illustrates the mapping of French EDIFACT header information with record ID 01 and record name Header to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

Position in French EDIFACT	EDIFACT Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
1-2 :Record ID			
3-7 :Bank Code	3:7	COLUMN1	
8-11 :Blanks	8:11	COLUMN2	
12-16 :Bank Branch Code	12:16	COLUMN3	
17-19 :Currency Code	17:19	COLUMN4	CURRENCY_CODE
20 :Precision	20	COLUMN5	
21 :Blank	21	COLUMN6	
22-32 :Account Number	22:32	COLUMN7	BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM
33-34 :Blanks	33:34	COLUMN8	
35-40 :Previous Balance Date	35:40	COLUMN9	STATEMENT_NUMBER
41-90 :Blanks	41:90	COLUMN10	
91-104 :Previous Bank Balance	91:104	COLUMN11	CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE
105-120 :Blanks	105:120	COLUMN12	

The following table illustrates the mapping of French EDIFACT trailer information with record ID 07 and record name Trailer to the Bank Statement Headers Interface table:

Position in French EDIFACT	EDIFACT Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
1-2 :Record ID			
3-7 :Bank Code	3:7	COLUMN1	

Position in French EDIFACT	EDIFACT Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
8-11 :Blanks	8:11	COLUMN2	
12-16 :Bank Branch Code	12:16	COLUMN3	
17-19 :Currency Code	17:19	COLUMN4	
20 :Precision	20	COLUMN5	
21 :Blank	21	COLUMN6	
22-32 :Account Number	22:32	COLUMN7	
33-34 :Blanks	33:34	COLUMN8	
35-40 :Ending Balance Date	35:40	COLUMN9	STATEMENT_DATE
41-90 :Blanks	41:90	COLUMN10	
91-104 :Ending Balance	91:104	COLUMN11	CONTROL_END_BALANCE
105-120 :Blanks	105:120	COLUMN12	

The remaining columns in the Bank Statement Headers Interface table are populated as illustrated in the following table:

Column Name	Source
BANK_NAME	not populated
BANK_BRANCH_NAME	not populated
CONTROL_TOTAL_DR	not populated
CONTROL_TOTAL_CR	not populated

Column Name	Source
CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT	not populated
CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT	not populated
CONTROL_LINE_COUNT	not populated
RECORD_STATUS_FLAG	defaulted to 'N'
ORG_ID	populated by calling the FND_PROFILE API
CHECK_DIGITS	not populated
CASHFLOW_BALANCE	not populated
INT_CALC_BALANCE	not populated
ONE_DAY_FLOAT	not populated
TWO_DAY_FLOAT	not populated
INTRA_DAY_FLAG	'N' if populated by the Bank Statement Loader program. 'Y' if populated by the Intra-Day Bank Statemetn Loader program
CREATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert
CREATION_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert
LAST_UPDATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert and update
LAST_UPDATE_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert and update

Line Information

French EDIFACT line information is stored in record ID 04.

The following table illustrates the mapping of French EDIFACT line information with record ID 04 and record name Transaction to the Bank Statement Lines Interface table:

Position in French EDIFACT	EDIFACT Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
1-2 :Record ID			
3-7 :Bank Code	3:7	COLUMN1	
8-11 :Blanks	8:11	COLUMN2	
12-16 :Bank Branch Code	12:16	COLUMN3	
17-19 :Currency Code	17:19	COLUMN4	CURRENCY_CODE
20 :Precision	20	COLUMN5	
21 :Blanks	21	COLUMN6	
22-32 :Account Number	22:32	COLUMN7	
33-34 :Transaction Code	33:34	COLUMN8	TRX_CODE
35-40 :Transaction Date	35:40	COLUMN9	TRX_DATE
41-42 :Bank Error Code	41:42	COLUMN10	
43-48 :Value Date	43:48	COLUMN11	EFFECTIVE_DATE
49-79 :Description	49:79	COLUMN12	TRX_TEXT
80-81 :Blanks	80:81	COLUMN13	
82-88 :Transaction Number	82:88	COLUMN14	BANK_TRX_NUMBER
89 :Bank Fee Flag	89	COLUMN15	
90 :Blanks	90	COLUMN16	

Position in French EDIFACT	EDIFACT Field	Intermediate Table Column	Interface Table Column
91-104 :Transaction Amount	91:104	COLUMN17	AMOUNT
105-120 :Blanks	105:120	COLUMN18	

The remaining columns in the Bank Statement Lines Interface table are populated as illustrated in the following table:

Column Name	Source
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	copied from the header information
STATEMENT_NUMBER	copied from the header information
LINE_NUMBER	sequentially generated, starting with 1
INVOICE_TEXT	not populated
BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT	not populated
USER_EXCHANGE_RATE_TYPE	not populated
EXCHANGE_RATE_DATE	not populated
EXCHANGE_RATE	not populated
ORIGINAL_AMOUNT	not populated
CHARGES_AMOUNT	not populated
CUSTOMER_TEXT	not populated
CREATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert
CREATION_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert
LAST_UPDATED_BY	automatically populated at the time of insert and update

Column Name	Source
LAST_UPDATE_DATE	automatically populated at the time of insert and update

E

XML Mapping Rules

This appendix contains the column mapping rules between the attributes of the XML bank statement and the Open Interface Tables in Oracle Cash Management.

This appendix covers the following topics:

- XML Mapping Rules for Statement Header Information
- XML Mapping Rules for Statement Line Information

XML Mapping Rules for Statement Header Information

The following table contains the column mapping rules between the <DepAcctStmtInqRs> in the XML bank statement and the CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT table in Oracle Cash Management.

Source Attributes in <DepAcctStmtInqRs>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT)	Required in Table?	Action
<DepAcctStmtId> **Statement Number** </DepAcctStmtId>	No	STATEMENT_NUMBER	Yes	If Statement Number is NULL, use Statement Date
<EffDt> **Statement Date** </EffDt>	No	STATEMENT_DATE	Yes	If Statement Date is NULL, use <EndDt>

Source Attributes in <DepAcctStmtInqRs>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT)	Required in Table?	Action
<DepAcctId> <AcctId> **Account Number** </AcctId> </DepAcctId>	Yes	BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	Yes	
<DepAcctId> <AcctCur> **Currency Code** </AcctCur> </DepAcctId>	No	CURRENCY_CODE	No	
<DepAcctId> <BankInfo> <Name> **Bank Name** </Name> </BankInfo> </DepAcctId>	No	BANK_NAME	No	
<DepAcctId> <BankInfo> <BranchName> **Branch Name** </BranchName> </BankInfo> </DepAcctId>	No	BANK_BRANCH_NAME	No	

Source Attributes in <DepAcctStmtInqRs>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT)	Required in Table?	Action
<AcctBal> <BalType> OpeningLedger or BAI:010 </BalType> <CurAmt> <Amt> **Begin Balance** </Amt> </CurAmt> </AcctBal>	No	CONTROL_BEGIN_BALANCE	No	Balance type must be 'OpeningLedger' or 'BAI:010'
<AcctBal> <BalType> ClosingLedger or BAI:015 </BalType> <CurAmt> <Amt> **End Balance** </Amt> </CurAmt> </AcctBal>	No	CONTROL_END_BALANCE	No	Balance type must be 'ClosingLedger' or 'BAI:015'

Source Attributes in <DepAcctStmtInqRs>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT)	Required in Table?	Action
<StmtSummAmt> <StmtSummType> Debits or Checks or OtherDebits or Fees or IntCharged or BAI:400 <StmtSummType> <CurAmt> <Amt> **Total Debit** </Amt> </CurAmt> </StmtSummAmt>	No	CONTROL_TOTAL_DR	No	If <StmtSummType> is in ('Debit', 'Checks', 'OtherDebits', 'Fees', 'IntChaged'), then CONTROL_TOTAL_DR = Sum of the Amount. If <StmtSummType> is 'BAI:400', then CONTROL_TOTAL_DR = Amount. .'

Source Attributes in <DepAcctStmtInqRs>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT)	Required in Table?	Action
<StmtSummAmt> <StmtSummType> Credits or Deposits or OtherCredits or IntEarned or BAI:100 </StmtSummType> <CurAmt> <Amt> **Total Credit** </Amt> </CurAmt> </StmtSummAmt>	No	CONTROL_TOTAL_CR	No	If <StmtSummType> is in ('Credits', 'Deposits', 'OtherCredits', 'IntEarned'), then CONTROL_TOTAL_CR = Sum of the Amount. If <StmtSummType> is 'BAI:100', then CONTROL_TOTAL_CR = Amount.
<StmtSummAmt> <StmtSummType> Debits or Checks or OtherDebits or Fees or IntCharged </StmtSummType> <Count> **Count** </Count> </StmtSummAmt>	No	CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT	No	If <StmtSummType> is in ('Debit', 'Checks', 'Other Debits', 'Fees', 'IntCharged'), then CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT = Sum of the Count. If <StmtSummType> is 'BAI:400', then CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT = Count.

Source Attributes in <DepAcctStmtInqRs>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT)	Required in Table?	Action
<StmtSummAmt> <StmtSummType> Credits or Deposits or OtherCredits or IntEarned or BAI:400 </StmtSummType> <Count> **Count** </Count> </StmtSummAmt>	No	CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT	No	If <StmtSummType> is in ('Credits', 'Deposits', 'OtherCredits', 'IntEarned'), then CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT = Sum of the Count. If <StmtSummType> is 'BAI:100', then CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT = Count.
	No	CONTROL_LINE_COUNT	No	CONTROL_CR_LINE_COUNT + CONTROL_DR_LINE_COUNT
<AcctBal> <BalType> BAI:045 </BalType> <CurAmt> <Amt> **Int Calc Balance** </Amt> </CurAmt> </AcctBal>	No	INT_CALC_BALANCE	No	Balance type must be 'BAI:045'

Source Attributes in <DepAcctStmtInqRs>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INT)	Required in Table?	Action
<AcctBal> <BalType> BAI:045 </BalType> <CurAmt> <Amt> **Cashflow Balance** </Amt> </CurAmt> </AcctBal>	No	CASHFLOW_BALANCE	No	Balance type must be 'BAI:045'
	No	RECORD_STATUS_FLAG	No	Defaults to "N"
	No	ORG_ID	No	Org ID will be populated according to the bank account number.
	No	CHECK_DIGITS	No	
	No	WHO Columns	No	
	No	ATTRIBUTE Columns	No	

XML Mapping Rules for Statement Line Information

The following table contains the column mapping rules between the attributes in <DepAcctTrnRec> in the XML bank statement and the CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table in Oracle Cash Management. The <DepAcctTrnRec> is passed as one of the data elements of <DepAcctStmtInqRs>.

Source Attributes in <DepAcctTrnRec>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_LINES)	Required in Table?	Action
	No	STATEMENT_NUMBER	Yes	Passed from Header
	No	BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	Yes	Passed from Header
	No	LINE_NUMBER	Yes	Generate Count
<BankAcctTrnRec> <PostedDt> **Posted Date** </PostedDt> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	TRX_DATE	Yes	
<BankAcctTrnRec> <TrnType> **Transaction Type** </TrnType> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	TRX_CODE	No	
<BankAcctTrnRec> <EffDt> **Effective Date** </EffDt> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	EFFECTIVE_DATE	No	

Source Attributes in <DepAcctTrnRec>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_LINES)	Required in Table?	Action
<BankAcctTrnRec> <Memo> **Description** </Memo> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	TRX_TEXT	No	
<BankAcctTrnRec> <InvoiceInfo> <InvoiceNum> **InvoiceNumber** </InvoiceNum> </InvoiceInfo> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	INVOICE_TEXT	No	

Source Attributes in <DepAcctTrnRec>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_LINES)	Required in Table?	Action
<BankAcctTrnRec> <CounterpartyInfo> <DepAcctId> <AcctId> **Account Number** </AcctId> </DepAcctId> </CounterpartyInfo> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	BANK_ACCOUNT_TEXT	No	
<BankAcctTrnRec> <CurAmt> <Amt> **Trx Amount** </Amt> </CurAmt> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	AMOUNT	No	

Source Attributes in <DepAcctTrnRec>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_LINES)	Required in Table?	Action
<BankAcctTrnRec> <CurAmt> <CurCode> **Currency Code** </CurCode> </CurAmt> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	CURRENCY_CODE	No	
	No	USER_EXCHANGE_RATE_TYPE	No	
	No	EXCHANGE_RATE_DATE	No	
<BankAcctTrnRec> <CurAmt> <CurCode> **Cur Rate** </CurCode> </CurAmt> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	EXCHANGE_RATE	No	

Source Attributes in <DepAcctTrnRec>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_LINES)	Required in Table?	Action
<BankAcctTrnRec> <OrigCurAmt> <Amt> **Original Amount** </Amt> </OrigCurAmt> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	ORIGINAL_AMOUNT	No	
<BankAcctTrnRec> <CompositeCurAmt> <CurAmt> <Amt> **Charge Amount** </Amt> </CurAmt> </CompositeCurAmt> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	CHARGES_AMOUNT	No	

Source Attributes in <DepAcctTrnRec>	Required in IFX?	Target (Columns in CE_STATEMENT_LINES)	Required in Table?	Action
<ChkNum> **Check Number** </ChkNum> Or <XferId> **Fund Transfer ID** </XferId> Or <PmtId> **Payment ID** </PmtId>	No	BANK_TRX_NUMBER	No	
<BankAcctTrnRec> <CounterpartyInfo> <RefInfo> <RefId> **Reference ID** </RefId> </RefInfo> </CounterpartyInfo> </BankAcctTrnRec>	No	CUSTOMER_TEXT	No	
	No	WHO Columns	No	
	No	ATTRIBUTE Columns	No	

F

Country Specific Bank Account Validations

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Introduction
- Bank Account Validation by Country

Introduction

This appendix outlines the country specific bank account validation rules performed in release 12. The following information is presented for certain countries:

- **Validation rules:** The validation perform for the specific country
- **Unique Validation Rules:** The unique validations perform for the specific country

The following countries have country specific validations:

Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, France, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Australia, Brazil, Colombia, Germany, Greece, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, New Zealand, Poland, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom, United States, Israel, and Japan

When entering new bank accounts, different countries can have certain rules governing the format and content of the following related fields:

- Bank Number
- Branch Number
- Account Number
- Check Digit.

Bank Account Validation by Country

Austria

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 11 digits, any spaces in the account number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the account number contains characters or the account number is greater than 11 digits, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - If the account number is less than 11 digits it is converted to a 11 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.
2. Branch Number
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 5 digits, any spaces in the account number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the account number contains characters or the account number is greater than 5 digits, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Branch Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
3. Bank Number
   - This field is not validated.
4. Check Digit
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

Belgium

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
    - Required.
    - The field has a length of 12 digits, if the entered value is not 12 digits then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
    - The entered field is comprised of three sections each section consisting of a numeric value, these are separated by the symbol '-'. All spaces are stripped out of each section, the sections are then checked to ensure they only contain numeric values. If not the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used and prompted to re-enter. The elements in turn are :
        - Bank Code

          This number field has a length of 3 digits.
        - Middle

          This number field has a length of 7 digits, and constitutes the bank account number
        - Check Digit

          This number field has a length of 2 digits.

          An example of a valid entered account number would therefore be '123-4567890-78'.

          If the three-section value entered in the account number field is valid then the ' check digit algorithm' is applied to the bank code and middle sections of the account number.

2. Branch Number
    - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

3. Bank Number
    - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

4. Check Digit
    - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.
    - The value entered in this field is not validated. Instead, the check digit is taken

from the last 2 digits of the account number.

Check Digit Algorithm

A check digit is formed (CD1) from the first two sections of the user entered account number i.e. Bank Code and Middle.

Example using account number '123-4567890-78', then CD1 is set as '1234567890'.

1. Divide the result by **97**.

   1234567890 / 97 = 12727504

2. Derive the remainder.

   1234567890 - (12727504 * 97) = 2

3. If the remainder is equal to '0' and the check digit section (i.e. the last section) from the user entered account number field is equal to '97' then the entered value is valid.

   If the remainder is equal to the check digit section from the user entered account number field then the entered value is again valid.

   Otherwise, the check is failed and the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used and prompted to re-enter.

   In the given example, the remainder is '2' and the check digit section of the user entered account number is '78'. So as neither of the pass criteria is satisfied the validation is failed.

   However, if the user entered account number was '123-456789-02' then the remainder '2' would match the check digit '02' and the validation would be passed.

Denmark

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 10 digits, any spaces in the account number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the account number contains characters or the account number is greater than 10 digits, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.

2. Branch Number

- This field is not validated.

3. Bank Number
   - This field is not validated.

4. Check Digit
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

Finland

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - Required.
   - If the account number contains characters, then the user is informed that an Invalid account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - The account number is then checked for validity by applying the 'Account Number Algorithm'.

2. Branch Number
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

3. Bank Number
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

4. Bank Number
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

5. Check Digit
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

Account Number Algorithm

1. A check value (Check) is formed, from the user entered account number, the method used depends upon the first digit of the account number :

1st digit of Account Number	Check Value Method
1	1
2	1
3	1
4	2
5	2
6	1
7	2
8	1
9	1

Method 1

Check is formed in two parts :

1. The first part of the value is formed from the first 6 digits of the account number field.

   To illustrate, if the account number is '123456789' this method would be adopted and the first part of Check would be created as '123456'.

2. The second part of Check is formed as an eight digit value, comprising the 8th to 15th digits of the account number field, prefixed with as many leading 0's as is required to make the value length 8 digits.

   Using the same example, the second part of Check would be created as '00000089'.

   Check is then formed by joining together the two parts, with any dash separators '-' in Check being converted to 0's.

   Our example would therefore form Check as '12345600000089'

Method 2

Check is formed in three parts :

1. The first part of the value is formed from the first 6 digits of the account number field.

   To illustrate, if the account number is '423456789' this method would be adopted and the first part of Check would be created as '423456'.

2. b) The second part of Check is formed as the 8th digit of the account number field.

   Using the same example, the second part of Check would be created as '8'.

3. The third part of Check is formed as a seven digit value, comprising the 9th to 15th digits of the account number field, prefixed with as many leading 0's as is required to make the value length 7 digits.

   Using the same example, the second part of Check would be created as '0000009'

   Check is then formed by joining together the three parts, with any dash separators '-' in Check being converted to 0's.

   Our example would therefore form Check as '42345680000009'

2. A computed sum is then calculated based on the value of Check. Different calculations are performed depending on the first two digits of the formed Check value.

   If the first two digits of Check are '88' then :

   1. Finnish government provides the following factor table, the 8th to 13th digits of the Check number are multiplied by the associated factor. The computed sum is then calculated by summing the totals.

Factor	1	3	7	1	3	7
Digit	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th

   Example using Check number '88345600000089' :

   Multiply each digit with the given factor.

	Value	Factor	Result
8th Digit	0	1	0
9th Digit	0	3	0

	Value	Factor	Result
10th Digit	0	7	0
11th Digit	0	7	0
12th Digit	0	3	0
13th Digit	8	7	56
Total			56

Therefore the computed sum for this example is 56.

2. The test fails unless either of the following apply :

   - The 14th digit of Check is the same as 10 less the last digit of the computed sum .

     Suppose the Check value is '88345600000089', then if the 14th digit of Check is 4 (i.e.10 - the last digit of the computed sum which is 6) then the test is passed. Test fails here as the 14th digit is 9.

   - Both the 14th digit of Check and the last digit of the computed sum are 0.

     Using the same example, the test is failed as neither value is 0.

     If the first two digits of Check are NOT '88' then :

3. The computed sum is calculated for each of the first 13 digits by adding the even numbered digits to the following calculated sum for each odd numbered digit :

   a.) Multiply the digit by 2

   b.) Divide the result by 10

   c.) From the result add the integer to the remainder.

   Example using account number '123456800000089' :

	Value	Multiply (a)	Divide (b)	Integer	Remainder	Result
1st Digit	1	2	0.2	0	2	2

	Value	Multiply (a)	Divide (b)	Integer	Remainder	Result
2nd Digit	2					2
3rd Digit	3	6	0.6	0	6	6
4th Digit	4					4
5th Digit	5	10	1	1	0	1
6th Digit	6					6
7th Digit	0	16	1.6	1	6	0
8th Digit	0					0
9th Digit	0	0	0	0	0	0
10th Digit	0					0
11th Digit	0	0	0	0	0	0
12th Digit	0					0
13th Digit	8	16	1.6	1	6	7
Total						28

4. The computed sum is then converted using the following process, before being used to see if the account number is valid :

   a.) Computed sum is added to 9.

   b.) The result is divided by 10.

   c.) The integer result is multiplied by 10

   d.) The result is subtracted by the original computed sum.

   Therefore if the computed sum is 28, it is converted to 2 as

   a.) 28 + 9 = 37

   b.) 37/10 = 3.7 Integer result therefore = 3

c.) 3 * 10 = 30

d.) 30 - 28 = 2.

This number is then compared to the 14th digit of the user entered account number, if it matches the test is passed otherwise it is failed and the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been entered.

In our example the test fails as the 14th digit of the account number is 9, whereas if the 14th digit had been 2 the test would have been passed.

France

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 11 digits, any spaces in the account number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the account number is less than 11 digits it is converted to a 11 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.
   - For the first 9 digits of the account number the allowable digits are the characters 'A' to 'Z' and the numbers '1' to '9', the number '0' is not allowed unless it has been prefixed to make the field length up to 11 digits.
   - For example, the account number '1234567' is converted to the 11 digit number '00001234567' and passes the test as the only 0's are those added. But, the account number '1230567' is converted to the 11 digit number '00001230567' and fails the test as the user entered a '0' which occurs within the first 9 digits of the extended account number.
   - If the check fails the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
2. Branch Number
   - Required.
   - If the branch number contains characters, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Branch Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 5 digits, any spaces in the branch number are removed and not included within the digit count.

- If the branch number is less than 5 digits it is converted to a 5 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.

3. Bank Number
   - Required.
   - If the bank number contains characters, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Bank Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 5 digits, any spaces in the bank number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the bank number is less than 5 digits it is converted to a 5 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.

4. Check Digit
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 2 digits, if it exceeds 2 digits the user is informed that an 'Invalid Check Digit' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - If the check digit is less than 2 digits it is converted to a 2 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.
   - If the bank number, branch number and check digit are composed of only numeric values then the ' check digit algorithm' is applied., otherwise the check fails and the user is informed that an 'Invalid Check Digit' has been used.

Check Digit Algorithm

A check digit is calculated (CD1) from the account number, bank number and branch number in the following manner , it is then used as the basis for the check digit validity test:

CD1

1. For the check digit algorithm the digits of the bank account number entered as characters 'A' to 'Z' are converted to numeric values, the . French government provides the following conversion table.

Value	Conversion
A	1

Value	Conversion
B	2
C	3
D	4
E	5
F	6
G	7
H	8
I	9
J	1
K	2
L	3
M	4
N	5
O	6
P	7
Q	8
R	9
S	2
T	3
U	4

Value	Conversion
V	5
W	6
X	7
Y	8
Z	9

- **Example using account number 'A1234567890' :**

  The letter 'A' is converted by applying the above table to '1', so the account number becomes '11234567890'.

2. A value for CD1 is formed by joining together the bank fields in the following way :

   BANK NUMBER joined to BRANCH NUMBER joined to the converted ACCOUNT NUMBER

   To illustrate with the bank number as '12345', the branch number as '67890' and the converted account number (from above) as '11234567890'.

   Then CD1 is created as '123456789011234567890'

3. CD1 is the suffixed with '00'.

   So CD1 becomes '1234567890112345678900'

4. Divide the result by **97**.

   1234567890112345678900 / 97 = 1234567890112345678891 4

5. Derive the remainder.

   1234567890112345678900 - (1234567890112345678891 4 * 97) = 86

6. CD1 is then derived by subtracting the remainder from 97.

   97 - 86 = 11. Therefore for this example CD1 = 11.

   The remainder is then subtracted from 97, if the result is not equal to the check digit then the error message 'Invalid Check Digit' is shown, otherwise the check digit is valid.

   In the given example, as the user entered check digit is not '11' the check fails.

Netherlands

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - Required.
   - If the first digit of the account number is 'P' or 'G', then the following criteria are checked:
     - if the account number is less than 9 digits.
     - if there are no spaces before the account number.
     - if the account number from the second digit contains no values and lies between '0' and '9999999'

       If any of the criteria are false, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter, if all criteria are true then the account number is valid.
   - If the first digit of the account number is NOT 'P' or 'G' then, if the account number is numeric :
     - If the account number is 9 digits and there are no spaces before the account number, then the account number is converted to 10 digits by prefixing it with a leading '0', the ' 10 digit bank account validation algorithm' is applied
     - If the account number is 10 digits and there are no spaces before the account number, the '10 digit bank account validation algorithm' is applied.

       Otherwise, the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter
2. Branch Number
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.
3. Bank Number
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.
4. Check Digit

- This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

10 Digit Bank Account Validation Algorithm

The algorithm for checking the validity of 10 numeric digit bank account numbers is outlined below.

1. Netherlands government provides the following factor table, the ten digits of the account number are multiplied by the associated factor. The multiple sum is then calculated by summing the totals.

Factor	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Digit	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th

Example using account number '0123456789' :

Multiply each digit with the given factor.

	Value	Factor	Result
1st Digit	0	10	0
2nd Digit	1	9	9
3rd Digit	2	8	16
4th Digit	3	7	21
5th Digit	4	6	24
6th Digit	5	5	25
7th Digit	6	4	24
8th Digit	7	3	21
9th Digit	8	2	16
10th Digit	9	1	9
Total			165

Therefore the multiple sum for this example is 165.

2. Divide the result by **11**.

   165 / 11 = 15

3. Derive the remainder.

   165 - (11 * 15) = 0

4. If the remainder is '0' the validation is successful, otherwise the check fails with the error message 'Invalid Account Number'.

   In the given example, the check passes the bank account number as the remainder is 0.

   If the 10th digit of the account was 8, then the remainder would be 164 - (11 * 14) = 10 and the check on the bank account number would fail.

Norway

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 11 digits.
   - If the field is null then the user is prompted to enter a value when they leave the account number field.
   - If the account number contains characters, then the user is informed that an Invalid account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - If the account number length is 11 digits showing '08271000279' then the number is invalid. Otherwise if the length of the account number is 11 the '11 digit bank account validation algorithm is applied' (see below) - If successful, the account number is valid otherwise the user is prompted to re-enter.
   - The 11-digit bank account validation will be used for all bank accounts except for account groups 00 (digit 5 and 6 in the account number)

2. Branch Number
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

3. Bank Number

- This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

4. Check Digit
   - This field is not validated. All validations are handled in the account number field.

11 Digit Bank Account Validation Algorithm

The algorithm for checking the validity of user entered 11 numeric digit bank account numbers, is outlined below.

1. The check digit is set as the last (i.e. the 11th digit) of the account number. For example if the account number is '02056439653' then the check digit is set to '3'.

2. Norwegian government provides the following factor table, the first ten digits of the account number are multiplied by the associated factor. The computed sum is then calculated by summing the totals.

Factor	5	4	3	2	7	6	5	4	3	2
Digit	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th

3. **Example using account number '02056439653' :**

   Multiply each digit with the given factor.

	Value	Factor	Result
1st Digit	0	5	0
2nd Digit	2	4	8
3rd Digit	0	3	0
4th Digit	5	2	10
5th Digit	6	7	42
6th Digit	4	6	24
7th Digit	3	5	15

	Value	Factor	Result
8th Digit	9	4	36
9th Digit	6	3	18
10th Digit	5	2	10
Total			163

4. Therefore the computed sum for this example is 163.
5. The computed sum is then added to the check digit.

   In the above example, 163 + 3 = 166.
6. Divide the result by **11**.

   166 / 11 = 15
7. Derive the remainder.

   166 - (11 * 15) = 1
8. If the remainder is '0' the validation is successful, otherwise the check fails with the error message 'Invalid Account Number'.

In the given example, the check fails the bank account number as the remainder is 1.

If the 11th digit of the account was 2 (i.e. the check digit would be 2), then the remainder would be 165 - (11 * 15) = 0 and the check on the bank account number would be successful

Portugal

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - Required
   - The field has a length of 11 numeric digits, any spaces are removed. If the entered value is not 11 numeric digits then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.

- Add leading zero if bank account number entered is less than 11 digits

2. Branch Number
   - Required.
   - The field has a length of 4 numeric digits, any spaces are removed. If the entered value is not 4 numeric digits then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Branch Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.

3. Bank Number
   - Required.
   - The field has a length of 4 numeric digits, any spaces are removed. If the entered value is not 4 numeric digits then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Bank Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.

4. Check Digit
   - Required.
   - The field has a length of 2 numeric digits, any spaces are removed. If the entered value is not 2 numeric digits then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Check Digit' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - If the bank number, branch number and account number are valid then the ' check digit algorithm' is applied.

Check Digit Algorithm

1. A check digit is formed (CD1) from the bank number, branch number and account number in the following way :

   BANK NUMBER joined to the BRANCH NUMBER joined to the ACCOUNT NUMBER.

   Example using bank number '1234', branch number '5678', account number '12345678901'..

   Then CD1 is set as '1234567812345678901'.

2. Portuguese government provides the following factor table, the nineteen digits of the created check digit (CD1) are multiplied by the associated factor. The multiple sum is then calculated by summing the totals.

Digit	Factor
1	73
2	17
3	89
4	38
5	62
6	45
7	53
8	15
9	50
10	5
11	49
12	34
13	81
14	76
15	27
16	90
17	9
18	30
19	3

Example using the above value for CD1 :

	Value	Factor	Result
1st Digit	1	73	73
2nd Digit	2	17	34
3rd Digit	3	89	267
4th Digit	4	38	152
5th Digit	5	62	310
6th Digit	6	45	270
7th Digit	7	53	371
8th Digit	8	15	120
9th Digit	1	50	50
10th Digit	2	5	10
11th Digit	3	49	147
12th Digit	4	34	136
13th Digit	5	81	405
14th Digit	6	76	456
15th Digit	7	27	189
16th Digit	8	90	720
17th Digit	9	9	81
18Th Digit	0	30	0
19th Digit	1	3	3
Total			3794

3. Divide the result by **97**.

   3794 / 97 = 39

4. Derive the remainder.

   3794 - (39 * 97) = 11

5. CD1 is then derived by subtracting the remainder from 97.

   97 - 11 = 86. Therefore for this example CD1 = 86.

   If the calculated value for CD1 is not the same as the user entered check digit then the check digit fails the validation and the error message 'Invalid Check Digit' is shown, otherwise the check digit is valid.

   In the given example, unless the user entered check digit is '86' the validation will fail.

Spain

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 10 digits, any spaces in the account number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the account number contains characters or the account number is greater than 10 digits, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Account Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - If the account number is less than 10 digits it is converted to a 10 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.

2. Branch Number
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 4 digits, any spaces in the branch number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the branch number contains characters or the branch number is greater than 4 digits, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Branch Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.

- If the branch number is less than 4 digits it is converted to a 4 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.

3. Bank Number
   - Required.
   - The entered field has a maximum length of 4 digits, any spaces in the bank number are removed and not included within the digit count.
   - If the bank number contains characters or the bank number is greater than 4 digits, then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Bank Number' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - If the bank number is less than 4 digits it is converted to a 4 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary.

4. Check Digit
   - Required.
   - If the check digit is less than 2 digits it is converted to a 2 digit number by prefixing it with as many leading zero's as is necessary
   - If the field contains '00' then the user is informed that an 'Invalid Check Digit' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.
   - If the account number, bank number and branch number are valid (i.e. they obey the earlier identified rules) then the ' check digit algorithm' is applied.

Check Digit Algorithm

Two check digits are calculated (CD1 and CD2) from the account number, bank number and branch number in the following manner , these are then used as the basis for the check digit validity test:

CD1

1. For the bank number, Spanish government provides the following factor table the four digits of the bank number are multiplied by the associated factor. The computed sum is then calculated by summing the totals.

Factor	4	8	5	10
Digit	1st	2nd	3rd	4th

Example using account number '1234' :

Multiply each digit with the given factor.

	Digit	Factor	Result
1st Digit	1	4	4
2nd Digit	2	8	16
3rd Digit	3	5	15
4th Digit	4	10	40
Total			75

Therefore the computed sum for this example is 75.

2. For the branch number, Spanish government provides the following factor table the four digits of the branch number are multiplied by the associated factor. The computed sum is then calculated by summing the totals.

Factor	9	7	3	6
Digit	1st	2nd	3rd	4th

Example using account number '5678' :

Multiply each digit with the given factor.

	Digit	Factor	Result
1st Digit	5	9	45
2nd Digit	6	7	42
3rd Digit	7	3	21
4th Digit	8	6	48
Total			156

Therefore the computed sum for this example is 156.

3. The computed sums from both the bank number and branch number calculations are then added together.

   In above example, 75 + 156 = 231.

4. Divide the result by **11**.

   231 / 11 = 21

5. Derive the remainder.

   231 - (11 * 21) = 0

6. CD1 is then derived by subtracting the remainder from 11.

   11 - 0 = 11. Therefore for this example CD1 = 11.

CD2

1. For the account number, Spanish government provides the following factor table the ten digits of the bank number are multiplied by the associated factor. The computed sum is then calculated by summing the totals.

Factor	1	2	4	8	5	10	9	7	3	6
Digit	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th

Example using account number '1234567890' :

Multiply each digit with the given factor.

	Digit	Factor	Result
1st Digit	1	1	1
2nd Digit	2	2	4
3rd Digit	3	4	12
4th Digit	4	8	32
5th Digit	5	5	25
6th Digit	6	10	60

	Digit	Factor	Result
7th Digit	7	9	63
8th Digit	8	7	56
9th Digit	9	3	27
10th Digit	0	6	0
Total			280

Therefore the computed sum for this example is 280.

2. Divide the result by **11**.

   280 / 11 = 25

3. Derive the remainder.

   280 - (11 * 25) = 5

4. CD2 is then derived by subtracting the remainder from 11.

   11 - 5 = 6. Therefore for this example CD2 = 6.

The Test

The value in the user entered check digit field is compared to the calculated CD1 and CD2 using the following checks, if any of the checks are true then the validation is unsuccessful and the check fails with the error message 'Invalid Account Number':

Check	Description
1	CD1 is compared to the first digit of the entered check digit field
2	CD2 is compared to the second digit of the entered check digit field

Example of the test using the previously calculated CD1 and CD2. Where CD1 = 11 and CD2 = 6 and suppose the user entered Check Digit Value is '05'

Check	Decription
1	Is 11 = 0 ? Answer No
2	Is 6 = 5 ? Answer No

Since both checks are false the check is passed and the Check Digit is valid.

However, if the user entered Check Digit was '06', then the second check of the test would be true and the user is informed that an 'Invalid Check Digit' has been used, and prompted to re-enter.

Australia

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Bank Number
   - Optional
   - If entered, must be 2 or 3 numeric digits
2. Branch Number
   - Required.
   - must have 3, 4 or 6 numeric digits (3 digits - if the bank number entered is 3 digits, 4 digits - if the bank number entered is 2 digits, 6 digits if bank number is not entered)
   - the bank number and branch number should always add up to 6 digits
3. Account Number
   - Required.
   - 7 - 10 numeric digits
4. Check Digits
   - Optional
   - No validation

Brazil

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Account Number.
   - No validation is performed.
2. Branch Number
   - Required.
   - 5 numeric digits
   - If the length is less than 6, it is pad with leading 0
3. Bank Number
   - Required.
   - 3 numeric digits
   - If the length is less than 4, it is pad with leading 0

Columbia

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Validate Tax Payer ID
   - Required
   - Numeric
   - Cannot exceeds 15 maximum digits allowed
     - 14 digits for tax payer id
     - 1 digit for check digit (last digit)
   - Unique within the country
   - Cross Validations of Tax Payer ID in Suppliers, Customers and Companies - If the Tax Payer ID is used by a Customer, Supplier or a Company, then the Customer name, Supplier name or the Company name should match with the

Bank name.

2. Check Digit validation algorithm

   - The 15 digits are multiplied by the associated factor.

Factor	71	67	59	53	47	43	41	37	29	23	19	17	13	7	3
Digit	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th	14th	15th

   - The sum is divided by 11
   - If the remainder is 1 or 0, then the check digit should be 1 or 0 respectively.
   - If the remainder is not 1 or 0, then the remainder is subtracted by 11 and that should be the check digit.

Germany

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it must be 8 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match.
2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be between 1 to 10 numeric digits. If value entered is less than 10 digits, leading 0 are added.
3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, it must be 1 numeric digit and must match the last digit of the Account number field.
4. Bank number, branch number, account number, and check digit fields should all be numeric values.
5. No check algorithm will be used because the country has no standardize validation method.

Unique Validation Rules

Unique validation for bank branches:

1. Bank_id, Bank Number, Branch Number and Country.

2. Bank_id, Bank Name, Branch Name

Greece

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number field is not required. If a value is entered for the Bank Number field, it cannot be more than 3 numeric digits

2. The Branch Number field is not required. If a value is entered for the Branch Number field, it cannot be more than 4 numeric digits

3. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be between 8 to 12 numeric digits. If value entered is less than 12 digits, leading 0 are added.

4. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, it must be 1 numeric digit.

5. No check algorithm will be used because the country has no standardize validation method.

Iceland

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it must be 4 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match. If value entered is less than 4 numeric digits, leading 0 are added.

2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be 18 numeric digits. If value entered is less than 18 digits, leading 0 are added. Check algorithm is performed against the account number (from digit 9 to 16). The right most of these weight digits is multiplied by 2, the next one by 3 and so on up to 7 after which the sequence is repeated. As such the last two digits are multiplied by 2 and 3 respectively. The results of these weight multiplications are added up and the sum is divided by 11. If the remainder is 0 then the check digit is 0. Otherwise the remainder is subtracted from 11 and the result is the check digit.

3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, it must be 1 numeric digit and must match the penultimate digit of the Account number field. (Digit 17)

Ireland

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it must be 8 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match.

2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be 8 numeric digits.

3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, no validation is performed.

Israel

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Bank Account Number
   - Must be 9 digits, numeric and required

2. Bank Branch Number
   - Must be 3 digits, numeric and required

3. EFT Number
   - Must be 8 digits, numeric and required

4. Bank Number
   - Institute number cannot be greater than 2 digits, must be numeric and required

Italy

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number field is required and should be 5 numeric digits

2. The Branch Number field is required and should be 5 numeric digits.

3. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be 12 alphanumeric digits. If value entered is less than 12 digits, leading 0 are added.

4. The Check Digit field is required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, it must be 1 alphabetic digit and is used to validate against the bank code, branch code and account number fields. The check digit is calculated on the 22 characters (bank, branch code and account number). Each character is given a numeric value depending on whether the character is in an odd or in an even position in the string of 22. The first character on the left is in an odd position.

Odd transformation algorithm

A/0 = 1	J/9 = 21	S = 12
B/1 = 0	K = 2	T = 14
C/2 = 5	L = 4	U = 16
D/3 = 7	M = 18	V = 10
E/4 = 9	N = 20	W = 22
F/5 = 13	O = 11	X = 25
G/6 = 15	P = 3	Y = 24
H/7 = 17	Q = 6	Z = 23
I/8 = 19	R = 8	

Even transformation algorithm

A/0 = 0	J/9 = 9	S = 18
B/1 = 1	K = 10	T = 19
C/2 = 2	L = 11	U = 20
D/3 = 3	M = 12	V = 21
E/4 = 4	N = 13	W = 22

F/5 = 5	O = 14	X = 23
G/6 = 6	P = 15	Y = 24
H/7 = 7	Q = 16	Z = 25
I/8 = 8	R = 17	

The numbers are added up and the result is divided by 26.

The remainder is converted into an alphabetic character, which is the check digit, according to the following chart:

Transformation algorithm

0 = A	9 = J	18 = S
1 = B	10 = K	19 = T
2 = C	11 = L	20 = U
3 = D	12 = M	21 = V
4 = E	13 = N	22 = W
5 = F	14 = O	23 = X
6 = G	15 = P	24 = Y
7 = H	16 = Q	25 = Z
8 = I	17 = R	

Japan

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Bank Account Number
    - Required

2. Alternate Bank Account Holder Name
    - Required
3. Bank Branch Number
    - Required
    - 3 numeric digits
4. Alternate Branch Name
    - Required
5. Bank Number
    - Required
    - 4 numeric digits
6. Alternate Bank Name
    - Required
7. Bank Account Type
    - Required

Unique Validation Rules

The unique key will be the combination of:

- BANK
    1. Bank Number, Country
    2. Bank Name, Country
    3. Alternative Bank Name, Country
- BRANCH
    1. Bank_id, Branch Number
    2. Bank_id, Branch Name
    3. Bank_id, Alternative Branch Name
- ACCOUNT

1. Bank_branch_id, Bank Account Number, Currency, and Account Type
2. Bank_branch_id, Bank Account Name

Luxemborg

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it must be 2 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match.
2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be between 6 to 14 numeric digits.
3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, it needs to be 2 numeric digits. Check algorithm is not performed.

New Zealand

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. Bank Number
   - Required
   - 2 numeric digits
2. Branch Number
   - Required
   - 4 numeric digits
3. Account Number
   - Required
   - 6 to 8 numeric digits
4. Account Suffix
   - Required

- 3 digits

5. Check Digit
   - no validation

Unique Validation Rules

The unique key will be the combination of:

- ACCOUNT
  1. Bank_branch_id, Bank Account Number, Currency, and Account Suffix
  2. Bank_branch_id, Bank Account Name

Poland

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it must be 8 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match. The check digit valuation is performed on the Bank/Branch Number using the Modulus 10 algorithm.
2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be less than 25 numeric digits.
3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, no validation is performed.

Sweden

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it must be 4 or 5 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match.
2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be less than 12 numeric digits.
3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, it

should be 1 numeric digit.

4. No check algorithm will be performed because the country has no standardize method.

Switzerland

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it should be between 3 to 5 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match.

2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be less than 17 digits.

3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, no validation is performed.

4. No check algorithm will be performed because the country has no standardize method.

5. Bank Account Type is required

United Kingdom

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

1. The Bank Number and Branch Number fields are not required. Users can enter a value for the Bank Number, Branch Number, or both the Bank and Branch Number fields. If a value is entered for either field, it should be 6 numeric digits and if both fields are entered then both values must match.

2. The Account Number field is required and the value entered should be less than 9 numeric digits. If the value entered is less than 8 numeric digits, leading 0 are added.

3. The Check Digit field is not required. If a value is entered for the Check Digit, no validation is performed.

4. No check algorithm will be performed because the country has no standardize method.

United States

Validation Rules

The fields are checked for validity by adopting the following rules:

Routing number here is our bank branch number. The following validations are performed for all US bank branches. The first 8 digits of the bank branch number must not be 0 -- so the valid range is 00000001 to 99999999. Valid Check digit, which is the 9th digit of the bank branch number, should be 0-9. The bank branch number field is optional.

Validation

A new validation is required for the Bank Branch Number for US Banks as part of federal financial requirement # PMC-18. The field is a nine-digit numeric-only field. The validation requires prohibiting fewer or more than nine characters, allow for only numeric characters, and prohibit the entry of all zeroes in this field. The purpose of the edit is to ensure the validity of the routing transit number (RTN) and prevent erroneous returns or payments. The ninth digit of the Number field will be used to represent the Check Digit. The authenticity of the Check Digit will be validated as well. The Check Digit is computed using Modulus 10 as follows:

1. Multiply each digit in the Routing Number by a weighting factor. The weighting factors for each digit are:

Position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Weights	3	7	1	3	7	1	3	7

2. Add the results of the eight multiplications.

3. Subtract the sum from the next highest multiple of 10. The result is the Check Digit.

Example:

```
      Routing No.:    0   7    6   4   0   1   2   5

      Multiply by:     3   7    1   3   7   1   3   7

          Sum:               0  49   6  12  0   1   6   35 = 109

 Check Digit =  1  (110 minus 109)
```

In this example, the routing transit number and check digit 076401251 will pass validation if this is the value entered into the Bank Branch Number field. If the Bank Branch Number passes validation, then the record is saved, otherwise an error message is returned.

The prompt for the bank branch number for US banks will be "Routing Transit Number " instead of "Transit ABA".

Unique Validation Rules

Unique Bank Branch validations:

1. Bank_id, Bank Number, Branch Number and Country.
2. Bank_id, Bank Name, Branch Name

All other countries Validation

Unique Validation Rules

The unique key will be the combination of:

1. BANK
   - Bank Number, Country
   - Bank Name, Country
2. BRANCH
   - Bank_id, Branch Number
   - Bank_id, Branch Name
3. ACCOUNT
   - Bank_branch_id, Bank Account Number, Currency
   - Bank_branch_id, Bank Account Name

Index

A

About Oracle Cash Management, 1-1
account balances in cash positioning
  calculating, 7-15
Account Currency Amount Cleared field
  Available Batches window, 5-33
  Available Transactions window, 5-31
  Clear Transactions window, 5-57
  Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
  Reversals window, 5-50
  Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Account Currency Amount field
  Available Transactions window, 5-31
  Clear Transactions window, 5-57
  Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
  Reversals window, 5-50
  Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Account Currency Charges field
  Available Batches window, 5-33
  Available Transactions window, 5-31
  Clear Transactions window, 5-57
  Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Account Currency Errors field
  Available Batches window, 5-33
  Available Transactions window, 5-31
  Clear Transactions window, 5-57
  Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Account Currency Total field
  Available Batches window, 5-33
Account field
  Available Batches window, 5-33
  Available Transactions window, 5-30
  Bank Statement Lines window, 4-28
  Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
  Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
  Statement Line Interface window, 4-20
Accounting Definitions, 10-4
Accounting Events, 10-2
Account Name field
  Bank Statement window, 4-25
  Clear Transactions window, 5-56
Account Number field
  Bank Statement window, 4-25
  Clear Transactions window, 5-56
  Reversals window, 5-51
  Statement Interface window, 4-18
  Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
acknowledgements from payment systems
  receiving, 3-26
Activity field
  Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Add Column button, 6-42, 6-42
adding
  columns and rows to templates, 6-43
    effect on manually created forecasts, 6-26
  rows to forecasts, 6-42
Add Row window reference, 6-43
adjustments for bank errors, 5-52
Agent Bank Account field
  Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
  Statement Line Interface window, 4-21
Agent field
  Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
  Statement Line Interface window, 4-21

Agent Name field
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Allow Adding Lines to Imported Statements, 2-19
Amount field
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Statement Line Interface window, 4-20
Amount Reconciled field
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
Amount Threshold field, 6-25
Archive/Purge Bank Statements program, 5-62
system parameter settings, 2-19
Archive check box, 2-19
archiving
automatic with reconciliation, 5-63, 5-65
bank statements, 5-63
procedures, 5-64
setting system parameters, 2-19
assigning
operating units, 3-19
attachments
Indicate Attachments profile option, 5-40, B-3
using, 5-40
Authorization Status field, 6-18
Authorizing Bank Account Transfers, 9-8
AutoLockbox
Oracle Receivables integration, 5-46
automatic bank reconciliation
correcting program errors, 5-15
importing bank statements, 4-11
matching bank errors and corrections, 5-53
matching criteria, 1-6
multi-currency clearing, 5-11
multi-currency handling, 1-9
multi-currency matching, 5-10
overview diagram, 5-2
reconciling bank errors, 5-51
reviewing program errors, 11-5
reviewing reconciliation errors, 5-15
running, 5-1
running from the Special menu, 5-4
validation, 4-15
Automatic Clearing, 1-21
AutoReconciliation Execution Report, 11-24
AutoReconciliation program, 5-1
reviewing errors, 11-5
running from the Special menu, 5-4
Available Batches window reference, 5-33
Available button, 11-3
available transactions, batches, and journal entries, 11-5

B

BAI2
setting up, 2-28
Balance reporting, 8-3
Balancing Details Tab
Credit Account, 3-16
Debit Account, 3-16
Bank Account Balance, 8-1
Bank Account field, 6-17
Bank Account Model Overview, 3-1
bank accounts
country specific validation, F-1
matching by customer, 1-7
matching by supplier, 1-6
Bank Account Transfers, 9-1
Bank Account Transfers Manually, 9-5
Bank Account Validations, F-1
Bank and Account Administration: Define Bank Accounts, 3-4
Bank Branch field
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Statement Interface window, 4-18
bank charges, 5-41
Bank Currency Amount field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
bank errors
recording, 5-45
setting up transaction codes, 2-26
statement reconciliation, 1-5
Bank Name field
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Clear Transactions window, 5-56
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Statement Interface window, 4-18
Bank Statement Detail Report, 5-2, 11-24
Bank Statement Import program, 4-11, 5-1

correcting errors, 4-21
Bank Statement Interface window, 4-22
loading bank statements into the bank statement open interface, 4-5
reviewing bank statement interface errors online, 4-18
bank statement lines
clearing, 1-6
corrections and adjustments to bank errors, 5-51
creating during manual reconciliation, 5-24
entering manually, 4-26
inquiry, 11-3
matching to transactions, 1-6
overview, 1-4
status, 1-5
validation, 4-16
Bank Statement Lines Interface window, 4-20
loading bank statements into the bank statement open interface, 4-5
Bank Statement Lines window
creating payments or receipts, 5-41
using attachments, 5-40
window reference, 4-28
Bank Statement Loader program, 4-1
parameters, 4-4
Bank Statement Loader Program, 2-27
Bank Statement Open Interface
archiving and purging imported statements, 5-62
correcting errors, 4-21
importing bank statements, 4-11
loading, 4-1
reviewing errors, 4-17
setting up, 2-27
Statement Headers Interface table, 2-38
Statement Lines Interface table, 2-42
validation, 4-15
bank statements
archiving, 5-63
attaching text, images, spreadsheets, 5-40
changing the reconciliation status, 5-38
correcting interface errors, 4-21
creating miscellaneous transactions, 5-41
electronic, 4-1
entering manually, 4-23
importing, 4-11
loading, 4-1
mapping templates, D-1
marking as complete, 5-59
numbering, 2-63
overview, 1-4
purging, 5-63
reconciliation overview, 1-2
reconciling automatically, 5-1
reconciling manually, 5-21
reviewing reconciled transactions, 5-34
transaction codes, 1-5
unmarking completed, 5-59
updating, 4-30
Bank Statements
bank statement loader program, 4-1
entering, 4-1
mapping, 2-31
Bank Statements by Document Number Report, 11-26
Bank Statement Summary Report, 11-26
Bank Statement window
finding available batches, 5-28
finding available detail transactions, 5-26
finding available open interface transactions, 5-28
reconciling manually, 5-23
reversing a receipt, 5-48
using attachments, 5-40
window reference, 4-25
bank transaction codes
overview, 1-5
Bank Transaction Codes Listing, 11-39
Bank Transaction Codes window
defining transaction codes, 2-24
batch handling
finding, 5-27
finding available batch transactions for reconciliation, 5-26
reconciliation, 5-29
Batch Name field
Available Batches window, 5-33
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Begin Date field, 2-18

Branch Name field
Clear Transactions window, 5-56
Budget Name field, 6-17
Budget Type field, 6-18
Budget Version field, 6-18
Business Calendar field, 6-3
buttons
disabling, C-1

C

Calendar Name field, 6-23
calendars
choosing business calendar for forecasting, 6-23
defining accounting calendars, 2-3, 2-5
cancelling concurrent requests, 11-19
CASHFLOW, 2-41
Cashflows
bank files, 5-45
Cash Forecast Amounts window reference, 6-26
Cash Forecast Execution Report, 11-22
cash forecasting
creating templates, 6-2
exporting forecasts to Excel, 6-44
Forecasting Open Interface
External Forecast Sources window, 2-62
generating forecasts, 6-20
maintaining forecasts, 6-39
manually creating forecasts, 6-26
modifying templates, 6-39
overview, 1-24
reporting, 11-20
updating and reviewing forecasts, 6-39
Cash Forecast Report, 11-21
Cash Forecasts Search and Results page
making modifications, 6-41
Cash Forecast Template Listing, 11-41
Cash in Transit Report, 11-30
cash management security, 2-21
cash management transactions
setting cash management transactions parameters, 2-20
cash position
modifying amounts, 7-35
source transaction dates, 7-4
cash positioning, 7-1
worksheets, 7-2
cash positioning gapping, 7-16
cash position results, 7-24
exporting, 7-36
page reference, 7-27
cash positions
generating, 7-14
cash position worksheet
page reference, 7-7
cash position worksheets
modifying, 7-34
cash transaction subtypes, 2-64
Category field
Reversals window, 5-50
CE_999_INTERFACE_V, 2-47
CE_999_PKG, 2-47
CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INTERFACE table, 4-5
CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE table, 4-5
Channel Code field, 6-18
Charges field
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
Statement Line Interface window, 4-20
chart of accounts
defining, 2-3, 2-5
checklists
setup, 2-4
Cleared Date field
Available Batches window, 5-33
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
clearing
bank statement lines, 1-6
payment or receipt
manually, 5-55, 5-55
transactions, 1-6
Clear Transaction button, 5-55, 5-56
Clear Transactions Report, 11-31
Clear Transactions window, 5-55, 5-56
Clear Transactions window reference, 5-56
Closing field
Bank Statement window, 4-26
Statement Interface window, 4-19
closing process, 5-61
Code field

Bank Statement Lines window, 4-28
Statement Line Interface window, 4-20
Column Number field
Add Column window, 6-43
columns
adding in forecast templates, 6-43
changes affecting manually created forecasts, 6-26
defining forecast templates, 6-4
Comments field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-45
Reversals window, 5-51
Complete check box, 5-60
Complete field
Bank Statement window, 4-26
completing
header, 3-18
concurrent requests
cancelling, 11-19
monitoring, 11-19
submitting, 11-18
control totals, 4-25
control total validation, 4-15
Correction Method field, 2-26
corrections
reconciling to bank errors, 5-51
Create button, C-2
Create New Forecast Template check box, 6-43
Create New Forecast Template field
Add Column window, 6-43
creating
risk formula, 3-19
routing rules, 3-20
Creating Cashflows, 9-9
Creating Journal Entries Automatically, 10-16
creating payments and receipts transactions, 5-40
currencies
defining, 2-3, 2-5
Currencies window, 2-3, 2-5
Currency Code field
Clear Transactions window, 5-56
Currency field
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Statement Interface window, 4-19
Curr field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Reversals window, 5-51
Statement Line Interface window, 4-21
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Cutoff Period field, 6-3

D

Database Link Name field, 2-62
Date field
Available Batches window, 5-33
Available Transactions window, 5-31, 5-31
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-28
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Statement Interface window, 4-19
Statement Line Interface window, 4-20, 4-20, 4-21
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
dates
expected cash activity date for forecasting, 6-5, 6-20
debit memo reversal, 5-49
Default Clearing Balancing Segment Value, 3-17
default payment systems
selecting, 3-19
Define Bank Branches, 3-3
deleting
columns and rows from templates
effect on manually created forecasts, 6-26
Deposit Date field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Deposit Number field
Available Batches window, 5-33
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Description field, 6-15
descriptive flexfields
entering Forecast Selection Criteria, 6-18
Detail, 3-17
detail payment transactions, 1-6
detail remittance transactions, 1-7

direct debits
recording, 5-46
direct deposits
recording, 5-46
Discount field, 6-16
distributed database
cash forecasting integration, 1-29, 2-57
Document Number field
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
document numbering, 2-63
documents
external, 5-47

E

EDIFACT - France Mapping Template, D-12
Effective Date field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-45
Statement Line Interface window, 4-21
electronic bank statements, 4-1
electronic payments
matching criteria, 1-6, 1-7
Encumbrance Type field, 6-17
End Project field, 6-23
errors
AutoReconciliation
reviewing, 11-5
AutoReconciliation program
correcting, 5-15
reviewing, 5-15
Bank Statement Open Interface
correcting, 4-21
reviewing, 4-17
bank statements, 5-45
setting up transaction codes, 2-26
Reconciliation Errors window, 4-18, 4-20, 5-15
reconciling bank, 1-5
reconciling in bank statement lines, 5-51
Errors button, 11-3
Excel
exporting to, 6-44
integration with Cash Forecasting, 1-24
saving forecasts, 6-45
exceptions
recording, 5-45
Exchange Date field, 6-24
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Exchange Rate field, 6-25
exchange rates
Journals: Display Inverse Rate profile option, B-3
Exchange Type field, 6-24
expected cash activity dates, 6-5
exporting cash position results, 7-36
exporting data
to Microsoft Excel, 6-44
exposures
generate In Oracle Treasury, 7-35
external documents
recording transactions, 5-47
External Forecast Sources window, 2-62
External Source Type field, 6-18

F

Factor field
Cash Forecast Amounts window, 6-27
Find Available window
finding available batches, 11-7
finding available detail transactions, 11-6
finding available open interface transactions, 11-8
finding transactions and batches, 11-8
Find Bank Statements window, 5-25, 5-42, 5-47, 11-2
entering bank statements manually, 4-24
finding available batches, 5-27
finding available detail transactions or journal entries, 5-26
finding available open interface transactions, 5-28
marking bank statements as complete, 5-60
reconciling manually, 5-22
updating bank statements, 4-30
Find Reversals window
querying reversals, 11-4
reversing receipts, 5-48
Find Transactions window
finding batches, 5-28
finding detail transactions, 5-26
finding open interface transactions, 5-28
manually clearing a payment or receipt, 5-55, 5-55

manually unclearing a payment or receipt, 5-58
Float Days field, 2-25
folder windows
Reconcile Bank Statements, 4-30, 5-15, 5-47
creating new lines, 5-25
marking and unmarking, 5-60
reconciling manually, 5-22
reviewing reconciled transactions for specific lines, 5-35
unreconciling transactions for statement lines, 5-38
unreconciling transactions for statements, 5-39
Forecast By field, 6-23
Forecast Currency field, 6-24
Forecasting Open Interface
indexes on views, 2-62
remote databases, 2-62
running, 2-58
setting up, 2-57
Forecast Name field, 6-23
forecast period types
entering, 6-3
submitting forecasts, 6-23
forecasts
adding rows to, 6-42
creating manually, 6-26
Forecast Selection Criteria field, 6-19
Forecast Template Rows window
window reference, 6-8, 6-15
function security, C-1
funds capture side
payment systems, 3-21
funds disbursement side
payment systems, 3-21

G

gapping
cash positioning, 7-16
generating
cash forecasts, 6-20
forecasts from templates, 6-20
Generating Accounting Entries, 9-9
generating cash positions, 7-14
GL Account field, 6-17
GL Data Access Sets profile option, B-3
GL Date field
Available Batches window, 5-33
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Submit Automatic Reconciliation window, 5-5
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
GL Periods/Days From field
Add Column window, 6-43
GL Periods/Days To field
Add Column window, 6-43
GL Reconciliation Report, 1-21, 5-62, 11-27

H

header
completing, 3-18

I

Include Disputes? field, 6-17
indexes on views
Forecasting Open Interface, 2-62
Indicate Attachments profile option, 5-40, B-3
inflows
cash forecasting, 1-25
inquiry
available transactions, 11-5
bank statement lines, 11-3
finding available detail and batch transactions for reconciliation, 5-26
manual reconciliation, 11-2
overview, 11-1
reconciled transactions, 11-4
reconciliation errors, 11-5
reversals, 11-4
integration
Automatic Clearing, 1-21
cash forecasting
distributed database environments, 1-29, 2-57
expense reports, 1-24
non-Oracle applications, 1-29, 2-57
Oracle Applications, 1-25

spreadsheet applications, 1-29
non-Oracle general ledger, 5-62
Oracle General Ledger, 5-61
Oracle Payables
overview, 1-10
setting up, 2-11, 2-13
Oracle Payroll, 6-17
setting up, 2-15
Oracle Receivables
AutoLockbox, 5-22, 5-46
overview, 1-10
setting up, 2-13, 2-14
with Receivables and Payables, 1-10
Intercompany Setup, 3-13
Interest Calculation, 8-7
Interest rate schedule, 8-5
interface tables
CE_STATEMENT_HEADERS_INTERFACE, 4-5
CE_STATEMENT_LINES_INTERFACE, 4-5
Interface tables, 2-48
Intra-Day Bank Statements
Intra-Day Bank Statement Loader program, 4-5
Invoice field
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
Statement Line Interface window, 4-21
invoice number
matching for electronic payments, 1-6, 1-7

J

journal entries
closing process, 5-61
finding, 5-26
Journals: Display Inverse Rate profile option, B-3
matching criteria, 1-8
Journals: Display Inverse Rate profile option, B-3

L

Lead Time field, 6-18
ledger
system parameters, 2-18
Ledger field, 2-18
Ledger Name field, 6-16
Ledger Name profile option, 2-17
ledgers
defining, 2-3, 2-6
GL Data Access Sets profile option, B-3
multiple organizations, 2-18
setting for Payables, 2-12
setting for Receivables, 2-14
legal
entity, 2-18
Legal Entity, 2-18
Line Number field
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-28
Statement Line Interface window, 4-20
Lines button, 11-3
Lines field
Statement Interface window, 4-19
line totals, 4-25
loading Bank Statement Open Interface, 4-1

M

manual bank reconciliation
changing the reconciliation status, 5-38
creating miscellaneous transactions, 5-41
creating reconciled bank statement lines, 5-24
entering reversals, 5-48
entering statements manually, 4-23
finding available detail and batch transactions for reconciliation, 5-26
inquiry, 11-2
matching bank errors and corrections, 5-53
multi-currency handling, 1-10
overview, 5-21
overview diagram, 5-22
reconciling bank errors, 5-51
reviewing reconciled transactions, 5-34
manually creating forecasts, 6-26
Manually Entered Clearing Balancing Segment Value, 3-17
Mapping
bank statements, 2-31
matching
bank statement lines, 1-6
transactions, 1-6
Matching Against field, 2-26
matching criteria
electronic payments, 1-6, 1-7
General Ledger journals, 1-8

miscellaneous transactions, 1-8, 2-26
multi-currency, 5-10
Oracle Payables transactions, 1-6
Oracle Receivables transactions, 1-7
Maturity Date field
Available Transactions window, 5-30
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Unclear Transactions window, 5-58
Method field, 6-17
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-42
Miscellaneous Receipts window reference, 5-44
miscellaneous transactions
creating, 5-41
in Payables, 1-14
matching criteria, 1-8
Oracle Receivables, 1-18
payments, 1-11
setting up, 2-14, 2-26
setting up transaction codes, 2-26
MO: Operating Unit profile option, B-3
Modify Balances By Account, 8-2
Modify Balances For Multiple Accounts, 8-3
multi-currency
automatic bank reconciliation, 1-9, 5-10
clearing, 5-11
matching, 5-10
validation, 4-16
multiple organizations
cash forecasting
accounting calendar, 6-16, 6-23
currency, 6-24
ledgers, 2-18
MO: Operating Unit profile option, B-3

N

Name field
Reversals window, 5-51
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Navigation paths
sectHead, A-1
non-Oracle general ledger
closing process, 5-62
NSF handling, 1-7, 2-25, 5-45
Reversals, 5-48
NSF Handling field
Submit Automatic Reconciliation window, 5-5
Number field
Available Transactions window, 5-30, 5-31
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-28
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Statement Line Interface window, 4-20
Unclear Transactions window, 5-58
numbering
Sequential Numbering profile option, B-3

O

online authorization
sending and receiving, 3-25
online debits
sending and receiving, 3-25
online payer verifications
sending and receiving, 3-25
online payer verifications, authorizations, and debits
sending and receiving, 3-24
Opening Amount field
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Statement Interface window, 4-19
open interfaces
Bank Statement Open Interface, 2-27
Forecasting Open Interface, 2-57
Reconciliation Open Interface, 2-44
operating units
assigning, 3-19
MO: Operating Unit profile option, B-3
Options field
Submit Automatic Reconciliation window, 5-5
Options Tab
Clearing Balancing Segment Value Usage, 3-17
Default Options, 3-17
Oracle General Ledger
closing process, 5-61
matching criteria for journal entries, 1-8
reconciling journal entries, 5-21
transferring reconciliation transactions, 5-60
Oracle Payables
creating payments from Cash Management, 5-

40
integration with Cash Management, 1-10
ledgers, 2-12
reconciliation, 1-11
reconciliation accounting, 1-12
reconciliation examples, 1-15
setting up, 2-11, 2-13
transaction matching criteria, 1-6
Oracle Payroll
integration with Cash Management, 6-17
reconciliation, 1-22
setting up, 2-15
Oracle Projects
integration, 1-27
Oracle Receivables
AutoLockbox, 5-46
creating receipts from Cash Management, 5-40
integration with Cash Management, 1-10
ledgers, 2-14
miscellaneous transactions, 1-18
reconciliation accounting, 1-18
reconciliation examples, 1-18
setting up, 2-13, 2-14
transaction matching criteria, 1-7
using AutoLockbox, 5-22
Oracle Treasury, 2-17
Organization field, 6-16
Submit Automatic Reconciliation, 5-5
Original Amount field
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Statement Line Interface window, 4-20
Unclear Transactions window, 5-58
Original Curr Amount field
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Original Curr field
Available Batches window, 5-33
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Clear Transactions window, 5-56
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Unclear Transactions window, 5-58
Original Total field
Available Batches window, 5-33
outflows
cash forecasting, 1-25
overdue transactions
cash positioning, 7-5
Overdue Transactions field, 6-3

P

Paid From field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-45
Parameters window
archiving/purging bank statements, 5-64
payer notifications to payers
sending, 3-26
Pay Group field, 6-16
payment batches
matching, 1-6
Payment Method field, 6-16
Reversals window, 5-50
Submit Automatic Reconciliation window, 5-5
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
Payment Priority field, 6-16
payments
miscellaneous, 1-11
reconciling, 1-6
Payments Amount field
Bank Statement window, 4-26
Statement Interface window, 4-19
Payments Lines field
Bank Statement window, 4-26
Statement Interface window, 4-19
Payments Setup, 3-18
payment system
settings required, 3-21
payment system accounts
specifying, 3-28
payment systems
funds capture side, 3-21
funds disbursement side, 3-21
payment systems and payment system accounts
selecting, 3-18
Payment Templates, 9-2
Payroll Name field, 6-16
periods
defining accounting periods, 2-3, 2-5
period types
defining, 2-3, 2-5
positioning, 7-1

prerequisites
setting up first party payees, 3-18
setting up funds capture process profiles, 3-24
setting up payment systems, 3-20
Processing Payments, 9-9
Profile Class field, 6-17
profile options
GL Ledger Name, B-3
Indicate Attachments, 5-40, B-3
Journals: Display Inverse Rate, B-3
overview, B-1
Sequential Numbering, 2-63, B-3
programs
Archive/Purge Bank Statements, 5-62
AutoReconciliation, 5-1
reviewing errors, 11-5
Bank Statement Import, 4-11, 5-1
correcting errors, 4-21
purchase card processing transaction detail
selecting, 3-19
Purge check box, 2-19
purging
automatic with reconciliation, 5-63, 5-65
bank statements, 5-63
procedures, 5-64
setting system parameters, 2-19
purpose
setting up first party payees, 3-18
setting up funds capture process profiles, 3-24
setting up payment systems, 3-21
setting up transmission configurations, 3-22

R

Rate field
Available Batches window, 5-33
Available Transactions window, 5-31
Clear Transactions window, 5-57
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Statement Line Interface window, 4-21
Reason field
Reversals window, 5-50
receipt classes
setting up, 2-14
Receipt Number field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
receipts
reconciling, 1-6
rejected
bank transaction codes, 2-25
entering reversals, 5-48
matching, 1-7
recording with AutoReconciliation, 5-45
Receipts Amount field
Bank Statement window, 4-26
Statement Interface window, 4-19
Receipts Lines field
Bank Statement window, 4-26
Statement Interface window, 4-19
receivable activities
setting up, 2-14
Receivable Activity field
Submit Automatic Reconciliation window, 5-5
receiving
acknowledgements from payment systems, 3-26
Reconcile Bank Statements window
creating miscellaneous transactions for previously-entered lines, 5-42
creating new lines, 5-25
entering bank statements manually, 4-30
function security, C-2
reconciling manually, 5-22
recording bank errors, 5-47
reviewing reconciled transactions for a bank statement, 5-34
reviewing reconciliation and validation errors, 5-15
Reconciled button, 11-3
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-34, 5-34
Reconciled Transactions window reference, 5-37
reconciliation
accounting
Oracle Payables, 1-12
Oracle Receivables, 1-18
bank errors, 1-5
examples
Oracle Payables, 1-15
Oracle Receivables, 1-18
Oracle Payroll, 1-22
overview, 1-2
status, 5-38
unreconciling, 1-14

Reconciliation Errors window, 4-18, 4-20, 5-15
Reconciliation Open Interface
  CE_999_INTERFACE_V, 2-48
  Package CE_999_PKG, 2-53
  preparing to use, 2-46
  running, 2-45
  setting up, 2-44
reconciling bank statements
  automatically, 5-1
  changing the reconciliation status, 5-38
  creating bank statement lines during manual reconciliation, 5-24
  creating miscellaneous transactions, 5-41
  entering reversals, 5-48
  manually, 5-21
  matching bank errors and corrections, 5-53
  matching statement lines, 1-6
  reconciling bank errors, 5-51
  recording exceptions, 5-45
  reviewing reconciled transactions, 5-34
  reviewing reconciliation errors, 5-15
Reference Type field
  Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
remittance batches
  matching, 1-7
remote databases
  accessing for the Forecasting Open Interface, 2-62
reports and listings
  AutoReconciliation Execution Report, 11-24
  Bank Statement by Document Number Report, 11-26
  Bank Statement Detail Report, 5-2, 11-24
  Bank Statement Summary Report, 11-26
  Bank Transaction Codes Listing, 11-39
  cancelling requests, 11-19
  Cash Forecast Execution Report, 11-22
  Cash Forecast Report, 11-21
  Cash Forecast Template Listing, 11-41
  Cash in Transit Report, 11-30
  Clear Transactions Report, 11-31
  GL Reconciliation Report, 1-21, 5-62, 11-27
  report headings, 11-20
  report parameters, 11-20
  submitting, 11-18
  Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report, 11-33
  viewing status of requests, 11-19
Request by Row check box, 6-25
request sets, 11-18
responsibilities
  predefined, 2-2
restricting functionality, C-1
reversals
  correcting bank errors, 5-52
  debit memo, 5-49
  entering, 5-48
  inquiry, 11-4
Reversals button, 11-3
Reversals window, 5-49
Reversals window reference, 5-50
reviewing concurrent request status, 11-19
risk formula
  creating, 3-19
risk threshold
  specifying, 3-20
Roll Forward Period field, 6-17
Roll Forward Type field, 6-17
routing rules
  creating, 3-20
Row Number field
  Add Row window, 6-43
Row Number From/To fields, 6-25
rows
  adding in templates, 6-43
  adding to forecasts, 6-42
  changes affecting manually created forecasts, 6-26
  defining forecast templates, 6-3
  Forecast Template Rows window reference, 6-8, 6-15
  source type characteristics, 6-8

S

Sales Order Date Type field, 6-18
Sales Stage field, 6-18
security, C-1
selecting
  default payment systems, 3-19
  payment systems and payment system accounts, 3-18
  purchase card processing transaction detail, 3-19

sending
payer notifications to payers, 3-26
sending and receiving
online authorization, 3-25
online debits, 3-25
online payer verifications, 3-25
online payer verifications, authorizations, and debits, 3-24
settlements, 3-25
sequential document numbering, 2-63
Sequential Numbering profile option, 2-63, B-3
settings
required by payment system, 3-21
setting system parameters, 2-17
setting up
accounting calendar periods, 2-3, 2-5
accounting period types, 2-3, 2-5
Bank Statement Open Interface, 2-27
chart of accounts, 2-3, 2-5
checklist, 2-4
currencies, 2-3, 2-5
Forecasting Open Interface, 2-57
ledgers, 2-3, 2-6
overview, 2-1
profile options, B-1
Reconciliation Open Interface, 2-44
sequential document numbering, 2-63
transaction codes, 2-24
settlement grouping
specifying, 3-26
settlement limits
specifying, 3-28
settlements
sending and receiving, 3-25
Show cleared transactions, 2-19
Show Void Payments, 2-19
Source Currency field, 6-24
Source Currency Type field, 6-24
Source field
Add Row window, 6-43
source transaction dates
cash position, 7-4
Source Transaction Details
page reference, 7-28
source types
characteristics, 6-8
expected cash activity dates, 6-5
user-defined, 6-20
specifying
payment system accounts, 3-28
risk threshold, 3-20
settlement grouping, 3-26
settlement limits, 3-28
supported capabilities, 3-21
spreadsheets
attachments, 5-40
forecasting, 1-29, 6-44
SQL*Loader script
developing, 2-29
Start Date field, 6-23
Start Period field, 6-23
Start Project field, 6-23
Statement Date field
Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Statement Interface window
reviewing bank statement interface errors, 4-17
reviewing interface errors online for a specific statement line, 4-20
window reference, 4-18
Statement Line Interface window reference, 4-20
Statement Lines window
reconciling manually, 5-23
Statement Number field
Bank Statement window, 4-25
Reversals window, 5-51
Statement Interface window, 4-19
Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
statements
Bank statements, 4-1
status
bank statement lines, 1-5
changing the reconciliation status, 5-38
reconciliation, receipt, and payment, 5-35
Status field
Available Transactions window, 5-30
Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
Reversals window, 5-50
Statement Interface window, 4-19
Unclear Transactions window, 5-58
stopped payments
recording, 5-46
stopped transactions, 1-6

Subledger Accounting (SLA) Introduction, 10-1
Submit Automatic Reconciliation window, 5-4
Submit Automatic Reconciliation window reference, 5-5
Submit Forecast window
  window reference, 6-22
Submit Request window
  submitting cash forecasts, 6-22
submitting forecasts, 6-20
Summary Net, 3-16
suppliers
  recording direct debits, 5-46
Supplier Type field, 6-16
supported capabilities
  specifying, 3-21
SWIFT940
  setting up, 2-28
SWIFT940 Mapping Template, D-6
system parameters
  reconciliation tolerances, 5-8
System Parameters window, 2-17
  window reference, 2-18

T

Tab
  Accounting, 3-13
Tax Code field
  Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
Template Name field, 6-23
templates
  creating for forecasts, 6-2
  defining for forecasts, 6-2
tolerances
  matching bank statement lines with transactions, 1-6
  multi-currency matching, 5-10
Trading Partner Balancing Segment Value, 3-14
Trading Partner Ledger, 3-14
Trading Partner Legal Entity, 3-14
Transacting Balancing Segment Value, 3-14
Transacting Ledger, 3-14
Transacting Legal Entity, 3-14
transaction codes
  bank statements, 1-5
  defining, 2-24
Transaction Date field
  Bank Statement Lines window, 4-28
transactions
  bank errors, 5-51
  changing reconciliation status, 5-38
  clearing, 1-6
  creating payments and receipts, 5-40
  finding, 5-26
  matching bank statement lines, 1-6
  matching for electronic payments, 1-6, 1-7
  matching General Ledger journals, 1-8
  matching miscellaneous, 1-8
  matching multi-currency, 5-10
  matching Payables, 1-6
  matching Receivables, 1-7
  miscellaneous, 5-41
  payments, 1-6
  reconciling, 5-29
  rejected, 1-7
  remittances, 1-7
  reviewing reconciled, 5-34
  stopped, 1-6, 2-25
  transferring reconciled to General Ledger, 5-60
  viewing reconciled, 11-4
Transactions Available for Reconciliation Report, 11-33
transaction types, 1-5, 2-24
transferring data to General Ledger
  differences within reconciliation tolerances, 5-8
  reconciliation overview, 1-2
  reconciliation transactions, 5-60
TRX, 2-42
Type field, 2-62, 6-18
  Available Batches window, 5-33
  Available Transactions window, 5-30, 5-31, 5-31
  Bank Statement Lines window, 4-28
  Clear Transactions window, 5-57, 5-57
  Miscellaneous Receipts window, 5-44
  Reconciled Transactions window, 5-37
  Reversals window, 5-50
  Statement Line Interface window, 4-21
  Unclear Transactions window, 5-58

U

Unclear Transaction button, 5-58

Unclear Transactions window, 5-58
Unclear Transactions window reference, 5-58
unmarking a completed bank statement, 5-59
Unreconciled Amount field
  Bank Statement window, 4-26
Unreconciled Lines field
  Bank Statement window, 4-26
unreconciling, 1-14, 5-38
updating bank statements, 4-30
Use for All Journals, 3-17
Use for Many-to-Many Journals Only, 3-17
Using Default Rule, 3-17

V

validation
  bank statement headers, 4-15
  bank statement lines, 4-16
  control totals, 4-15
  country specific bank account, F-1
  multi-currency, 4-16
  overview, 4-15
value date, 5-14
Value Date field
  Bank Statement Lines window, 4-29
  Clear Transactions window, 5-57
  Unclear Transactions window, 5-59
View Available Batches window, 11-1, 11-8
View Available Transactions window, 5-29, 11-1, 11-1, 11-7
View Bank Account Balances window, 11-1
View Bank Accounts window, 11-2
View Bank Account Transfer window, 11-1
View Bank Information window, 11-2
View Bank Statement Lines window, 11-1, 11-3
  using attachments, 5-40
View Bank Statement Reconciliation window, 11-1, 11-3
View Bank Statement window, 11-3
  using attachments, 5-40
View By field
  Cash Forecast Amounts window, 6-27
View Cashflows window, 11-1
View field, 2-62
Viewing, Updating, Canceling Bank Account Transfer, 9-7
viewing cash position results, 7-24
View Interest Rate Schedule window, 11-2
View Reconciled Transactions window, 11-1, 11-4
View Reconciliation Errors window, 11-1, 11-5
  reviewing import validation errors in AutoReconciliation, 4-15
View Reversals window, 11-1, 11-4
views
  defining external sources, 2-60
  using indexes, 2-62

W

window reference
  Forecast Template Rows, 6-8, 6-15
  Submit Forecast, 6-22
  System Parameters, 2-18
Window References, 3-5
windows
  Bank Statement
    finding available batches, 5-28
    finding available detail transactions, 5-26
    finding available open interface transactions, 5-28
    reconciling manually, 5-23
    reversing a receipt, 5-48
    using attachments, 5-40
  Bank Statement Interface, 4-22, 5-15
    loading bank statements into the bank statement open interface, 4-5
    reviewing bank statement errors, 4-17
    reviewing bank statement interface errors online, 4-18
    reviewing interface errors online for a specific statement line, 4-20
  Bank Statement Lines
    creating payments or receipts, 5-41
    using attachments, 5-40
  Bank Statement Lines Interface, 4-20
    loading bank statements into the bank statement open interface, 4-5
  Bank Transaction Codes, 2-24
  Clear Transactions, 5-55, 5-56
  Currencies, 2-3, 2-5
  External Forecast Sources, 2-62
  Find Available
    finding available batches, 11-7

finding available detail transactions, 11-6
finding available open interface transactions, 11-8
finding transactions and batches, 11-8
Find Bank Statements, 5-25, 5-42, 5-47, 11-2
entering bank statements manually, 4-24
finding available batches, 5-27
finding available detail transactions or journal entries, 5-26
finding available open interface transactions, 5-28
marking bank statements as complete, 5-60
reconciling manually, 5-22
updating bank statements, 4-30
Find Reversals
querying reversals, 11-4
reversing receipts, 5-48
Find Transactions
finding batches, 5-28
finding detail transactions, 5-26
finding open interface transactions, 5-28
manually clearing a payment or receipt, 5-55, 5-55
manually unclearing a payment or receipt, 5-58
Forecast Template Rows
window reference, 6-8, 6-15
Miscellaneous Receipts, 5-42
Parameters
archiving/purging bank statements, 5-64
Reconcile Bank Statements, 5-34
creating new lines, 5-25
function security, C-2
marking and unmarking, 5-60
reconciling manually, 5-22
recording bank errors, 5-47
reviewing reconciliation and validation errors, 5-15
unreconciling transactions for statement lines, 5-38
unreconciling transactions for statements, 5-39
Reconciled Transactions, 5-34, 5-34
Reconciliation Errors, 4-18, 4-20, 5-15
Reversals, 5-49
Statement Lines window
reconciling manually, 5-23
Submit Automatic Reconciliation, 5-4
Submit Forecast
window reference, 6-22
Submit Request
submitting cash forecasts, 6-22
Submit Requests, 11-18
System Parameters, 2-17
window reference, 2-18
Unclear Transactions, 5-58
View Available Batches, 11-1, 11-8
View Available Transactions, 5-29, 11-1, 11-1, 11-7
View Bank Account Balances, 11-1
View Bank Accounts, 11-2
View Bank Account Transfers, 11-1
View Bank Information, 11-2
View Bank Statement, 11-3
View Bank Statement Lines, 11-1, 11-3
using attachments, 5-40
View Bank Statement Reconciliation, 11-1, 11-3
View Bank Statements
using attachments, 5-40
View Cashflows, 11-1
View Interest Rate Schedule, 11-2
View Reconciled Transactions, 11-1, 11-4
View Reconciliation Errors, 11-1, 11-5
reviewing import validation errors in AutoReconciliation, 4-15
View Reversals, 11-1, 11-4
Win Probability field, 6-18
wire transfer
recording, 5-46

X

XML Bank Statements
mapping rules, E-1
processing, 4-10
Receiving, 4-7
setting up, 4-7